



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

PROPERTY OF
*University of
Michigan
Libraries*

1817



ARTES SCIENTIA VERITAS

Duke Huon of Burdeux.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, Nos. XL, ~~XLV~~

1882, 1883.

BERLIN : ASHER & CO., 5, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK : C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA : J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

12.9

THE
ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

PART VII.

The Boke of
Duke Huon of Burdeaux

done into English by

Sir John Bouchier, Lord Berners,

and printed by Wynkyn de Worde about 1534 A.D.

EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE COPY OF THE FIRST EDITION,
NOW IN THE POSSESSION OF THE EARL OF CRAWFORD AND BALCARRES,

with an Introduction,

BY

S. L. LEE, B.A.,

BALLIOL COLLEGE, OXFORD.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCLXXXII.



Extra Series,

XL.

CLAY AND TAYLOR, CHAUCER PRESS, BUNGAY.

PREFATORY NOTE.

THE length of this romance has necessitated its publication in two parts. The first part includes the oldest portions of the story, and forms a tale complete in itself.

The opening pages of the Introduction are intended to constitute a general preface to the whole series of English Charlemagne Romances. The later pages deal with the historical and bibliographical points of interest connected with Lord Berners' rendering of the present romance. With the second part will be published an essay on the differences between the language of the first and third editions respectively (*vide* Introd. p. lvi, lvii). Holbein's portrait of the translator will also, it is hoped, appear there. The Hon. H. Tyrwhitt Wilson, the owner of the picture, and a lineal descendant of Lord Berners, has very kindly given permission for its reproduction, but the arrangements necessary for its publication have not yet been completed.

I am desirous of expressing my thanks for assistance rendered me in the preparation of this edition to the Earl of Crawford and Balcarres, whose loan of the unique copy of the book rendered this reprint possible; to Miss Eleanor Marx, who not only undertook the labour of copying the work for the press, but has also corrected the great bulk of the proof sheets; to Mr. R. A. Graves of the British Museum, who aided me very greatly with his wide knowledge when I was attempting to fix the date of the publication of the book; and to Mr. F. J. Furnivall, who, on this as on other occasions, has generously rendered me much assistance. To the works of M. Gaston Paris, M. Paul Meyer, and M. Léon Gautier, I have also been largely indebted, while studying the history of the Charlemagne Romances in France.

S. L. LEE.

36, Brondesbury Villas, London, N.W.
January 10, 1883.

INTRODUCTION.

I.

THE CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES IN FRANCE AND ENGLAND.

- | | |
|--|--|
| § 1. <i>The distribution of the romances</i> ,
p. vii.
§ 2. <i>Their growth in France</i> , p. viii.
§ 3. <i>The cantilènes</i> , p. ix.
§ 4. <i>La Chanson de Roland</i> , p. x.
§ 5. <i>Its general style</i> , p. xi.
§ 6. <i>Others of its class</i> , p. xiii.
§ 7. <i>Their later development</i> , p. xiii.
§ 8. <i>The family cycles</i> , p. xiv. | § 9. <i>The romances in the 14th century</i> , p. xv.
§ 10. <i>The prose versions</i> , p. xvi.
§ 11. <i>Their subsequent history</i> , p. xvi.
§ 12. <i>The Romances in England</i> ,
p. xvii.
§ 13. <i>Their classification</i> , p. xviii.
§ 14. <i>Their place in English literature</i> , p. xxi. |
|--|--|

§ 1. Of all the heroes of mediæval Europe Charles the Great has left the deepest impression on its literature. His career has given birth to as vast a series of epic poems and prose romances as any of which we still have visible remains. It was of three "moost noble kynges" that French narrative poetry in the early middle ages mainly treated. Alexander of Macedon, Arthur of Brittany, and Charles of France were its moving spirits; and Rome, *les deux Bretagnes*, and France were the countries that it delighted to honour.¹ But the hero who had been the Emperor of the whole western world, and who was often regarded as the first Christian King and the arch-confounder of the Saracens, most powerfully stirred the imagination of the early mediæval poets. And it was not only in the country that claimed to have been the centre of his dominions, that his glorious exploits were recited. France, it must be remembered, throughout the middle ages was the storehouse whence Europe

¹ M. de la Villemarqué (*les romans de la table ronde*, p. 2) says of the fact, "voilà le triple motif poétique dont ils (i. e. les poètes du moyen âge) se plaisaient à tirer des variétés infinies," and quotes the well-known lines from a 13th century poet,—

"Ne sont que trois matières à nul homme entendant :
De France, de Bretagne et de Rome la grand."

chiefly derived its romantic literature. It was a French story-book that Dante represents as having caused the temptation to which Francesca so fatally yielded,¹ and at a time when hero-worship was really a perpetual fact, it was inevitable that the legends of Charles the Great and his fighting men should be everywhere heartily welcomed. In England the poems have not enjoyed so continuous a popularity as elsewhere, but there was a time when to many Englishmen "the holy battles of bold Charlemaine" were (to quote one of their admirers) as familiar as their own thresholds. But in Spain, the Low Countries, in Germany, and in Scandinavian lands, Charles and his companions are numbered among "the paragons of the earth," and each of these countries has enshrined in its popular literature their traditional history. Nor are they wholly unknown in Russia and Hungary; and the Italian poets Boiardo, Ariosto and Tasso, have shed their golden light on many episodes drawn from the French Charlemagne romances, which long before their time had become thoroughly acclimatized in Italy.

§ 2. The development of the Charlemagne romances is an interesting study for the student of literature. But it has been wofully misrepresented by many English writers on the subject.² Known until recently in their prose forms alone, the romances have been regarded as renderings of monkish chronicles; but these, so far from being their progenitors, are themselves largely indebted to the fictions, and the relations between the metrical and prose forms of the romances have been constantly misapprehended. In their early shapes they were always metrical. They grew gradually and imperceptibly out of the traditions of the people, and only the latest of

¹ *Inferno*, v. 66.

² Dunlop, the English historian of fiction, who has attempted a full but very erroneous account of these romances, treats them (with some modifications, it is true) as amplifications of the Latin Chronicle ascribed to Turpin, believed to have been Archbishop of Rheims in the time of Charles. Recent criticism has proved the work to be itself based largely on popular poems, and to have no just claim to the antiquity for a long time ascribed to it. It is not from the pen of Turpin, but from that of two distinct authors living respectively about the middle of the 11th and the beginning of the 12th centuries. Its tone is strongly clerical, and it has of course little right to be regarded as an historical work. Dunlop, moreover, only knew the Charlemagne romances in their prose (*i. e.* their latest) forms.

them can be ascribed to conscious artistic endeavour. They are *Volks-Epen*, and not *Kunst-Epen*: in some respects they are comparable with the Homeric poems, in none with the *Æneid* or *La Gerusalemme Liberata*.

§ 3. In their own life-time the deeds of Charles the Great and of his companions in arms were the subjects of short popular verses sung by the people themselves in the daily intercourse of life. None of the Charlemagne *cantilènes*, as French critics have called the popular poems, have reached us. Few of their class were committed to writing; but we may infer from the testimony of various witnesses that very many at one time existed.¹ In the earliest Charlemagne romances the heroes expect their exploits to be celebrated in song.² From the 7th to the 9th centuries a story of King Clotaire was preserved in verse, and an early mediæval writer describes how Frenchwomen used to sing it together in chorus.³ Written sometimes in German, sometimes in Romance dialects, the *cantilènes* treated of isolated events, briefly and vividly described, and interspersed with exclamations of wonder, joy, and grief, which gave them often a lyrical, rather than an epic, character. In English literature the ballads that found their way into the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle may perhaps be looked upon as most closely resembling them. It is not until nearly the 11th century that professional poets or reciters are met with in French literature. We then find a class of men called *jongleurs* wandering from village to village, from castle to castle, chanting to the accompaniment of a little viol which they carried with them, stories of national or local heroes. It was under their influence that the detached poems were brought together. But hastily united either by themselves, or by professional poets who were known as *trouveurs*, they continued to be expanded or compressed, often on the spur of the moment, as the prejudices of the jongleur or his audience demanded. Nor for nearly three centuries,

¹ M. Gaston Paris. *Histoire Poétique de Charlemagne*, pp. 40, *et seq.*

² *Chanson de Roland*, 1014 and 1466. The edition of the *Chanson* which I have used is M. Léon Gautier's, published at Tours in 1881.

³ "Carmen publicum juxta rusticitatem per omnium pene volitabat ora ita canentium feminaeque choros inde plaudendo componebant. "Vita sancti Faronis," quoted from *Historiens de France*, iii. p. 505, by M. Gautier in his *Introd. to Roland*, p. xvij.

after the *trouveurs* had committed most of the poems to writing, did the improvisations cease, and the process was subsequently, and with less excuse, adopted by later copyists. New ideas were introduced to harmonize with the views of each generation of hearers, and, in the days of their decadence, when romances with similar, if somewhat briefer, genealogies were taking their place in popular esteem, attempts were made to embody in the old poems all the characteristics of the new. By such manœuvres as these they were enabled to survive till the invention of printing. Then, clothed in a garb of prose, they were freed from further radical changes, and a fresh lease of popularity which may be said to have not yet expired in France was thus secured for them. None of the Charlemagne romances exist in all these varied forms: some are extant in one shape, some in another; but of all of them such a development may be safely predicated.

§ 4. An examination of the earliest poem concerning Charles the Great, of which any manuscript is extant, will best indicate the leading features of the romances in their classical metrical shape. Like all of its class, it treats of the *deeds* of a single hero closely related to the Emperor, a fact which originally gave the poems the name of *chansons de geste*.¹ The *Chanson de Roland* has been justly placed among the noblest literary monuments of the Middle Ages, and has very many claims, as we shall show later, to the attention of English readers. It dates from the middle of the 11th century. The famous story which it has to tell is the defeat of Charles in the pass of the Pyrenees, and the death of Roland, his nephew, and of eleven other peers, as his chief warriors were called after an institution that comes into prominence in later French history. The incident, like the stories of all the oldest *chansons*, is roughly founded on a strictly historical basis. The episode is related in Eginhard's² authentic record of Charles' life, and to this day the scene of the disaster, the Waterloo of early mediæval France, goes, as

¹ The word *geste* has many meanings in mediæval French. Even in the earliest time it signifies not only an achievement, but the history which chronicles it. Cf. *Roland*—*Ço dit la geste*, 1685, 2095. Later, as we explain below, the word acquired the meaning of family. Traces of this usage appear in *Roland*, cf. v. 788. *Deus me confundet, se la geste en desment!*

² *Vita Karoli*, ix. Passages from this and other historical authorities are quoted and discussed in M. Gautier's *Introd.*, pp. xii-xvi.

in the poem, by the name of Roncevaux or Roncesvalles. In the oral tradition, in which it reached the poet, there are many variations from the historical version, and the changes, to which it has been submitted, admirably illustrate the development that legendary history experienced before and since at the hands of all the *jongleurs de geste*. In 778, the historian informs us, the rear-guard of a vast French army retiring from a campaign in Spain against the Moors, was cut to pieces in the mountains by a band of Gascon rebels, and in the battle Roland, the commander of the Breton coast, and many other imperial officers were slain. In the poem the Gascons become Saracens, in accord with the Crusading temperament which was first growing up in Europe at the time of its composition. Roland is represented as the nephew of Charles in a desire which became more intense in the later poets to unite all their actors by lineal ties. The defeat of the French is attributed to the treachery of Ganelon, one of themselves, from whom afterwards descends the long line of traitors who figure in subsequent romances, and finally the evil doers are signally punished,—in order to give the story the moral tone that is a permanent feature of later *chansons de geste*.¹

§ 5. The general style of the poem closely connects it with the *cantilènes*. Its opening is as brusque as that of the *Iliad*. It assumes on the part of its reader a knowledge of a large number of shorter poems on various subjects, of most of which nothing is now known in France except their names, though one of them has been preserved in an early Icelandic version.² The *Chanson* bears trace of having already undergone many *remaniements*, and of having itself been originally constructed from a series of *cantilènes* narrating episodes of Charles' wars in Spain, bound together by a *jongleur's*

¹ The versification of this poem is identical with that of all except the latest *chansons*. It is written in decasyllabics arranged in stanzas or *tirades* of varying lengths. The verses which number over 4000 in the earliest MSS. are assonanced, that is to say, the vowel sounds of the last syllable in each line of the *tirade* is the same. At the close of each stanza stands the word AOL, which either marks the reciter's pauses or is a rough indication of a musical note.

² Léon Gautier's *Roland*, pp. 60 and 375. The story of the capture of Noples, a little town in Spain, by Charles (Jo vus conquis e Noples e Commbles, v. 198) is preserved in the *Karlamangus Saga*, the Icelandic collection of Charlemagne romances.

improvisations.¹ A simple, persistent religious spirit pervades the poem. Its author was well acquainted with the stories of the Old Testament, and, like Joshua, Charles makes the sun stand still. In the characters of the heroes the poet has successfully portrayed the doughty simplicity and strength, combined with the tenderness of heart that we associate with the German races. They are drawn from Frankish models, and are innocent of Roman culture. Charles himself is of a patriarchal age, of unquestioned courage and irresistible authority, and loves his nephew with a sincerity that, when the catastrophe arrives, gives occasion to a scene of the purest pathos. Roland is a rash warrior filled with a manly affection for his friend Oliver, but at times he displays a childish pride which recalls Achilles to our memory. Female influence finds no place in this or any early poem. Roland, it is true, is affianced to *la belle Aude*, a sister of Oliver, but she plays a curiously insignificant part. Little that is supernatural enters into the story. The miracle that Charles performs, and the invincible nature of Joyeuse and Durendal, the swords of the Emperor and of his nephew, fail to disturb the realistic current of the narrative.²

¹ *Hist. Poët.*, pp. 70, 71.

² The beauty of many portions of the poem and its vivid style may be well illustrated by this short *tirade* (ccv) narrating Roland's death :

"Ço sent Rollanz de sun tens n'i ad plus :
Devers Espaigne *gist* en un pui agut.
A l'une main si ad sun piz batut :
'Deus! meie culpe *par* la tue vertut,
De mes peccchiez, des granz e des menus,
Que jo ai fait dès l'ure que nez fui
Tresqu' à cest jur que ei sui consoüs !'
Sun destre guant en ad vers Deu tendut :
Angle de l'ciel i descendent à lui."—AOL.

The following translation of the passage, which loses very much of the force of the original, may assist some readers. It is taken from Mr. Justice O'Hagan's *Song of Roland* (Lond. 1880), p. 175. The rhymes destroy nearly all the effect of the French rhythm.

"Roland feeleth his hour at hand;
On a knoll he lies towards the Spanish land.
With one hand beats he upon his breast :
'In thy sight, O God, be my sins confessed.
From my hour of birth, both the great and small,
Down to this day, I repent of all.'
As his glove he raises to God on high,
Angels of heaven descend him nigh."

§ 6. Such are the general characteristics of this and probably very many other early *chansons de geste*. Of the six or seven of identical tone now familiar to us by name, some are still extant, while others are only known from external evidence; they are all referred to the end of the 11th or the beginning of the 12th centuries. They deal with similar military exploits,—with Charles' wars in Saxony, Lombardy, or Apulia.¹ In a few—of a little less early date—an attempt was made to fill in the domestic details of the Emperor's life, and to embody legends of his youth and marriage.² In all, the historical element is still present, though at times it grows very vague. To the *trouveurs* of crusading times, the Saracens are the only known enemies of the French, and the place that the Normans really held in a great part of Europe during Charles' reign is erroneously transferred to them. But in no important respect, except in feebler literary style,—in greater coarseness and in more tedious repetition,—do these poems differ from the *Chanson de Roland*.

§ 7. Towards the close of the 12th century, however, the *Chansons de geste*, and *Roland* with them, gradually underwent further changes. They were lengthened unsparingly, and were inspired with a more distinctly feudal spirit. They glorified the resistance of the barons to their suzerains, in the disintegrating spirit of continental feudalism. To Charles himself little respect is paid. His actions and speeches exhibit him as a feeble dotard,³ and his vassals rise constantly against his authority. “*Laissomes ce vieillart qui tous est assotez,*” says one of the characters in *Guy de Bourgogne*, a *chanson* of the 12th century, and rebellions against his rule form a leading motive in the poems of the date.⁴ The *jongleurs* and *trouveurs* freely reject

¹ Such as *Aspremont* narrating the conquest of Apulia; *les Enfances Ogier*, that of Italy; *Guitelin*, that of Saxony; and *Balan*, that of Italy. All of them are not now extant in their early forms, but in their existing shapes have evidently not been radically altered from older originals. Of *Balan*, only a portion is still preserved, which occurs in the later romance of *Fierabras*.—*Hist. Poét.* p. 73.

² Such is *Berte au grand pied*, the history of the mythical mother of Charles, which is evidently a legend of great antiquity, although no reference to Charles' youth occurs in the *Chanson de Roland*.—*Hist. Poét.* p. 73.

³ He is also credited with a revolting sin, cp. Gautier, *Les Epopees Françaises*, iii. 65-6.

⁴ No less than 18 *Chansons* of the period treat of *les guerres de Charlemagne contre ses vassaux*. Among them is *Huon of Bordeaux*, and *Renaud of Montauban*, the *Chanson* of the eldest of the four sons of Aymon.

historical traditions, and with little diffidence invent new incidents and characters. The increased influence of the Crusades induced them to send their heroes, and, Charles among the number, to Constantinople, to Jerusalem, and to the further East, and novel adventures are thus provided to meet them at every turn. The female characters grow more important, and every warrior becomes enamoured of a Saracen maiden. The poets were now for the first time entering into rivalry with Chrétien de Troyes, the author of *Percevale*, and of *Eric et Enide*, French versions of the Breton tales of King Arthur, and were incorporating with the old narrative stories of pure adventure and enchantment which harmonized ill with the severe facts of the ancient legends. The romance before us may itself be ascribed in its earliest extant form to this class of *chansons*, and supplies us with copious illustrations of its characteristic features.

§ 8. One other change in principle the *chansons de geste* were slowly experiencing throughout the 13th century. There was something conservative about this new development: although it boldly defied all historical probability, it strictly defined the limits within which the poets, who adopted its method, might allow their imagination to work. Not content with rehearsing the careers of individuals, the attempt was made to combine the separate poems into great cycles, which should narrate the fortunes of families of warriors. The poets recklessly created relationships between the various heroes of the isolated *chansons*, and by endowing them with similar characteristics and destinies, they attempted to force upon their romances some internal unity. Frequently their object was to connect their patrons and their patrons' enemies with warriors or traitors of olden time. Their tone was purely realistic, and the practice gave a new meaning to the word *geste*, and *chansons de geste* were interpreted as family histories. Charles or his father is the progenitor of the chief apocryphal family of the kind, but two other lines are known at least to have been worked up by the *trouveurs* with equal care.¹ Some,

¹ N'ot ke .III. gestes en France la garnie: Dou roi de France est la plus seignorie. . . . Et l'autre après, bien est droit que je die, Est de Doon à la barbe florie. Cil de Maianes qui tant ot baronie. . . . La tierce geste, qui molt fist à proisier, Fu de Garin de Monglaine le fier. *Girart de Viane*, pp. 1, 2, *chanson* of prob. first years of 13th century, quoted in *Hist. Poët.* p. 76.

like the Labdacidæ and Pelopidæ, were represented as bearing a fatal curse, but no religious notion, as in the Greek stories, was mingled with its transmission. It was wholly ascribed to the accident of blood relationship, and there was no further attempt to explain its cause. Doon of Mayence, the father of one of the *geste*, has, for example, the questionable honour of being regarded by the writers of this class of *Chansons* as the ancestor, through Ganelon, the villain of Roncesvalles, of a whole army of earthly traitors. All who intermarry with his family inevitably grow as sinful as their kinsmen.¹

§ 9. (After the 14th century there is little fixed principle in the development of the Charlemagne romances. Additions and interpolations, sequels and prologues of pure invention follow each other in rapid succession. The *jongleurs'* chief endeavour was to catch the popular ear, and with that object before them they adopted every changing literary fashion.) It was in vain that the older *trouveurs* protested that they were losing sight of the historical spirit of their predecessors.

“Chil nouvel jouléor, par leur outrecuidanche
Et pour leur nouveaus dis, l'ont mis en oublianche,”

is the complaint of the author of *Doon de Maïence*.² When the Alexandrian romances were at the height of their popularity, their versification was borrowed with its twelve-syllabled lines—a metre still known by the name of the hero which it was first employed to celebrate.³ Similarly, the authors of the *chansons* tried to refine the savagery of their old characters by foisting upon them the gentle courtesy of the Arthurian heroes and heroines. In many of their compositions the magical element of Eastern literature finds a large place, and in the later Middle Ages their successors made no resistance to the spurious chivalry that overran all the literature and social life of the period.⁴ At the same time Charles' history, as it was narrated

¹ The Chanson *Doon de Maïence* dates from the 14th century. Alxinger, the German poet, attempted to make of a later form of it an epic poem in 1787.

² Ed. Pey. p. 1, quoted in M. Guessard's *Introd. to Huon*, p. vij.

³ The poem of *Roland* actually underwent the alteration. Cf. M. Gautier's *Introd.*, p. xxxvij. *Huon* and other poems were wholly rewritten in Alexandrines.

⁴ *Vide*, for example, the changes that came over the story of *Ogier le Danois*, of which a great portion exists in a 12th century version. In the latest version the hero visits the palace of Avallon, and is saved by the fairy Morgana, the sister of King Arthur, who, also living there, is visited by the Knights of his

in the *chansons*, found its way into the Chronicles and Latin ecclesiastical poems,¹ as at an earlier date the traditional poetry concerning Roland had entered the Chronicle wrongly ascribed to Turpin, and there the legends were fated to assume a markedly clerical tone.

§ 10. About the date of the invention of printing the metrical romances received their final form.² They were reduced in their contemporary shape to prose, and were soon afterwards printed and published. (Many of them are characterized by the affectations and intricacies of style which Cervantes has powerfully satirized in his introduction to *Don Quixote*.) But the earliest *Chansons* have for the most part escaped this final desecration. The simplicity of the *Chanson de Roland* did not satisfy the perverted literary tastes of an age which was wont to "praise Syr Topaz for a noble tale." All knowledge of it in its purest shape was lost; the manuscripts containing it disappeared, and the one revealing it to us in its 11th century form was only recovered during the present century.

§ 11. We need not dwell for our present purpose on the later history of the Charlemagne romances. The rise of the theatre did not affect them. With their characters continually repeated, with their perpetual battles, with their lack of female interest, they did not lend themselves to dramatization, and with only one or two was the experiment ever made in France. A few poems, based on incidents in Charles' romantic career, appeared in France in the 17th century. Napoleon, who posed in Europe as the 19th century Charlemagne, encouraged the study of his authentic and fictitious history, and his brother Lucien had the temerity to publish a volume of verses on "le digne précurseur de son frère." The romantic movement of the last century did not immediately affect the Charlemagne romances. They were known only in the late and degenerate prose versions, and although extracts from them were published in *La Bibliothèque des Romans* about 1778, all trace of their development was sought in vain. It was in the 19th century

Round Table. Ogier's magical return to youth, and all the magical machinery of the late romance are probably of Eastern origin. See *Hist. Poét.* pp. 305-13; and Dunlop, *Hist. of Fiction* (edit. 1845), pp. 138-140.

¹ *Hist. Poét.* pp. 92-107.

² Prose versions of thirteen *Chansons* were printed in France between 1480 and 1500.—*Hist. Poét.* p. 470.

that a vigorous and sustained effort was first made to learn their history, and to rediscover their original forms. The result of this endeavour, with which the name of Paulin Paris must be chiefly connected, has been to give the metrical romances a place among the most cherished remains of French mediæval poetry, and to raise about them a gigantic critical literature.

§ 12. If we carefully bear in mind the development of the French Charlemagne romances, which has here been very briefly sketched, we can readily determine the relations to which those that have been introduced into England stand towards them. (One criticism may be made on nearly the whole of the English series. They almost all bear trace of being mere translations from French originals, although these have not always reached us. New details are occasionally introduced, but their leading features are literally borrowed, nor have the translators chosen the best or purest models. They have taken *chansons de geste* of the 14th and 15th centuries, and those of an earlier date appear to be unknown to them.) The explanation, that a learned French critic has suggested for the fact is probably the true one. "At the time when our epic poetry was flourishing," he says, "that is, in the 13th and far more in the 12th centuries, our *chansons de geste* did not require translation to be understood in England by all whom they could interest; and in the 14th century when English writers wished to appropriate some of them, the old poems had been re-written, and the best of the early ones forgotten."¹ The circumstances that the *Chanson de Roland*, believed by several French writers to be the work of a Norman,² was read as generally in England as in France, and that the earliest extant manuscript of another *Chanson* of the 12th century, relating to Charles' apocryphal travels, leaves no doubt that it was prepared for Anglo-Norman readers,³ gives the best possible support to such criticism. (The small effect that the English Charlemagne romances (except in the special case of *Huon of Bordeaux*) have had on our later literature is

¹ M. Paul Meyer in *La Bibliothèque de l'Ecole des Chartes* (1867), p. 309.

² Such is the opinion of M. Gautier, *Introd. to Roland*, pp. xix—xxiv.

³ Cp. *Charlemagne*, an Anglo-Norman poem now first published by M. Francesque Michel, 1836. The MS. is in the Brit. Museum. King's Library, 16, E. viii.

attributable mainly to two causes. In the first place their literary inferiority must be generally acknowledged, and in the second they were in constant rivalry with the Arthurian romances which, although also borrowed from France, appealed more nearly to the history of our own past, and attracted by their gentle chivalrous tone, and their greater abundance of human interest, many writers possessed of a literary power which effectually naturalized them in this country.) But it would be as serious an error to under-estimate, as to over-estimate, the influence of the Charlemagne literature in this country, and for myself I believe it has not yet, as a whole, been adequately measured.

§ 13. Including all the fragments of which we have any remains, the English romances are ten in number. Several of them treat of the same legend. Seven are in a metrical form, and have been referred to dates varying from the middle of the 14th to the opening of the succeeding century. Three are translations of prose versions, and appeared in England soon after the invention of printing.¹ The quasi-

¹ For the use of students the general results at which the editors in this series have arrived as to the number, date, and origin of the English Charlemagne Romances may be tabulated thus:

ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

PROBABLE ORIGINS.

A. *Fierabras* cycle.

Metrical.	1. <i>The Sordone of Babylone</i> (? 1400).	1. An early version of the <i>Fierabras</i> story in <i>Balan</i> , a lost <i>Chanson</i> (12th c.).
	2. <i>Sir Ferumbras</i> (? 1380).	2. <i>Fierabras</i> , <i>Chanson de geste</i> (13th c.).
Prose.	3. <i>Charles the Grete</i> , 1485 [Caxton].	3. French prose romance of <i>Fierabras</i> (15th c.), formed of the <i>Ch. de g.</i> with extracts and additions from late Chronicles.

B. *Otinel* (or *Otuel*) cycle.

Metrical.	1. <i>a. Roland and Vernagu.</i>	1. <i>a</i> & <i>β</i> . Remnants of a small English cycle, of which <i>a</i> is probably based on Chroniclers' (and mainly Turpin's) summaries of <i>Chansons</i> , not now known.
	<i>β. Otuel</i> [Auchinleck MS.].	<i>β</i> . Derived from a version of <i>Otinel</i> other than that in the extant <i>Chanson</i> of the name.
	2. <i>Sege of Melayne</i> (? 139).	2. Late prologue to <i>Ch. de g. Otinel</i> (13th c.) not extant in France.
	3. <i>Otuel</i> [Thornton MS.] ?1390.	3. <i>Otinel</i> , <i>Chanson de geste</i> (13th c.).

historical events, to which all with four exceptions refer, are prior to the great expedition to Spain, in which Roland met his death, but they have a very vague historical foundation. The death or conversion of Saracen chiefs, and the marriage of their hastily-baptized daughters with Christian heroes are invariably the central motives of the poems, and the French warriors are challenged to fight with truly 'damnable iteration' by Saracen giants like Ferumbras, Otuel, and Vernagu. The early romances do not evince strong crusading tendencies so distinctly as an emphatic ecclesiastical or theological tone of thought, which is not present in any but the late French poems. *Fierabras* and *Otinel*, two well-known *chansons de geste*, have inspired the greater number of the Early English romances. They narrate the struggles between Charles, as the champion of the Papacy, and the Saracen enemies of Rome; in the first romance the Emperor's object is to recover *les reliques de la Passion*, and in the second to baptize the leading opponent of Christianity. In their extant French forms both poems date from the 13th century; but they bear traces of having already undergone frequent *remaniements*, and although they are free from the extravagant interpolations common to those of a later date, they are far from being the best literary examples of their class. Of *Fierabras*, *Sir Ferumbras*, the metrical romance, which appeared first in this series, is a fairly literal English rendering,¹ and Caxton's prose romance of *Charles the Grete* is translated from an extended French prose version of the same *Chanson*.² *Fierabras*, in an earlier form, originally constituted the central portion of a longer poem known to some early chroniclers, under the

C. Detached Romances.

- | | | | |
|--|---|---|---|
| <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="writing-mode: vertical-rl; transform: rotate(180deg); font-size: small; margin-right: 5px;">Metrical.</div> <div style="font-size: 3em; margin-right: 5px;">{</div> </div> | 1. <i>Rowlande's Song</i> (? 1400). | 1. <i>Remaniement</i> (13th c.), of <i>Chanson de Roland</i> , now unknown. | |
| | 2. <i>Rauf Coilzear</i> (c. 1475). | 2. Most probably original. | |
| | <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="writing-mode: vertical-rl; transform: rotate(180deg); font-size: small; margin-right: 5px;">Prose.</div> <div style="font-size: 3em; margin-right: 5px;">{</div> </div> | 3. <i>Four sons of Aymon</i> , 1490 [Caxton]. | 3. French prose version (15th c.) of the <i>Ch. de g.</i> , <i>Renaud de Montauban</i> (13th c.). |
| | | 4. <i>Huon of Bordeaux</i> , ? 1534 [Berners]. | 4. French prose version (15th c.) of the <i>Ch. de g. Huon de Bordeaux</i> (13th c.). |

¹ The English Charlemagne Romances, Pt. I. *Sir Ferumbras*, edited by Sidney J. Herrtage. B.A.. E. E. T. S. 1879. (From Ashmole MS. 33.)

² Pts. III. and IV. ed. S. J. Herrtage. 1880-1. (From unique Brit. Mus. copy.)

title of *Balan*, and the *Sowdone of Babylone*, which is evidently an adaptation of a more detailed version of the opening part of the story of Fierabras than that to be found in the surviving *Chanson*, is probably based on a portion of the lost cycle, doubtless extant in the time of the English translator.¹ Similarly, *Otinell* has given birth to two metrical translations, of which the one in the Thornton MS. adheres with much literalness² to the *Chanson*, as we now have it, and the other, in the Auchinleck MS., is altogether freer in its general treatment, and perhaps drawn from a *remaniement* other than any we now possess.³ The two romances of *The Sege of Melayne*⁴ and *Roland and Vernagu*⁵ can be referred to no known French poems, but we must hesitate before pronouncing them original English productions. The former is probably taken from some introduction to *Otinell*, written at the period when every Charlemagne legend was receiving various amplifications. The latter is reasonably thought by M. Gaston Paris, to have belonged to an English poem of the 14th century, bearing some such title as 'Charlemagne and Roland,' mainly based on extracts from Turpin's Chronicles and a late version of *Otinell*.

Of the remaining English romances the fragment of the Song of Roland is drawn from a poor 13th century version of the great *Chanson de Roland*.⁶ Caxton's *Four Sons of Aymon*⁷ and Lord Berner's *Huon of Bordeaux*,⁸ are both direct translations of French prose romances, that is, of amplified and corrupted versions of two 13th century *chansons de geste*, *Renaud de Montauban*, and *Huon de Bordeaux*. Rauf Coilyear, in the absence of all evidence to the contrary, has been regarded as an original English poem.⁹ It is evidently of a late date, and its connection with the other Charlemagne legends is very slight. Thus almost all the English romances share the characteristics of those *chansons de geste* which have under-

¹ Pt. V. *The Romance of the Sowdone of Babylone*, edited by Dr. Hausknecht (E. E. T. S.). 1881. (From Phillipps' MS.)

² Pt. II. pp. 63-105. Ed. by S. J. Herrtage. (E. E. T. S.) 1880.

³ Pt. VI. pp. 65, *et seq.* Ed. S. J. Herrtage. (E. E. T. S.) 1882.

⁴ Pt. II. pp. 1-53.

⁵ Pt. VI. pp. 1-65.

⁶ Pt. II. pp. 105-137. (From unique Lansdowne MS.)

⁷ Pt. IX. (Not yet reprinted.)

⁸ Pts. VII. and VIII. (1882.)

⁹ Pt. VI. (1882.)

gone numerous renovations. Of the Charlemagne poems in their purest shapes English literature clearly knows nothing.

§ 14. Of the popularity of each of these poems, which in the case of *Ferumbras* and *Otuel* was certainly great in the 14th and 15th centuries, evidence has been given in the prefaces to the various volumes that have already been published, but in the general survey I am here taking I may bring together a few general facts to demonstrate the limits of their influence. We believe that in the early Middle Ages our Norman ancestors were generally well acquainted with the great incidents of the series of legends, although of the vastness of the cycle they knew little. Descriptions of Charles and stories of Roland, for example, were certainly received here with universal favour. It is very probable, as many have pointed out, that the *Chanson de Roland* was sung by the Normans at the battle of Senlac.¹ M. Gautier is of opinion that it is the work of an Anglo-Norman poet, and some French critics have even ascribed it to a famous abbot of Peterborough.² Beside these disputable opinions we may place the facts that the earliest and chief manuscript of this poem has been for many centuries, and is still, in an English library, and that Anglo-Norman versions of other Charlemagne romances leave no doubt that they were largely read in England in the 12th and 13th centuries. Norman-French poems of the period, moreover, always do honour to Charlemagne and Roland. In some verses, in an early English poem, probably of the time of Edward I., we meet with such a passage as this :

Fele romanses men make newe
Of good knyghtes strong and trewe ;
Of hey dedys men rede romance,
Both in England and in Fraunce,
Of Rowelond and of Olyver
And of everie Doseper.³

In later times the Pyrenees were always identified in England with the disaster of Roncesvalles, and when the Black Prince's expedition to

¹ Mr. Hertridge quotes the famous lines from Wace's *Roman de Rou* on the point (Pt. II. of the Series, p. xix). Mr. Freeman, in his *Norman Conquest* (iii. 478), is of opinion that Wace's statement refers to the *Chanson*.

² Introd. to *Roland*, xiv-xxvi.

³ Quoted in Warton's *English Poetry* from an introductory poem to *Richard Cœur de Lion* (temp. Ed. I.), ii. p. 25. (Hazlitt's Edition.)

Spain was celebrated in a Latin poem, a monkish gloss reminded its readers that *Carolus magnus rediens de Hispania amisit ibi Rothelande et caeteros in Rouncivale sepultos*.¹ Chaucer, moreover, and other poets knew Ganelon, the traitor of Roncesvalles, as a typical villain, worthy of a place beside Judas Iscariot or Sinon.² One circumstance in the legend of Roland—his friendship for Oliver—has given us a very common proverbial phrase which France never possessed.³ Spenser, like many of his predecessors from the time of Robert of Brunne, has anglicized the word *douzeperes*, which in the Charlemagne romances is the technical name of the twelve chief companions of the Emperor, and uses it in the singular in the sense of a mighty warrior.⁴ And for a long time in England the fame of the defeat of Roncesvalles survived in a common adjectival epithet, and a strong voice or a strong woman was known as a *runcival* voice or a *runcival* woman.⁵

After the Middle Ages Charles the Great grew less familiar to Englishmen, but he was not unknown to them, and the prose romances, which only show him in inglorious dotage, were widely read. More than one play in the 16th century was based on his exploits and those of his companions, and Dyce's statement that he was unacquainted with any old play in which that monarch figures must be regarded as based on imperfect information.⁶ We

¹ Wright's *Political Poems*, i, 105. (Rolls' Series.)

² Chaucer, *Nonne Prestes Tale*, 15,232-4. The Fox is thus addressed:—

“O false morderour, rucking in thy den!
O newe Scarriot, newe Genelon,
O false dissimulour, O Greek Sinon.”

See also *Monkes Tale*, 14,653-6.

³ The exact origin of *A Roland for an Oliver*, which is omitted, so far as I can see, from W. C. Hazlitt's *English Proverbs*, has never been explained. The French expression of the same character runs—*Je lui baillerai Guy contre Robert*. A discussion some years ago, in *Notes and Queries*, as to the growth of the phrase, failed to throw any real light on the subject.

⁴ Cp. ‘Big-looking, like a doughty Doucepere,’ *Faerie Queene*, III. x. 30. Warton in his *Observations on the Faerie Queene* (i. 252-8) gives an instructive account of the use of the word in England.

⁵ Nares' Dict. (ed. Halliwell and Wright), s.v. *Runcivall*, large, strong. ‘Th'art a good runcival voice to cry lantern and candlestick.’—*Satiromastix*. Speaking of gigantic bones seen at Roncesvalles, Mandeville says, ‘Hereof I take it comes that seeing a great woman we say she is a *Ronncevall*.’—*Travels*, Fol. 22. Ed. 1600. Similarly, Tusser, as Mr. Herbage points out to me, calls marrow-fat peas, ‘runcivall peas.’—*Husbandry*, ch. xli. l. 9.

⁶ Dyce's *Peele*, ii. 88.

have at least one drama in manuscript, of which he is the hero,¹ and two others are known to have existed, although no longer extant, in which he must have played an important part.² Meanwhile Roland or Orlando was re-introduced to English readers in Elizabeth's reign by Sir John Harrington's popular translation of Ariosto's *Orlando Furioso*, and upon this foundation Robert Greene based one of his tame dramatic productions.³ And, though the Roland of the Italian poet differed very much from his prototype in the *chansons de geste*, his reappearance in a new form temporarily renewed their familiarity with his name and many of his characteristic adventures.

(Shortly after the 16th century, Charles the Great and Roland, like other mediæval heroes, were practically lost sight of in England, and little attempt has since been made to revive an interest in their legendary history.) Not even in chap-books were their achievements perpetuated, and they failed to attract the genius of any great literary worker who might have given them a lasting place in the higher branches of our literature. We have in all periods to seek in somewhat obscure places for indications of their popularity, and, although we may legitimately infer that the Charlemagne heroes were ever held in high honour in mediæval and Tudor England, and although we know that they made their way into the common parlance of our countrymen, (we cannot regard them, with one exception, as leaving upon our literature any deep or permanent impression.)

¹ My friend, Mr. A. H. Bullen, has pointed out to me the Egerton MS., 1994, in the British Museum, where the play is to be found. He has given an account of it in the 2nd volume of his *Collection of Old Plays*, and I have there, at his request, added a note on the manner in which the legend, embodied in the play, reached this country.

² They were based on Caxton's *Four Sons of Aymon* and Berners' *Huon of Bordeaux*. Vide Henslowe's *Diary*, and *infra*, p. xlvii.

³ *The Historie of Orlando Furioso, one of the Twelue Pieres of France*. 1594. *Infra*, p. xlix.

II.

THE ROMANCE OF HUON OF BORDEAUX.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>§ 1. <i>The 13th century Chanson de geste</i>, p. xxiv.</p> <p>§ 2. <i>Its story</i>, p. xxv.</p> <p>§ 3. <i>Its main characteristics</i>, p. xxvi.</p> <p>§ 4. <i>Historical traditions of Huon</i>, p. xxviii.</p> <p>§ 5. <i>The origin of the Oberon-legend</i>, p. xxix.</p> <p>§ 6. <i>The character of Oberon in the early romance</i>, p. xxxi.</p> <p>§ 7. <i>Amplifications of the Romance</i>, p. xxxii.</p> <p>§ 8. <i>The continuations in the Turin Manuscript</i>, p. xxxiii.</p> <p>§ 9. <i>Other developments of the story in France and Holland</i>, p. xxxv.</p> <p>§ 10. <i>The French prose version</i>, p. xxxvi.</p> | <p>§ 11. <i>Later history of the romance in France</i>, p. xxxvii.</p> <p>§ 12. <i>The English translation</i>, p. xxxviii.</p> <p>§ 13. <i>The political career of Lord Berners</i>, p. xl.</p> <p>§ 14. <i>His literary character</i>, p. xlii.</p> <p>§ 15. <i>His translation of Froissart</i>, p. xlii.</p> <p>§ 16. <i>Other works</i>, p. xlv.</p> <p>§ 17. <i>Lord Berners' death</i>, p. xlv.</p> <p>§ 18. <i>Romances in Elizabethan England</i>, p. xlv.</p> <p>§ 19. <i>Popularity of Huon of Bordeaux, 1547—1594</i>, p. xlviii.</p> <p>§ 20. <i>Oberon in English literature</i>, p. xlix.</p> <p>§ 21. <i>Bibliography of Huon of Bordeaux</i>, p. lii.</p> <p>§ 22. <i>Conclusion</i>, p. lvii.</p> |
|--|---|

§ 1. The romance of *Huon of Bordeaux* illustrates in several ways the general remarks I have been making on both the French and English versions of the Charlemagne legends, but, beyond the characteristics that it has in common with its class, it possesses certain features peculiar to itself, that perhaps give it its highest interest in the eyes of English readers. In France it has undergone a very extended development, capable of a clearer presentation than in the case of many other of the *chansons de geste*; in England, translated almost literally, it has not only enjoyed its full share of popularity, but, by supplying the Elizabethan poets with the story of Oberon, has exerted upon English literature an influence to which no other members of its class can legitimately lay claim.

None of the forms in which we know the romance of *Huon* can be referred to a very early date. The oldest extant *chanson de geste* on the subject, the manuscript of which is now in the library of

Tours, possesses hardly any of the characteristics of the *Chanson de Roland*.¹ Its incidents are more complicated, and belong for the most part to a very different world. The central interest of the poem is divided between the peer of France, who plays the title-rôle, and an omnipotent and omniscient dwarf, who adorns the throne of fairy land. It is impossible to ascribe the story, as it first appears, to any date anterior to the middle of the 13th century. Four times was it probably rewritten in metre before the invention of printing, when it was reduced to prose in France, and in that garb brought to our own shores. But in spite of the amplifications and continuations that the tale has experienced—changes which have more than tripled its original length—the first half of both the French and English prose versions has preserved with little alteration the story as it appears in the 13th century *chanson*. The chapters printed in the volume before us present the old story in its original literary shape. The last portion of Lord Berners' translations, like his French original, owes its origin to sources of far less antiquity.

§ 2. So much of the legend of Huon as reverts to the 13th century is to the following effect. The story in the *Chanson* opens four years after the death of Séguin, the duke of Bordeaux. His two young sons, Huon and Gerard, who have inherited his property, have not as yet done homage to the Emperor, their suzerain. But their troubles have already begun. A traitor at Charles' court, Earl Amaury by name, covets their inheritance, and on the ground that they have not already acknowledged in person their vassalage, denounces them to Charles as rebels against his authority. The Emperor at the moment is of great age and feeble health, and, being about to resign his crown in favour of his son Charlot, is desirous that his supremacy should be recognized in every part of his dominions. Huon and Gerard are, therefore, ordered to appear at once before him at Paris, or forfeit their estates to the Earl, who

¹ For an account of the MS. see M. Guessard's edition of the poem, Paris, 1860, p. xxxix. *et seq.* Its versification is like that of *La Chanson*, but its tirades are much longer, extending at times to 500 vv. The length of the *Chanson* is 10,495 lines. Neither the name nor province of the author is known.

had called the Emperor's attention to their dereliction of duty. Well aware that they could give satisfactory proofs to their royal master of their loyalty, the traitor, as soon as he learnt that the youths were on their way to the capital, induced the prince Charlot, Charles' elder son, over whom he exercised unlimited control, to join him in a plot for waylaying and killing them on their journey. But his plans were unsuccessful. Charlot wounds Gerard, but is himself slain by Huon. The Emperor, on learning the death of his son, vows eternal vengeance upon his murderer. A duel between Huon and Amaury, which proves fatal to the latter, only inflames his wrath, and he finally dismisses the young knight on a grotesque, but perilous, and, to all appearance, fatal mission to Babylon. There the first part of the *chanson de geste* of Huon of Bordeaux may be said to close, and in the remaining verses the form of the story somewhat changes. Very perilous indeed are the adventures that Huon meets in the East, although he is fortunate enough to find a companion in Gerames, an old friend of his father's, who is living a hermit's life among the Saracens. To most of the dangers he must have succumbed, had he only relied on human means of protection. Happily, however, he finds other aid. Oberon, the dwarf-king of the fairies, whose dominions lie between Jerusalem and Babylon, taking pity on the knight's misfortunes, proffers his assistance, and with such support Huon not only successfully performs his mission, but woos and marries Esclaramonde, the daughter of the Emir of Babylon, on her conversion to Christianity. On his return to France the treachery of his brother Gerard plunges him once again into difficulties, but Oberon extricates him from the new dangers, reconciles him to the Emperor, and ultimately names him his successor on the throne of fairy land.

§ 3. The story, it will be perceived, has all the characteristics which were attributed to the *chansons de gestes* in their decline. Charlemagne has no dignity about his bearing. His power is jealously regarded by his vassals, and he is more than once placed in a position of signal humiliation. "Syr, yf ye do as ye haue sayde," are the words addressed to him by one of his counsellors in Lord Berners' version, which here almost literally translates the old French poem—"Sir, yf ye do as ye haue sayd, I nor neuer any other man shall truste you,

& every man shall say, fare & nere, that herof (hear of) thys extorsyon, that in the end of your dayes ye are become chyldysche, & more lyke a sot then a wyse man."¹ Other circumstances are still more decisive. A reference to Tristram's love for the "fayre Yaoude" and some points in the genealogy of Oberon, indicate that the author was acquainted with the Arthurian romances,² and Huon's statement that he "departyd out of fraunce . . . That any aduenture that I myght here of, though it were neuer so perelous that I shulde neuer eschew it for any fere of deth," brings him in close relations with the heroes of the *romans d'aventures*.³ (The absurd length to which the writer pushes the endeavour, that characterizes the later poems of the *jongleurs*, to bring his hero into lineal relationship with all sorts and conditions of men with whom he comes in contact on his journeyings, is another testimony to the lateness of the present form of the legend.⁴) The important place which the enchantments of Oberon hold in the story, the care bestowed on the treatment of the character and influence of Esclaramonde, the hero's bride, and the extravagant unreality of Huon's adventures in the East, likewise supply conclusive evidence in favour of a similar inference. The 13th century *Chanson* must be positively placed among those romances which attempt to graft on the simple lines of the pure *chansons de geste* the varied incident of the tales of the Round Table, and the magical machinery of Eastern stories like the *Arabian Nights' Entertainment*;

¹ *Infra*, p. 47, ll. 9, *et seq.*—

"Quant les noveles iront par la pais

Que diront tout li haut homme gentil?
Vos jugemens n'ert mais en France ois,
Tout diront mais, li grant et li petit;
Qu'en vo viellee estes tous rasotia."

Huon de Bordeaux, ll. 22-29, *et seq.*

See also, Oberon's reference to the Emperor's fatal sin, ll. 10,225, *et seq.*, and *infra*, p. 258.

² *Infra*, p. 157, l. 27, *Huon de Bordeaux*, l. 6808,—

"Tristrans morut por bele Iseut amer."

For Oberon's genealogy see below, pp. 72-3.

³ *Infra*, p. 97, l. 1, *et seq.*, and *Huon*, l. 4595, *et seq.*

⁴ Huon claims relationship with the Pope of Rome, with the Abbot of Cluny, with Garryn of Saint Omers, a lord of Brindisi, with Macsaire, the pagan tyrant of Tormont, with Sebylle, the prisoner of the castle of Dunostre, and many others, as the reader will perceive for himself.

§ 4. There are many traces in the poem itself of a legend of a previous period, devoid of such embellishments as I have noticed,—of a *chanson* celebrating Huon's exploits before an enchanted world had become a commonplace with the *trouveurs* or *jongleurs*. Much of the versification of the 13th century, for example, has an older rhythm.¹ The story of the causes of Huon's banishment, after a few slight modifications have been made, has an early mediæval tone,² and, although the historical element is not readily detected, it is easy to perceive that in it has been incorporated many vague memories of early historical events. An early chronicler tells us how a duke of Bordeaux, whose son once challenged Charlot, the Emperor's heir, bore, like the father of the hero of the romance,³ the name of Séguin. Instances, moreover, of such disagreement with the ruler of France as Huon exhibits, occur frequently in the history of the princes of Aquitaine in the 8th century. Similarly, an early manuscript of an epic poem of the 12th century, narrating the exploits of the chief warriors of Lorraine—*Les Loherains*,—contains seventeen verses which tell how Huon, the son of duke Séguin of Bordeaux, slew an earl at Paris, and, being for the crime banished the Empire, went to Lombardy, where he married the daughter of a Count, and finally died of poison.⁴ If this form of the legend has little claim to be considered of the highest antiquity, it sufficiently proves that Oberon was not originally the protector of Huon after his banishment, and that his journey to the East may be regarded as purely apocryphal. But a closer parallel to the adventures of Huon at Paris has been found by a recent writer in *Romania*, in historical facts which possibly have a better claim to be considered as the prototype of the tale. Certain events that took place under Charles the Bald are almost identical with those recorded in the first part of the romance. And, if we allow the general resemblance, the confusion of identity between the Emperor and his grandson, an error that could be

¹ This and the recurrence of the same couplets are noted by M. Gautier in his support of this view.—*Les Epopées Françaises*, iii. 732.

² That is to say, the first 2000 lines of the *Chanson* and just 20 chapters of this text (pp. 1-52).

³ *Les Epopées Françaises*, iii. 732.

⁴ Quoted by M. Gautier (as above).

paralleled in all popular literature, need not cause us much embarrassment. During the reign of Charles the Bald, authentic records tell us, the county of Bordeaux was governed by a duke, named Séguin, whose bold defence of Saintonge against the Normans, usually confounded in the French national traditions with the Saracens, exactly fitted him to be the hero of popular *cantilènes* and of later epic narrative. Similarly, Charles the Bald's eldest son closely resembles the Charlot of the romance. Like the latter, he was "ryght pryuey" with traitors,¹ and he was slain by a brave warrior in pursuit of a foolish adventure.² How these floating traditions of Séguin, Huon and the heir of Charles the Bald may have crystallized, and at length have been introduced into the great Charlemagne epic cycle, is a process of assimilation that must be readily intelligible to the student of popular mythology.

§ 5. As early as the 13th century, however, we have evidence that Oberon became an essential part of the story. Albericus Trium Fontium, in his chronicles which were finished about 1240, gives a version of the legend very similar to that of the romance. "Mortuus est," he writes, "etiam hoc anno (810) Sewinus dux Burdegalensis, cui fratres fuerunt Alelmus et Ancherus, hujus Sewini filii Gerardus et Hugo, qui Karolum, filium Karoli, casu interfecit, Almaricum proditorem in duello vicit, exul de patria ad mandatum regis fugit, *Alberonem, virum mirabilem et fortunatum reperit, et cœtera sive fabulosa sive historica connexa.*"³ The passage constitutes one of the earliest records of the existence of the fairy-king under the name of Oberon (Auberon) in European literature, and his importance in our own literature, together with the part he takes in the romance before us, is sufficient excuse for our dwelling on his origin and early history. M. Gaston Paris has attempted to show that an apocryphal prince of

¹ *Infra*, p. 15.

² M. Longnon in *Romania*, t. iii., has carefully worked out the probable connection of Huon with the reign of Charles the Bald, and has reprinted from various early chronicles all that is known of Séguin or the young Charles. Charlot bears in *Huon* exactly the opposite character to that which he does in the earlier *Chanson de Geste* of "Ogier le Danois," and there is no historical basis for his treacherous behaviour, unless we admit M. Longnon's theory.—Gautier, *Les Epopées Françaises*, vol. iii. 734.

³ M. Guessard's *Huon de Bordeaux*, p. xij.

the Merovingian dynasty, who was credited with singular powers of enchantment, bore the name of *Albericus*, but we are not ready to regard the Oberon-legend as based on any strictly historical foundation.¹ He is probably a purely mythical character, and, so far, is wholly foreign to the Charlemagne cycle; but, nevertheless, the author of *Huon* has not the slightest logical justification for placing him in an Eastern environment. He springs from the mythology of the Western world, and though many arguments have been advanced to connect him with Celtic or Welsh myths, I incline to the opinion that he is purely Teutonic. M. de la Villemarqué has most vigorously supported the Celtic theory. He identifies the fairy king with the ruler of the enchanted world in Welsh romances, Gwyn-Araun by name, of which he claims Oberon (*i. e.* Auberon, as it is usually spelt in French) to be a literal translation. In Welsh mythology he asserts that Gwyn is brought up, like Oberon, by "Morge li fée," and, similarly, is a dwarf in appearance, and bears at his neck a magic horn.² But the Germanic theory is based on firmer and wider foundations. Auberon, as Keightley long ago pointed out, very closely resembles the dwarf Elberich or Alberich, who figures in many early German folk tales.³ In the *Nibelungen-lied* Alberich is the guardian of the celebrated hoard which Siegfried won from the Nibelungen, and in a story of the *Heldenbuch*, a collection of German romances of the 13th century, a king of the elves bearing the same name plays a rôle very similar to that of Oberon in *Huon of Bordeaux*. Here Ortnit, a German emperor, visits the Sultan of Syria to gain his daughter. Alberich meets him on his journey, and aids him in his quest. He is three feet in height, can foresee the future, and forbids, as in the case of Huon and Esclaramonde,

¹ Cp. *Revue Germanique*, xvi. p. 387.

² See his letter on the subject in M. Guesard's edition of *Huon de Bordeaux*. Paris, 1860, pp. xxv-xxix. M. Gaston Paris positively denies that Gwyn-Araun is a translation of Auberon, and thus the basis of Villemarqué's theory is destroyed. Gwyn = white, but Aube, it is asserted, never represented in French the Latin album (*i. e.* Fr. blanc). *Revue Germanique*, xvi. pp. 350-90.

³ Keightley's *Fairy Mythology*, p. 206. Alberich is connected by Grimm (*Deutsche Mythologie*, p. 599) with Alp- Alb- E.b = elf. *Ich*, another writer explains, is a German termination which has been replaced in French by the Romance termination *on*.

all intercourse between Ortnit and his pagan bride until after the latter's baptism.¹ The connection between him and Oberon is, as Keightley has remarked, indubitable, and the German story, of which he is one of the chief heroes, is almost identical with parts of *Huon*. But there is little need to accept the opinion of some continental critics, and regard either of the tales as borrowed from the other. As M. Gaston Paris has suggested, Alberich or Auberon, perhaps originally a hero of Rhenish folk-lore, doubtless formed part of the Frankish, as of all German, mythology, and his traits have been preserved in the romances of both France and Germany.

§ 6. But though of Teutonic origin, Oberon in the romance before us has submitted in no slight degree to other influences, and has absorbed characteristics from very different sources. His poetic creator would seem indeed to have made of him a *point de rencontre* for those three great currents of the narrative poetry of early mediæval France of which we have already spoken. He represents the ideas that were identified not only with Frankish history, but also with that of *Brétagne et Rome la grand*. Mainly Frankish in tone, Oberon has assimilated some of the spirit not only of Breton romance, but of classical and scriptural antiquity, as it was known in the Middle Ages. Any one of the curious pedigrees that appear in the various versions of the romance illustrates the mingled elements of which he is compounded. In the 13th century *chanson* he thus describes his birth,—

“Jules Cesar me nori bien soué ;
Morge li fée, qui tant ot de biauté,
Che fu ma mère, si me puist Dix salver.
De ces II fui concus et engerréa.”—Vv. 8492-6.

He is, in fact, a son of Julius Cæsar and Morgan le Fay. The former in mediæval legend, it should be borne in mind, is little connected with the Cæsar of history. With Alexander the Great, to whom he is often lineally allied, he shares in the romances the honour of typifying papal and imperial Rome, *i. e.* Christianity and the Western Empire, and his introduction into Oberon's genealogy is the mode adopted by the poet to explain, as Teutonic mythology fails to do, the Christian zeal and crusading fervour, combined with the humane

¹ *Infra*, pp. 153-4 ; *Huon de Bordeaux*, 6688, *et seq.*

tenderness and sober temperament, by which the dwarf is characterized in the romance. Even in *Ortnit*, Alberich, who in so many ways is a counterfeit presentment of Huon's fairy king, like most dwellers in the enchanted world of Germany, resembles "Puck or Robin Goodfellow," and bears no trace of Oberon's "note of high seriousness." His mother, who can be none other than the third sister of King Arthur, "a great clerk in nigromancy," is similarly given a place in the pedigree, that her presence may account for the Celtic or Breton features implanted in the Oberon of the story of *Huon*. The fear, with which he is at first regarded by the knight and his faithful companion, Gerames, recalls the reputation which the dwarfs usually bear in Breton tradition.¹ The notion that Huon, like Falstaff,² had of fairies,—“he that speaks to them shall die,”—is not common in purely Teutonic stories. At the same time his delicate beauty—his “aungelyke vysage”—connects him with another aspect of Celtic mythology, while his magic cup, which is always full in the hands of the virtuous man,³ but is empty in those of the sinful, has many parallels in the Arthurian and Gaelic romances, but none in those of ancient Germany, or in the early Charlemagne cycle. Furthermore, his Asiatic home and the luxurious splendour of his enchanted palaces and attire recall the stories of the Caliphs. We may therefore finally conclude that Oberon, as he was known in early French literature, was a figure derived from Frankish folk-lore, but, that he has not only been enveloped by the author of *Huon de Bordeaux* in traditions of Christian Rome and Brittany, but has also been tinged with an Eastern colouring. Such, it may be suggested, is a legitimate analysis of his complicated character.

§ 7. The intricacies and incongruities that had, as we have seen, been foisted on an early and simple legend of Huon, even in the 13th-century *chanson de geste*,—the first connected form in which the story is extant,—did not prevent it experiencing further complications

¹ Ce caractère traître et surnois des nains est le plus ordinaire dans les traditions bretonnes ; ils ne parlent guère que lorsqu'ils trouvent l'occasion de nuire à quelqu'un, comme ici (i. e. in *Tristan et Yseult*, where King March's dwarf denounces them), etc. De la Villemarqué.—*Les Romans de la Table Ronde*, p. 421.

² *Merry Wives of Windsor*, V. v. 48 : cf. *Infra*, p. 68. “if ye speke to hym, ye are lost for euer.”

³ *Infra*, p. 76.

at the hands of succeeding *jongleurs bâtarde*. Oberon was a character capable of inspiring too lengthy a series of strange adventures to allow a speedy arrest of the development of the romance, and the 10,000 lines of the old poem were lengthened almost immediately to 14,000, and ultimately to 30,000 verses.¹ While the story of Huon's quarrel and strife with the Emperor is preserved in all the extant versions in its main outlines, the *remaniements* of the later part of the 13th and 14th centuries either endeavour to supply their readers with more elaborate information as to Oberon's career before he makes the acquaintance of Huon, or extend the history of the knight himself until he is firmly seated on the throne of fairy land. And a series of stories about his sons and daughters and grand-daughters, in many of which he is made to play the part of a *Deus ex machina*, is finally added. (Such amplifications, it need hardly be said, are purely fabulous; they are crowded with incidents hopelessly irrational, and often brutally unnatural; and a perusal of them must lead every reader to worship with a whole heart at the shrine of Cervantes, who ultimately succeeded in directing into other channels the perverse ingenuity of the authors of like fictions.)

§ 8. No less than seven continuations of *Huon* are extant; four of them have been introduced into the prose version, and form, as in his original, the concluding chapters of Lord Berners' translation. The greater number of these extensions may be found in a unique 14th-century manuscript now at Turin.² The document opens with a lengthy metrical prologue entitled *Le Roman d'Auberon*, which is one of the most remarkable examples of the confused historical notions of mediæval writers with which I remember to have met. It is based for the greater part on detached verses of the

¹ The French MSS. of the metrical romance may be arranged thus :—

- (1) Tours MS. (10,000 vv.). 13th cent.
- (2) Paris MS. I. (14,000 vv.). 13th cent.
- (3) Turin MS. (30,000 vv.). 14th cent.
- (4) Paris MS. II. (Alexandrine *remaniement*). 15th cent.
- (5) Hamilton MS. 1341.

² The fullest description of the MS. and its contents may be found in M. L. Gautier. *Les Epopées Françaises*, iii. 742. Prof. Graf has printed the introductory poem to which I refer as Part I. of a series entitled *I complimenti della Chanson d'Huon de Bordeaux*, Halle a/S. 1878.

13th-century *chanson* of *Huon*, combined with copious extracts from the Arthurian romances, and much Oriental and Scriptural imagery. Judas Maccabæus is the hero of its first pages. After fighting with the Saracens, he marries a Saracen princess, and has by her a daughter, Bruenhaut, who is destined by the fairies to pass her life in fairy land. Nevertheless, she is wooed and won by Julius Cæ-ar; but her married life proves unhappy, and her husband at length deserts her, when on a visit to the court of King Arthur, for Morgan le Fay. Of the last union Oberon is the offspring, and, after many chivalric adventures at King Arthur's court, Cæsar's son at a dangerous crisis receives assistance from the dishonoured Brunehaut on condition of befriending Huon, of whose existence he thus hears for the first time. The old tale of the knight of Bordeaux then follows, and it is succeeded by five *chansons* detailing the adventures of Huon's descendants.

Of the first part of the extended romance (*La Chanson d'Esclaramonde*) Huon's wife Esclaramonde is the heroine. Raoul the Emperor of Germany, smitten with love for her, lays siege to Bordeaux, and Huon in order to gain assistance sets sail for the East. His adventures there are more astonishing than before. In his wanderings he meets with Judas Iscariot and Cain, and finds apples of youth with which to rejuvenate all his friends. One of his experiences is identical with an adventure of the third calendar in the *Thousand and One Nights*, repeated in the so-called *Travels of Sir John Mandeville*. But Huon survives all his dangers; with Oberon's aid Bordeaux is saved, and the knight and his wife are conducted on a winged horse to fairy land, on the throne of which the former is at length seated. The wooing of Clarisse or Clariette, the eldest daughter of Huon and Esclaramonde, is the subject of another preposterous addition (*La Chanson de Clarisse et Florent*). Courtied by all the princes of Europe, from Hungary to Aragon, she is subjected to every variety of persecution. But she finds a true champion in Florent, the son of Peter of Aragon, with whom Huon, in his rôle of king of fairy land, ultimately unites her.¹ The adventures of Ide,

¹ M. Gaston Paris sees in this story the influence of the well-known romance of Aucassin et Nicolette. See the notes on chaps. 158, *et seq.*

the daughter of Clariette and Florent (*La Chanson d'Ide et d'Olive*), immediately follow in the Turin manuscript, and here the imagination of the author assumes very repulsive features. Ide, to escape from the incestuous advances of her own father, travels in man's clothing to the court of the German Emperor, and is forcibly married to his daughter, who has been unhappy enough to fall in love with the stranger. But a strange divine interposition at length extricates the actors from their curious embarrassment. The lengthy series of stories concludes with an account of the misfortunes of Godin, a son of Huon (*La Chanson de Godin*), whose enemies are only routed by his father's enchantments.

§ 9. Another version of Huon's adventures after his reconciliation with the French Emperor is found in a unique manuscript in the National Library at Paris, which is usually referred to the 15th century. Three years pass, and the knight leaves Bordeaux for Oberon's dominions. After passing through Rome and visiting the Holy Sepulchre at Jerusalem, he is welcomed to Fairyland, and amid gorgeous ceremonies crowned its king. Dangers, however, beset him even here. He has to fight a lengthy war with a tribe of giants, but after overcoming them, his wife, and a daughter Judic, of whom the writer says, "plus belle rien ne vit nulz hons vivant," come to share his kingdom. The manuscript breaks off when Huon is just entering on a new war. Another manuscript of the same date as the former contains the romance wholly rewritten and amplified in Alexandrine verse. It is of interest mainly for the familiar references it makes to another amplification of the story, *le livre de Croissant*, a great-grandson of Huon, which is only extant in the prose versions.

Of other forms of the story we know very little. A beautiful manuscript in the Hamilton collection—*le Roman du Loyal Comte Huon*, bearing the date of 1341—may or may not be a copy of one of the manuscripts which have been described as unique. So far as we know, it has never been examined by the French critics of mediæval literature, and I have been unable to obtain a glimpse of it.¹ There

¹ My only knowledge of this MS. is derived from an account of the Hamilton MSS. recently sold to the German Government, and now I believe in Berlin, that appeared in the *Athenæum*, November 11th, 1882. The description is as follows :—Huon, de Bordeaux : *Le Roman du Loyal Comte*

exists, however, in the Dutch language two versions of the story, which are of interest as proofs of its ubiquitousness, if of little else. One in verse, dated about 1400, tells the tale of Huon's return from the East with a few slight variations from the tale as told in the 13th century *chanson de geste*. The other is in prose of the first half of the 16th century.¹ It is very short, and the fact that the place of Gerames, Huon's companion in the French romance, is taken there by Aleaume (*Alelmus*), an uncle of the knight, who figures in the Chronicle of Albericus Trium Fontium, leads me to suppose that it is based on the *chanson* in some slightly earlier form than any now extant in France.

§ 10. After so varied an existence as I have here sketched, the romance of *Huon* was finally reduced to prose in 1454. It was immediately based on the previous metrical versions, and probably the manuscript, now in Turin, was most frequently in the hands of its author. Only one difference of any importance is noticeable in the course of the story of Huon and Oberon. The latter's genealogy is slightly developed, and he is credited with other maternal relatives than those mentioned in the metrical romances. According to the prose story his mother was the lady of the island of Cephalonias, "who was sum tyme wel belouyde of the fayre Florimont of Albaney." But deserting Florimont, "who as then was yonge," she married another by whom she was the mother of Neptanabus and the grandmother of "Alexander y^e grate." Her charms subsequently attracted "Sezar as he crossed to Thesalee wher as he fought with Pompee," and thus Julius Cæsar was his father as in the previous versions. The reference to Florimont shows that the *prosateur* was acquainted with Aimes de Varenne's romance of that name, which, in the spirit of the poetical amplifiers, he doubtless laid directly under contribution when altering the pedigree of his fairy king.² The prose reduction, which

Huon, in verse, a manuscript on vellum of the 14th century, being dated 1341. It is ornamented with 76 curious paintings illustrating the romance.

¹ Cp. Huyge von Bourdeus, ein Niederländisches Volksbuch, herausgegeben von Ferdinand Wolf. Stuttgart, 1860. An original prologue gives some additional information as to Charles's history before the opening of the story. His wife is Hildegart; she has three sons and three daughters.

² *Florimont* is an early French romance, touching the ancestry of Alexander of Macedon. It has itself undergone a development very similar to that of *Huon*. In its earliest form it has been referred to the 12th century.

has no other claim to originality, includes besides the legend of Huon the stories "of those that issued fro him." Three of the *suites* of the Turin manuscript, viz : (1) the story of Esclaramonde, (2) that of Clariette and Florent, and (3) that of Ide and Olive, have been incorporated with it, and the last portion contains the romance of Croissant, which, as we have noted, has not found a place among the metrical *remaniements*, and occurs here for the first time. The prose version was undertaken, an introductory note tells us, at the express desire of two great lords at the court of Charles VII.—Charles de Rochefort and Hugues de Longueval, and of a third person, Pierre Ruotte. No manuscript of it exists, though it doubtless was largely read in that form by the noblemen at the court of Louis XI., by whom compositions of the kind were held in high esteem. It was printed for the first time at Paris in 1513 by Michel Lenoir.¹

§ 11. Of the popularity of the romance in France there is no lack of evidence, and to grasp its real position in continental literature, I may briefly dwell on it here. Many references to Huon and his adventures occur in the *chansons de geste* of a later date than the one to which he gives his name. His relationship to Oberon made a deep impression on subsequent poets. He is commonly known to them as

Huelin à la clere fachen
A qui fist tout de bien le bon roi Oberon,

and elaborate attempts are often made to connect him and his father, *Sevin de Bordele*, in genealogical tables with other great families of the Charlemagne cycle. The number of extant poetical *remaniements* is itself a proof of the favour the tale met with in the middle ages, and the wide dissemination of the prose version of the story in later times is attested by the number of editions through which it passed. In the 16th century it was reprinted no less than six times, and not only at Paris, but also at Rouen and Lyons. In the 17th century seven editions were published, and others followed in rapid succession in

¹ The colophon of the earliest British Museum copy, which is the only French prose version I have consulted, bears date *le xxvi iour de novembre mil. v. cens et treize*. Brunet (*Manuel du Libraire* s. v.) gives the date of the oldest copy known in France as *le xxiiij iour de decembre mil cinq cens et seize*. The printer is also Michel Lenoir. The Brit. Mus. copy (12341. i. 12) is therefore probably the earliest edition known. No French editor has noted an earlier edition than that of 1516.

subsequent years.¹ A curious fortune awaited the book in the reign of Henry II. The romance was dramatized, and a religious guild at Paris, whose members were known as "les confrères de la passion et resurrection de nostre sauveur et redempteur Jhesus Christ," undertook its performance during the Christmas festivities of the year 1557. Upon very few of the Charlemagne epics, as we have had occasion to remark already, has the honour of a dramatic version been conferred, and the fact that *Huon of Bordeaux* was selected for the distinction is an emphatic proof of the high place it held in popular esteem. But objections were taken to the proposed representation. The Provost refused to allow the preparations to proceed, and the actors had to appeal to the Parlement of Paris, to enable them to carry out their original intention. Their petition, which greatly agitated the French capital, was granted with the limitation that *le jeu de Huon* was not to be performed within the hours "durant lesquelles se celebre le divin service par les eglises et parroises de ceste ville, et ce le lendemain de la feste de la Nativité Nostre seigneur et sans scandale." The opposition to the performance was probably due in great part to the strictly religious character that the theatre in France bore at the time. Other indications of the general attention bestowed upon the romance are to be found in the French historical literature of the 17th century, where it is treated as a work of high historical authority, and Huon himself is seriously described as one of the heroes "of the antique world," to whose valour the development of southern France was mainly due.² In Germany it will be remembered that Wieland has based on the French prose romance of *Huon*, published in 1778 in an abridged form, his long poem of *Oberon*. Whatever opinion we may hold of its literary value, to it is due a wide extension of Huon's and Oberon's popularity on the continent.³

§ 12. The first edition of Lord Berners' English translation of the

¹ Brunet, *Manuel du Libraire*, s. v.

² M. Guessard's *Huon*, pp. xxvij—xxxiiij.

³ M. Girardin (*Cours de littérature dramatique*, iii. p. 235) has elaborately compared Wieland's poem with the old romance, and with justice complains of the incongruous idyllic sentiment introduced into the story of Huon's relations with Esclaramonde, whom Wieland has rechristened Rezia, and of the complicated passions that the German poet foists upon his characters. Wieland's *Oberon* was published in 1780.

romance is wholly based on the French prose version.¹ Chapter by chapter it follows the printed copy of 1513, which may fairly be regarded as its original, and the translator has performed his task with the utmost fidelity. The book is of the highest rarity. For many years collectors imagined it to be irrecoverably lost,² but a copy, the only one of which we have any information at present, was sold at the sale of Dr. Bliss's library, and at the Corsser sale in 1869, when it was purchased by the late Earl of Crawford and Balcarres, and it is now the property of his son.³ Two copies of a third edition of the

¹ Tabulating the results which have been arrived at as to the various portions of the prose story. Lord Berners' translation may be arranged thus:—

LORD BERNERS' TRANSLATION.

WHENCE DERIVED (THROUGH THE FRENCH PROSE ORIGINAL).

I. Chapters 1-85 (included in part I).

I. The xiiiith century *Chanson de Geste of Huon* as it appears in the Turin MS.

α. Chaps. 1-20.

a. Vv. 1-2000 = an old Carlovingian legend.

β. Chaps. 21-85.

β. Vv. 2000-10041 = later story of Oberon.

Printed in Part II.
of this edition.

II. Chaps. 86-157.

II. *La Chanson d'Esclaramonde* in the Turin MS.

III. Chaps. 158-173

III. *La Chanson de Clarisse et Florent* in the Turin MS.

IV. Chaps. 174-180.

IV. *La Chanson d'Ide et Olive* in the Turin MS.

V. Chaps. 181-end.

V. *La Roman de Croissant*, referred to in the Paris MS. (II.) of the Alexandrian *rifacimento*, but not known elsewhere.

Of the extant amplifications *Le Roman d'Auberon*, the story of Huon in Fairyland (in the Paris MS. I.) and the tale of Godin (in Turin MS.) are excluded from the prose versions.

² Cf. Ritson's and Douce's MS. notes reprinted from a copy of the 3rd edition, *infra*, p. lvi.

³ Through whose hands the copy has passed in previous centuries we do not know. Early in the 16th century it was probably in the hands of some love-sick youth who, in the writing of that date, has placed on the margin of Lord Crawford's copy (fols. cviii, back, and cix) the following lines:—

My faythfull hart dothe loue right well
Her that I can not atayne:
Wherefore ther is no towng can tell
The grefes that I sustayne.
If I showld spend a sumers day
To wrytte in verse or prose,
I cowld my dolent mynd display,
Nor yet halff my loue disclose.

In the seventh line *not* has been erased, and *my* superscribed, but both are

English romance are also extant,—one at the British Museum, and the other at the Bodleian Library,—and it is stated on their title-pages that the rude English of the earlier editions has been here corrected and amended. Of the intervening edition no trace has yet been found.

§ 13. The life of Lord Berners, the English translator of the story, whose name has been “canonized in Fame’s eternal calendar” as the translator of Froissart, forms an interesting but little-known chapter of our political and literary history, and a brief summary of such facts as I have been able to collect together will tend to give the romance before us an additional interest. Born probably at Tharfield in Hertfordshire about 1469, Anthony à Wood¹ is of opinion that, like Tiptoft, the Earl of Worcester, whom in point of literary culture he closely resembles, Berners was educated at Balliol College, Oxford. As early as 1474 he succeeded to the title of his grandfather, John Bouchier, who had been created Baron Berners² in 1455 and was a descendant of Edward III. through his mother, and a younger brother of Thomas Bouchier, Archbishop of Canterbury (1454-1486). On the marriage of one of the royal princes in 1477 he was knighted, and in 1484 at the early age of fifteen Lord Berners would seem to have entered into very active political life. He apparently joined in a premature attempt to raise Henry, duke of Richmond, to the throne, and on its failure he had to flee to Brittany.³ After the accession of Henry VII., who had received much assistance from his friends, Berners came prominently forward in English politics. In 1492 he entered into a contract “to serue the king in his warres beyond see on hole yeere with two speres.”⁴ Five years later he gave signal aid in

needful for the sense. The copy sold for £19 at Dr. Bliss’s sale, and £85 at the Corser sale.

¹ Anthony à Wood, *Athenæ Oxonienses*, i. 72; see also Fuller’s *Hertfordshire Worthies*, p. 32. By far the best memoir of Lord Berners is that prefaced to Mr. Utterson’s edition of his translation of Froissart, but it is very imperfect. (Lond. 1812), i. pp. 4-23.

² Dugdale’s *Baronage*, ii. 129. Lord Berners’ father is described as Humphry Bouchier, and was slain at the battle of Barnet, and buried at Westminster Abbey. His mother was Elizabeth, daughter of Sir Frederick Tilney and widow of Sir Thomas Howard, knight. The first Lord Berners was the youngest son of the Earl of Ewe, whose heir was created Earl of Essex by Edward III.

³ Hardyng’s *Chronicle* (ed. Ellis, 1832), p. 529.

⁴ Rymer, *Fœdera*, xii. 479.

crushing a rebellion of Cornishmen against Henry VII.'s tax-gatherers under Michael Joseph, the blacksmith, and from that date he was received with high favour at court, as "a martial man, well seen in all military discipline."¹ Henry VIII. we know from many circumstances to have been intimately acquainted with him. In 1513 he travelled in the king's retinue to Calais,² and was present with the English army at the capture of Terouenne, where he performed services of no little valour. The war in Scotland was also probably conducted under his superintendence, and he was marshal in the Earl of Surrey's army about the time when Flodden Field was fought.³ On the occasion of the marriage of Princess Mary to Louis XII.,⁴ Lord Berners was appointed Chamberlain to the English Queen of France,⁵ but he had no intention of remaining permanently abroad. He had already been granted by the king (18th May, 1514) the reversion to the office of Chancellor of the Exchequer,⁶ and in 1516 (28th May) he was apparently inducted into the honourable post.⁷ Arrayed in his official robes he at a later date sat for his portrait to Hans Holbein, the painter to Henry VIII.'s court.⁸ In 1518 Berners was sent with the Archbishop of Armagh, a notable diplomatist of the day, on a special mission to Spain to form a lasting alliance between Henry VIII. and Charles of Spain, and the letters of the envoys represent Lord Berners suffering from a severe sickness.⁹ He is, however, at times well enough to send home to Henry VIII. accounts of the bull-baiting and other sports that took place in the Spanish capital. Negotiations dragged on from April to December, and money was not sent from England with such regularity as to enable the am-

¹ Fuller, p. 27. Walpole's *Royal and Noble Authors*, i. 239

² Brewer's *Letters and Papers of Henry VIII.*, i. nos. 4307, 4314, &c.

³ *Ibid.* i. 4375.

⁴ Oct. 9, 1514.

⁵ *Ibid.* i. 5483.

⁶ No. 5097.

⁷ *Ibid.* ii. no. 1946.

⁸ Wornum's edition of Walpole's *Anecdotes of Painting*, i. 82. In one hand he holds a lemon, which is thought to have been regarded as a safeguard against plague infections, and perhaps alludes to Lord Berners' escape from the disease, while attending to the duties of his office. The picture is now in the possession of the Hon. H. Tyrwhitt Wilson, a lineal descendant of Lord Berners, and is at Keythorpe Hall, Leicestershire.

⁹ Brewer's *Letters*, ii. 4383, 4436, &c. At times Berners is described as sick in bed, and the Archbishop has to perform the business of the embassy alone. In one letter gout is mentioned as the cause of his sickness.

bassadors to live with comfort or dignity.¹ "God send hit (*i. e.* the embassy) an ende," Berners writes to Wolsey (26th July, 1518), "for we lye here with most charge and expence, horse & man, & in most scarcitie of all things as well meate as drink that may be thought." Early in 1519 Berners was again in England, and among the noblemen who were ordered to attend the king at The Field of the Cloth of Gold his name occurs. His reputation stood at the time very high, and the Privy Council gave him a vote of thanks (July 2nd, 1520) for an account of the interview between the English and French kings that he had sent them from France. But Lord Berners' busy career was approaching an end. His activity can hardly be exaggerated. While holding high state offices, he had frequently attended Parliament, and had regularly performed the duties of Justice of the Peace for Hertfordshire and Surrey.² He had, moreover, entered upon several harassing law-suits, touching the ownership of several manors in Staffordshire, Wiltshire, and elsewhere,³ and he was experiencing much pecuniary embarrassment. He had borrowed as early as 1511 £350 from the king,⁴ and the loans were frequently repeated. He had no means wherewith to pay his debts: his health was failing, and he apparently desired leisure. A vacancy in the governorship of Calais seemed to present a means of relieving him of his difficulties, and in December 1520 he was appointed deputy of Calais during pleasure with £100 yearly for himself and £104 as 'Spyall money.'⁵ And the remaining years of his life were spent in such retirement as his new position afforded.

§ 14. It was at Calais that he undertook almost all his literary work. He had probably been, like several of his younger contemporaries, a considerable reader from his youth, and may possibly have been one of those persons "of noble estate and degree," whom Caxton frequently describes as ever ready to assist him in his enterprises. Berners doubtless became well acquainted early in life with the French and Spanish languages, and thus he was enabled to make direct

¹ Brewer's *Letters*, ii. no. 4342, 4228, &c. The payments to the embassy were 5 marks a day.—ii. p. 1477.

² In all the Commissions of the Peace issued for these counties during the early years of Henry VIII.'s reign his name appears: *v.* Brewer's *Letters passim*.

³ *Ibid.* iii. nos. 1286-8. ⁴ *Ibid.* i. no. 2044. ⁵ *Ibid.* iii. no. 1074.

acquaintance with the chivalric romances that formed the popular literature of both Spain and France. After his energetic work in previous years, time at Calais probably hung heavily on his hands, and he tells us that it was "somewhat in eschewing" of idleness which "is reputed to be the moder of al vices" that he began his labours as a translator. History, whether of fact or fiction, was, according to his own confession, his literary passion. "When I aduertysed, & remembred the many-folde commodityes of hystorie," he writes in the prologue to Froissart's *Chronicle*, "howe benefyciall it is to mortall folke, & eke howe laudable, & merytoryous a dede it is to write hystories, [I] fixed my mind to do some thyng therin, & euer, when this ymaginayon came to me, I volued, tourned & redde many volumes, & bokes conteynyng famouse histories." And it was thus that he was led to undertake the translation of a book like Froissart's *Chronicles*. But he was troubled by little critical sensitiveness as to the truth or falsehood of historical records, and he interpreted history in the freest possible sense. The impossible adventures in some of the books that he "did into our maternal tongue," he admitted "to our humayne reason, sholde seme to be incredible." "But then," he proceeds, "I called agayne to my remembraunce, that I had redde, and seene many a sondrye volume of dyuerse noble hystories, wherein were contayned the redoubted dedes of the aunceynt inuynsyble conquerours, & of cther ryght famous knyghtes, who acheued many a straunge & wonderfull aduenture, the whyche, by playne letter to our vnderstandynge, sholde seme in a maner to be supernaturall; wherefore I thought that this present treatise myght as well be reputed for trouthe as some of those." But credulity was by no means the most striking feature of Lord Berners' literary character. There is a humility and simple piety in all his original writing that claims the loving respect of his readers. He did not presume, he says of one of his books, "to have reduced it in to fresshe ornate polysshed Englysshe, for I know myselfe insufficyent in the facondyous arte of rethoryke." He never regarded himself as other than "a lerner of the language of Frensshe," although he had spent years in studying it. His prefaces invariably concluded with a hope that the reader would kindly view his shortcomings, and

often with the words:—"In theyr so doynge, I shall praye to God that, after this vayne & transytory lyfe, he may brynge them vnto the perdurable joye of heuen. Amen."¹

§ 15. It was Henry VIII., who had already so often befriended Lord Berners, that first encouraged, if he did not suggest, the great undertaking of his literary career—the translation of Froissart's *Chronicle*; and he writes himself that he was moved to the task "at the highe commaundement of my most redouted souerayne & lorde kynge Henry the viii." The first volume of the work was published in London in 1523, and the second and last in 1525. And I regard this translation as Lord Berners' first published book. In the introduction he speaks with more than his usual modesty as an untried author, and in the tentative tone of a literary beginner details the principles of translation he has thought proper to adopt. He begs all the "readers & herers therof to take this my rude translacion in gre." "And in that," he continues, "I haue not folowed myne authour worde by worde, yet I trust I haue enswed the true reporte of the sentence of the mater: & as for the true namyng of all maner of persanages, contreis, cyties, townes, ryuers, & felds, whereas I coude not name them properly nor aptely in Englysshe, I haue written them accordynge as I founde them in frenche."² Of the success of the book it is unnecessary to dwell here. The noble gentlemen of England, for whom the translator stated it to have been written, gave it a warm welcome, and to its popularity has been ascribed the taste for historical reading and composition by which later literary compositions of the century were characterized.³ The style is vivid and clear, and although a few French words have been introduced, Lord Berners has adhered, as a rule, so closely to English idiom that the work might almost be mistaken for an original English production. It was the longest, as

¹ See besides the Introduction to Froissart, that to *Sir Arthur of Lytle Brytayne* in Utterson's reprint (1812), and to *Castel of Love* in Walpole's *Noble Authors*, i. 243-4.

² These quotations are taken from the earliest edition of the translation (1523).

³ Marsh, *Hist of English Language*, 1862, pp. 495-501, where a suggestive criticism of Berners' translation will be found.

it was the highest in point of literary merit, of any of the few prose histories that had appeared in our language. Hall, Fabian, and Holinshed were subsequently all more or less indebted to it, and repeated editions, published in Elizabeth's reign, testified to its continuous popularity.

§ 16. The other works that Lord Berners undertook at Calais were of a very varied kind. The Charlemagne romance of *Huon of Bordeaux*, I think it probable, followed Froissart's *Chronicle* at no long interval, although its publication was probably much delayed. About the same time he undertook the translation from the French of *The History of Sir Arthur of Lytle Brytayne* (i. e. Brittany), and of a Spanish romance known as *The Castel of Love*.¹ Later he rendered into English from a French version *The Golden Boke of Marcus Aurelius*, and although no other works from his pen are extant, he is credited by some writers with a 'comedy' entitled *Ite in Vineam*, which, Anthony à Wood tells us, was frequently acted at Calais after vespers, and a tract on *The duties of the inhabitants of Calais*.² Warton, on the authority of Oldys, also ascribes to him a translation of Petrarch.³

§ 17. But while engaged in literary pursuits he did not neglect the duties of his office. In 1522 he had received the Emperor Charles V. before crossing the Channel on a visit to England, and the State Papers contain numerous letters from him to Wolsey and other great officers of State, as to the provisioning of the fortifications of Calais; as to the distinguished strangers who arrived there; as to the movements of the armies of France or the Low Countries in the near neighbourhood, and like details.⁴ But the close of his life does not appear to have been a happy one. Weak in health and embarrassed by debt, had it not been for the encouragement he received from noble lords and ladies, at the special request of one or more of whom each of his books was undertaken, he would not, it seems, have persisted in his laborious work of translation.⁵ He

¹ Walpole's *Royal and Noble Authors*, i. 242.

² *Ath. Oxon.* i. 83.

³ Warton, *Hist of English Poetry*, iii. p. 64.

⁴ *Henry VIII.'s Letters*, vols. iv. v. vi., *passim*.

⁵ The introduction to *Huon of Bordeaux* in the Oxf. copy of the 1601 edition; see *infra*, p. li.

is bitterly harassed, as his letters show, by his continual lawsuits, which begin to touch his Hertfordshire property, and by the loans that the king had from time to time made him, and which still remained unpaid. In the last years of his life he tried to conciliate his Sovereign, who probably demanded payment in no gentle tone, by frequent presents of hawks;¹ but Henry apparently looked anxiously for the death of his old friend in order to distrain on his property for the debts still owing to him. During his last illness special agents of the king were despatched with indecent haste to watch over Berners' personal possessions in behalf of his creditors. At length on March 16, 1533, the end came.² Six days before, Lord Berners had completed his rendering into English of the *Golden Boke of Marcus Aurelius*, and doubtless knew then that his end was near.³ On his death Henry showed little respect for his memory. He at once ordered all his goods in his house or the town to be arrested until further notice, and his post to be filled immediately. His affairs were found, owing to his illness, to be much disordered, but the inventory taken of his property, and, now at the Record Office, proves that he lived in no little splendour, and it contains an interesting entry stating that eighty books and four pictures formed part of his furniture. Unfortunately all details of these possessions are irrecoverably lost.⁴ It was thus experiencing his full share of the petty vexations of life that Lord Berners passed away. To most readers he survives nowadays as a shadowy name; but such details as I have set down show that his exploits in the various spheres of war, politics, and literature give him a strong claim to a place among the worthies of 16th century England.

§ 18. Of the popularity of all Lord Berners' works, and of *Huon* in

¹ Cp. Privy Purse Expenses for 1529-31, pp. 54 and 231, where gratuities to Lord Berners' servants for bringing the hawks are recorded.

² *Henry VIII.'s Papers*, vi, nos. 238 and 239. A letter begins bearing date March 16, 1533, "My lord deputy is dead."

³ The first edition of 1534 has in the colophon the words: "Ended at Caleis the tenth Dale of Marche, in the yere of the Reigne of our Soveraygne Lorde Kyng Henry the VIII. xxiii." (i. e. 1533).

⁴ I carefully examined the inventory in the hope of finding some account of Lord Berners' books. All that occurs there on the subject is:—"Item in the stody iii books vz oon of Latten & frenche," and below, "iiij pictours."—Cp. Brewer's *Letters* (in Mr. Gairdner's continuation), vi. p. 611.

particular, there is no lack of evidence. Romances from the reign of Henry VIII. to that of Charles I. formed the most popular literature in England. Their numbers were prodigious. A brief examination of the *Stationers' Registers* shows with what energy the printers set before their public translations of French, Oriental, Italian, and Spanish story-books. At the opening of the century Caxton and Lord Berners have themselves described how anxiously the noble classes, who formed the only contemporary reading public, awaited the publication of their translations. Nor, when the stage was at the height of its prosperity, did the romances cease to be the favourite recreation of the reading classes, which grew in number as the century advanced. The plays, it must be remembered, were not designed for private perusal. Their appearance in print was due to fraud and piracy, and was a constant source of complaint with authors, managers, and actors. Only a few play-books found their ways into the hands of readers, and recourse continued to be made to works like those before us. A writer in 1586 tells us with what unalloyed delight a country gentleman would listen to "pleasant mad-headed knaves, *that* bee properly learned & will reade in diuerse pleasaunt bookes & good Authors: as Sir Guy of Warwicke, the foure sonnes of Ammon," and works of like description.¹ Edmund Spenser in his famous letter to Sir Walter Raleigh writes that it was because he desired to be "most plausible and pleasing" that he coloured his allegory "with an historical fiction, the which the most part of men delight to read." George Chapman² in 1611 describes a typical Statesman as one who was well acquainted with the *Gesta Romanorum* and similar volumes. Some writers are inclined to bestow extravagant eulogy on the romances of Chivalry. Thus John Taylor, the water-poet, writes, with perhaps a touch of sarcasm, when speaking of their heroes: "In all ages and countries it hath euer bin knowne that famous men haue florished, whose worthy Actions & Eminency of place haue euer bene as conspicuous *Beacons* Burning & blazeng to the Spectators' view. The sparkes & flames

¹ *English Courtier and the Countrey Gentleman*, 1586, quoted in Mr. Furnivall's edition of *Captain Cor's Ballads*.—Ballad Society, p. xix.

² Chapman's *May Day*, iii. 1.

whereof have sometimes kindled courage in the most coldest & effeminate cowards." But such literature had at the same time its detractors, as much of it well deserved. Roger Ascham in his *Scholemaster* (1571), like the niece of Don Quixote, regarded all the romances as mischief-makers, and complained that even Sir Thomas Malory's *Morte d'Arthur* was full of 'slaughter' and 'bawdrie.'¹ Similarly, Francis Meres, in his *Palladis Tamia* of 1598, censured romantic histories as being "no lesse hurtfull to youth then the works of *Machiavell* to age."² Robert Burton bitterly complains of the gentry: "if they read on a book at any time it is an English Chronicle" (like *Amadis de Gaule*, &c.), "a playe booke or some pamphlet of news,"³ and elsewhere he says of "such Inamoratoes as read nothing but play-bookes, idle poems," and so forth, that many "proue in the ende as mad as *Don Quixot*."⁴ But nevertheless romances continued to be generally read till the time of the Rebellion, especially by the half-educated classes.⁵ Beaumont and Fletcher in their humorous farce of the *Knight of the Burning Pestle* show how chivalric tales fatally disturbed the equanimity of the lower middle classes at a little earlier date.⁶

§ 19. Of such popularity and such censure Lord Berners' translation enjoyed a full share. His hero for a hundred years was given a place among the worthies of antiquity. He is set beside Godfrey of Boulogne, King Arthur and his knights in a poem, written shortly after the death of Henry VIII.,⁷ the form of which is almost identical with Villon's *Ballade des dames mortes*, familiar to most English readers in Rossetti's exquisite translation. In 1558 the book is mentioned in an inventory of the property of Richard Brereton,

¹ Ascham, *Scholemaster*, p. 80. (Arber's Edition). Cp. his *Topophilus*. Pref.

² Meres's *Palladis Tamia*, 1598, p. 2668.

³ *Anatomic of Melancholie*, ed. 1621, p. 183.

⁴ *Ibid.* p. 353.

⁵ Cp. *London Chaunticleeres*, 1659, where much popular literature of the kind is referred to.—Hazlitt's *Dodsley*, vol. xii.

⁶ The play was first performed 1613. A grocer's apprentice is there driven from his shop by a desire of pursuing feats of arms, and cuts a very ridiculous figure. It reached its height of popularity about 1635.

⁷ Percy's Folio MS. *Ballads and Romances* (ed. by Hales and Furnivall), 1868, iii. p. 171. On the Fall of Princes:—"Where is Huon of Bordeaux, where is he?"

and valued at the high sum (for those days) of xviiij^d,¹ and in 1572 the work is referred to among others, in a brief pamphlet, as fit for gentlemen's reading.² Three years later Master Laneham in his letter, descriptive of the Kenilworth festivities of 1575, tells us how Cox, the quixotic old Captain of Coventry, who took a leading part in the pageants, had *Huon of Bordeaux* among other famous romances "at his fingers' ends."³ Gervase Markham, a voluminous prose writer on practical subjects in Elizabeth's day, in *A / Health to the / Gentlemanly profession of Serving men* (1578), has quoted largely from Lord Berners' translation, when ingeniously illustrating the evil influence of Mammon.⁴ Spenser was evidently well acquainted with the book, and describes how Sir Guyon, his knight of Temperance,

"knighthood tooke of good Sir Huon's hand,
When with King Oberon he came to Faery land."⁵

Similarly *Huon of Bordeaux* is panegyricized by John Taylor, the water-poet, in the passage I have quoted above, and bitterly censured by Francis Meres and Robert Burton. But there exists another curious indication of the high place the romance continued to hold in popular esteem at the end of the century. An entry in Philip Henslowe's *Diary* proves that it was dramatized and produced in that form by the players of the Earl of Sussex in 1593-4. The note runs as follows:—

Rd at hewen of burdoche, the 28 of desembr 1593 iij^u. x^s.

Rd at hewen of burdokes, the 3 of Jenewary 1593(-4) xiiij^s.

Rd at hewen, the 11 of Jenewary 1593(-4).⁶ v^s.

The play, although no trace of it is now extant, was thus at least three times performed.

§ 20. A review of the position that *Huon of Bordeaux* holds in our literary history would be manifestly incomplete without some reference

¹ Halliwell's *Folio of Shakespeare*, vol. v. p. 85.

² *A Brief and Necessary Instruction, &c.*, by E. D. 1572. Quoted from Collier by Mr. Furnivall in his introduction to Cox's Ballads.

³ Nicholl's *Progresses of Queen Elizabeth*. London, 1823, i. 449. Laneham's letter is here reprinted.

⁴ Fol. G, 4. Only two copies of this rare pamphlet are, I believe, known. Both are in the Douce collection of the Bodleian Library. See below, chaps. cviii.-cx. (the story of the Adamant), whence the passage is taken.

⁵ *Faerie Queene*, bk. I. l. 6. ⁶ Henslowe's *Diary* (ed. Collier), pp. 81-2.

to the Oberon of Elizabethan literature. That the fairy king first became known to this country through the agency of Lord Berners' version of his story, there cannot be a shadow of a doubt. Chaucer, it is true, gave to Pluto the title of "King of Faerie" in his *Marchantes Tale*,¹ but the little dwarf Oberon, with his unapproachable beauty and gentle carriage, is the only rightful possessor of the throne of fairy land in our literature. The question has before been raised as to whether Shakespeare was acquainted with Lord Berners' *Huon of Bordeaux* when he wrote *Midsummer Night's Dream*. There is no obvious identity of spirit between the protector of Huon and the husband of Titania, and we can only give a tentative answer. Oberon had appeared on the throne of fairy land before Shakespeare produced his comedy. In the *Faerie Queene* he figures in the *Antiquitie of Faerie* as the latest sovereign of the enchanted world.² In 1591 the fairy king had appeared in a dramatic entertainment, exhibited before Queen Elizabeth when on a progress in Hampshire.³ Similarly, he plays a part in Green's tragedy of *James IV.* (1594),⁴ but he there retains so few of the characteristics of the French original, and holds so incongruous and absurd a position, that we should be loth, although many critics have supported the assumption, to believe that Shakespeare was under obligation to so despicable a production. The Oberon of the great poet's fairy-comedy, although he is set in a butterfly environment, still possesses some features very similar to those of the romantic fairy king. If he is not brought into relations with so purely mundane institutions as the Papacy and the Empire, he is concerned in the affairs of Athens. One point in *Midsummer Night's Dream*, moreover, seems to make the relationship between the two Oberons a matter of less doubt than has been generally allowed. The mediæval fairy dwells in the East: his kingdom is situated somewhere to the east of Jerusalem, in the far-reaching district that was known to mediæval writers under the generic name of India. Shakespeare's fairy is similarly a foreigner to the western

¹ *Canterbury Tales*, line 10,101, &c.

² *F. Q.*, bk. II. x. 75.

³ Halliwell's *Folio of Shakespeare*, i. 80.

⁴ *The Scottishe story of James the Fourthe slayn at Flodden intermixed with a pleasant Comedie presented by Oberon kinge of ffayres.*—Arber's *Transcript*, ii. 648.

world. He is totally unlike Puck, his lieutenant, "the merry wanderer of the night," who springs from purely English superstition, and it is stated in the comedy that he has come to Greece "from the farthest steep of India." Titania, further, tells her husband how the mother of her page-boy gossiped at her side,¹ in their home, "in the spiced Indian air by night-fall."² And it will be remembered that an Indian boy causes the jealousy of Oberon. Some portions of the romance I, therefore, believe Shakespeare to have assimilated, and to be still visible in his ethereal play. The inference is perhaps supported by a direct reference to *Huon of Bordeaux*, as some commentators have regarded it, in another of Shakespeare's comedies. In *Much Ado About Nothing*, Benedick offers among the many "embassages" he would undertake rather than hold three words with Beatrice, to "fetch you the hair of the Great Cham's Beard,"³ and it has been supposed that we have here an allusion to Huon's endeavour to obtain the beard of the Admiral of Babylon.⁴ The origin of the later Oberons of Drayton, Randolph, and Herrick calls for no comment here. They are obviously based on Shakespeare's own fairy king.

When Lord Berners' translation ceased to be read, the achievements of Huon of Bordeaux lapsed into obscurity. But his story was curiously revived at the beginning of this century. Wieland, the German poet, as I have said already, based on *Huon of Bordeaux* his poem of *Oberon*, and Mr. Sotheby's English translation of the production gained great popularity in this country. Upon it, moreover, was based the libretto of Weber's opera of *Oberon*, which was written for and first performed in a London theatre (April 12, 1826). It is thus that the name of the knight of Bordeaux, as the hero of the opera, has found brief mention in one of Thackeray's novels.⁵

¹ *M. N. D.* II. ii. 65-6.

² *Ibid.* II. ii. 10.

³ *Much Ado*, II. i. 263.

⁴ Halliwell's *Folio of Shakespeare*, iv. 77. Cartwright in his *Siege, or Love's Convert*, 1651, p. 157, has imitated the passage and brought it into closer harmony with Huon's mission.

"Fetch you a hair of the Great Cham's beard;
No more? I'd thought you would have bid me pull
The Parthian king by th' beard, or draw an eye-tooth
From the jaw royall of the Persian monarch."

⁵ *Newcomes*, i. 115. J. J. Ridley when listening to Miss Cann's feeble piano-strumming imagines he sees before him "Sir Huon of Bordeaux sailing up the quay with the Sultan's daughter of Babylon."

§ 21. The bibliography of Lord Berners' translation demands some fuller attention than we have already given it. The *editio princeps* is a black-letter folio of 191 leaves, and is embellished by grotesque initial-letters, and by numerous woodcuts which are more than once repeated, and often indicate much delicacy of workmanship. It is in many ways imperfect. The book almost certainly began, like Caxton's romances, and the other extant works of Lord Berners, with an address to the reader, followed by "a table with all the chapters as they stande in the boke in order," both of which the extant volume is without. In its present condition it abruptly opens with the statement that "here begynneth the boke of duke Huon of Burdeaux, and of them that issuyd fro him." The last page is likewise missing, and half of the last but one has been torn away. Thus we have lost the colophon with its record of the date of the work. It is therefore a difficult matter to state precisely to what year its publication should be assigned. We have some external evidence to guide us, and the internal character of the book and its typography may give some assistance. But it is a question which we cannot decide with absolute certainty.

A few of the facts in Lord Berners' career will aid us in fixing approximately the time during which the book was written.

The length of the romance of *Huon* precludes us from supposing that it could have been completed before his retirement to Calais; and, if I am right in assuming that Froissart's *Chronicles* was the first literary work that he produced, we must pronounce *Huon* to have been translated between 1525, the date of the completion of *Froissart*, and 1533, the year of Lord Berners' death. But whether it was published within that period, other external evidence renders by no means certain. I believe that like the *Golden Boke of Marcus Aurelius*, and possibly other of his works, it was published posthumously through the aid of an old friend.

In the Oxford copy of the third edition, dated 1601, occurs some thirty lines bearing the superscription—*The printer to the Historie ensuing*—and an examination of this prefatory note which, I cannot doubt, was reprinted, with some revision, from the first and probably the second editions, will, we hope, materially aid us in

settling the question. The preface is divisible into two parts. The first rehearses in general terms the uses to which the good examples of such chivalric knights as Huon may be put, and resembles so closely in style and sentiment the introductory notes written by Lord Berners' own hand in his other works as to create a presumption in favour of the belief that it has been rewritten in somewhat heightened language from his own manuscript.¹ The second details the circumstances under which the romance came to be translated and printed. The concluding half runs as follows :—

"Hence ensued (*i.e.* from the desire to promulgate heroic examples—as expressed in the opening sentences) that desertfull & worthy to bee remembred purpose, of Sir *John Bouchier*, Knight, Lord Berners, when not onely in the woorke of *Huon of Bourdeaux*, but many other famous translations of like conse-

¹ For purposes of readier comparison, and to prove that the prologue in the 1601 edition, does not contradict, with any internal evidence, my belief that it has been taken from the first edition with possibly some "amendment," I have printed the opening sentence of it and the *Froissart* prologue side by side.

FROISSART.

What condygne graces & thankes ought men to gyue to the writers of historyes, who with their great labours, haue done so moche profyte to the humayne lyfe: they shewe, open, manifest, & declare to the reader by example of olden antiquitie & what we shulde enquire, desyre & folowe: & also what we shulde eschewe, auoyde & utterly flye: for whan we (beynge vnexpert of chanches) se, beholde & rede the auneynt gestes & dedes, howe & with what labours, daungers & paryls they were gested & done, they right greatly admonesh, ensigne & teche, vs howe we maye lede forthe our lyues: & farther he that hath perfyte knowledge of others ioye, welth & highe prosperite & also trouble, sorowe & great aduersyte, hath thexpert doctrine of all parylles; . . . What knowledge shulde we haue of auneynt thynges past, & historie were nat? whiche is the testimony thereof, the lyght of trouthe, the maystres of the lyfe humayne, the presydent of remembrance & the messenger of antiquyte.

HUON.

The foundation of all true fame & repute, which in this world is most to be reckoned of & esteemed, (according to the opinion of all writers both ancient & moderne) consisteth in bold, honourable, & heroycall resolution, which enflames the soule with a continuall thirsting desire, of pursuing braue & generous purpose, perfourming of high & adventurous actions, which (when their bodies are mantled up in the obscure mould of earth) leaueth their names cannonized in Fames aeternall Calender, & renounes them as rare presidents to all following Posterities.

quence by him perfourmed, he gaue witnesse to the world of so laborious an endeavour, & (as it were) squared out an excelent platfourme for generous imitation. But let me not herewithal forget, that the right noble Earle of *Huntingdon*, Lord *Hastings*, was a continuall spurre to him in the pursuite of such paines, & likewise a cheerfull encourager of me in the imprinting, assisting euer both with his purse & honorable countenance the traaille that sorted so good example. Which being now finished & made compleat, etc." The colophon of the same volume states similarly that the translation was undertaken by Lord Berners at the request of Lord Hastings, Earl of Huntingdon.

We have here a clear allusion to Lord George Hastings, who was the companion of Lord Berners in more than one of his campaigns in France, and who was created Earl of Huntington in 1530, after which date these sentences must have been written. Similarly, it will be noticed that the reference to Lord Berners' labours is couched in the past tense, and could scarcely have been penned in his lifetime (*i. e.* before 1533). The services done by Lord Huntington to the printer here commemorated are, however, clearly connected with the first publication of the romance,—with the printing of Lord Berners' manuscript. The expression of thanks for his aid is directly rendered to the Earl, so that the preface and the book, to which it refers, must have been printed while he was still alive,—that is, before 1542, the year of his death. We should therefore assign the first edition to some date after 1533, and before 1542.

The conclusion is supported by the opinion of bibliographical experts. Lowndes, in the *Bibliographer's Manual*,¹ stated that he believed it to have been printed by Copland about 1540, but the date we are inclined to think is too late by about six years. It is also improbable from a comparison of Lord Crawford's *Huon* with the type and woodcuts of works from William Copland's press that he was the printer. No folio romances, it should further be remembered, were printed by him before 1550. Mr. William Pickering, who carefully examined the type and paper of the unique copy of the first edition, judged that it proceeded from the press of Wynkyn de Worde

¹ 1859, p. 1146.

or Pynson.¹ Mr. R. A. Graves of the British Museum, whose opinion is of a high value in a question of this kind, although he has been unable to find any book with exactly the same type, woodcuts, or initial letters, as in the one before us, has arrived at the conclusion that in its typographical features it most closely resembles the works of Wynkyn de Worde. The differences between the type and initial letters, for instance, of the present book and Wynkyn de Worde's *Boke named the Roiall*, are certainly minuter than in any other works of the time that I have examined. Wynkyn de Worde died towards the end of the year 1534, and was engaged at his press until the last. My final conclusion, therefore, is that Lord Crawford's copy of *Huon of Bordeaux* should be dated about 1534 (*i. e.* after March 16th, 1533, and before January, 1535), and that Wynkyn de Worde was its printer.

It is still more difficult to determine the date of the second edition, which has been wholly lost. No trace of it appears in the *Stationers' Registers*. But the colophon of the third edition, which was probably a rough reprint by an enterprising bookseller of the second edition, itself doubtless a reprint of the first, may enable us to fix the year of publication. It is there stated that the book was translated by Lord Berners "in the year of our Lord God one thousand five hundred three score and ten." Such an assertion taken literally is wholly gratuitous, but it seems probable that it applies to the date of the second edition, whence the words were erroneously copied into the third. Lord Berners' romance may therefore be said to have been published for a second time in 1570. The fact that several bibliographers at the beginning of the century assert distinctly that *Huon of Bordeaux* was printed by Copland, makes it just possible that the second edition came from his press.

¹ Mr. W. O. Haslitt (*Handbook to Popular Literature of Great Britain*, 1867, p. 289) states it to have been published by Robert Redborne, in 1535. The entry of the book in the catalogue of the Corsser sale, makes it clear that Pickering's opinion, which is quoted by several authorities in favour of Redborne, was as we have stated it above. It is worth noting that several cuts resembling those in *Huon* appear in Pynson's *Sege and dystuccyon of Traye* (1513). They are, however, less finished, and are evidently taken from wholly different blocks. It is just possible that they were copied by the engraver who worked the *Huon* illustrations.

The circumstance that he was the leading publisher of romantic literature at the time, strongly supports the inference.

The edition of 1601, of which, as I have noted, two copies are extant, calls for some comment. It is evidently carelessly edited, and has incorporated, I have shown, features peculiar to the first and second edition indifferently. Its title-page runs as follows:—
 “The / ANCIENT / HONORABLE, FAMOUS / and delightfull Historie of
Huon of / Bourdeaux, one of the peeres / of *Fraunce and Duke of*
Guyenne / Enterlaced with the loue of many La/dies as also the
fortunes & aduentures of Knights' / errant, their amorous Seruants /
Being now the Third time imprinted & the rude Eng/lish corrected
and amended. / London. Printed by Thomas Purfoot, and are to be
sould by / Edward White, at his shop at the litle North dore / of
*Poules at the signe of the Gunne. 1601.”*¹

Neither the copy at the British Museum, nor that at the Bodleian library is quite perfect. The former wants the last pages, and from the latter some twenty pages towards the end are missing.² They are in black-letter octavos, but in type and paper are very inferior to the first edition, and are without woodcuts. A rude attempt has

¹ 1. The Brit. Mus. copy (C. 40d. 42) has on the fly-leaf a MS. note by Mr. Utterson, who reprinted several of Lord Berners' works at the beginning of this century. It runs as follows:—“This is the only copy of L^d Berners' translation of *Huon of Bordeaux* I have ever met with, although in search of it for many years.”—E. V. U. “The writing on the last page,” it continues, in reference to the beautiful manuscript imitations of print which stands in place of the lost pages, “in completion of the work, is, I am told by a competent hand (?) that of the late Mr. Henderson, the Tragedian, to whom, therefore, it is fair to infer the volume had formerly belonged.” On the same page is the autograph of “R. Farmer,” and in two different hands (probably of booksellers) are set the prices £0 10s. 6d. and £1 10s. 0d.

2. The Bodleian copy belonged to Douce, and in his hand appear the following MS. notes:—I. “This the third edition, no other is known at present to exist.” II. “Tho' i have entered the fol title in my list, it neither appears where there is a copy of it nor how i am authorized to say Lord Berners was the translator for w^{ch} however i presume there is good authority” (Ritson). This copy is further stated in another note to have been bought at Major Pearson's sale for £1 1s. 0d., and at Mr. Stevenson's sale for £1 5s. 0d.

³ In the Bodleian copy, all between chapters 166 and the middle of chapter 171, and between chapter 176 and the last page of the last chapter 184 is missing. It, however, possesses the preface which we have already discussed, and a table of the chapters, both of which the British Museum copy is without. The latter copy has lost its proper title-page and colophon. They are *written* in printed characters.

been made to revise the language of the translation, and to adapt its style to the euphuistic prose of the later part of the 16th century. But after the first few pages the reviser of the "rude English" has abandoned any intention of radically "correcting" the text, and he has contented himself with translating the conspicuously obsolete words and phrases into their more modern equivalents. His labour has for us a very high value. A comparison of the first and third editions very adequately illustrates the change our language had undergone, between the early and the late years of the century, and the variant readings of the latter have therefore been collated in the present edition with Lord Berners' own version and printed at the bottom of each page.¹

Of a later edition of *Huon of Bordeaux* we have no positive information, but the following entry in the *Stationers' Register* in 1615 proves that its copyright continued to be of value to the publisher, and that it may possibly have been subsequently reprinted.

Sexto Novembris : 1615

Master **Purfoote** / Entred for his copies by order of a full Court
holden this Day all theis following which were
the copies of Master **Thomas Purfoote** his father
Deceased x

vizt.

*The History of Huon of Burdeaux.*²

§ 22. Thus it will be seen that Lord Berners' rendering of the romance before us has many points of interest for English readers. To the bibliophile the first edition has infinite attractions. All Lord Berners' works are in his eyes to be more coveted than "fine gold," but none has so painfully tantalizing a bibliographical history as the book before us. By the student of language the work must likewise be highly valued. The translator's literary style displays, as well as he could desire, the capacity of the English language at the date of its composition, and the presence of a third edition of a later date

¹ With Part II. will be published an essay on the linguistic points of difference between the two editions.

² Arber's *Transcript*, III. 265b. *Huon* stands among a number of other books; next above it is *The booke of Palmestrye*, and below, *The Italian scholemaster*.

in which Lord Berners' English has been "amended" gives him the best procurable opportunity of tracing the growth of our language in Tudor times. Nor by the reader of English literature must the romance be lightly estimated. It beguiled, as we have seen, the leisure hours of many generations of our ancestors, and it introduced King Oberon to the Elizabethan dramatists and poets. I have omitted to dwell here upon its purely literary characteristics, not because they are deficient in number or without prominence, but because I desired my readers to detect them for themselves. Although the story has not the variety or the sustained interest of the *Morte D'Arthur*, and cannot escape censure for glaring faults of construction, that it shares, throughout its latter portions, with others of its class, many pages in the chapters contained in the present volume are characterized by high artistic merit. Although the battles of brave Huon, and his murderous attacks upon infidel Saracens may prove wearisome at times, the simple honesty of his character cannot fail to win our sympathy, and we feel drawn closer to him because he is no model knight; because he cannot always resist the ordinary human passions, and is cursed with a perilous inquisitiveness. Similarly Esclaramonde, the Saracen maiden, "the most fayrest creature in all Inde, the most sweetest and most courtesest," is depicted with a charming *naïveté*. Love at first sight could hardly be portrayed with a more fascinating quaintness than in the words describing the effect upon her of Huon's first rude embrace, which it is part of his mission to Babylon to hazard. "She sawe hym so fayre & felte his mouth so swete that she thought without she myght haue hym to her loue, she sholde dye for sorrow, so *that* she chaunged couloure, & blusshyd as ruddye as a rose." Of Oberon I have already spoken at some length, but I have left it to my readers to appreciate for themselves the grace and sweetness of his character. He is only half a fairy. The grief that Huon's many failings cause him, his high moral tone, and his humble bearing give him a higher human interest than we are accustomed to associate with the inhabitants of a supernatural world; and there is nothing grotesque about his powers of enchantment. Throughout the story he embodies the spirit of mediæval piety with its material anticipations of a future

life. "And whan," he says, as he concludes his account of the marvellous capacities with which the fairies have endowed him, "I shall departe out of this worlde, my place is aperrelyd in paradyce, for I know that all thyngs creatyd in this mortall world must nedys haue an ende." With some occasional omissions, which each reader will determine for himself, the romance cannot fail to reward perusal. If the language is less melodious than the minstrel's viol described in its pages as making "so swete a sownde that it semed to be the mer-maydes of the see," much of it is not to my ear without a music of its own, and, if the pleasure that the story can give, is not that to be derived from the most cunning literary workmanship, the travellers who are wont to saunter along the bye-ways of our literature will not, I believe, regret such time as they spend in surveying its "antique pageantry," and in listening to its recital

"Of turneys and of trophies hung,
Of forests and enchantments drear."

THE ADVENTURES OF
Duke Guon of Burdeaux.

THE ADVENTURES OF
Duke Guon of Burdeaux.

Huon of Burdeux.

'Here begynnnythe the boke of duke Huon of burdeux & of them that issued fro him.

4

Capitulo .i.



n² the tyme acountyde the yere of grace A.D. 756.

.vii. c. & lvi. yeres after the crucyfyinge of oure Sauyours Ihū Cryst, ther reygnyd in france the ryght glorious and victor-

8

yous prynce Charles the grete, namyd Charlemayn / who in his tyme acheuyde, and brought to an ende many hygh dedes and gret enterprysys by

Charles the Great reigned in France.

12 the grace *that* oure lord god had gyuyn hym in this transetory worlde / for he sayd that god had gyuyn hym the grace to haue the wyt and conduyt so to do / god sent to aid hym, to acomplyshe, & to brynge to an ende

16 his noble enterprysys many a noble prynce and baron / so that, by the ayde of theyr forsses, with the noble proues that god had enduyd them withall / he conqueryde the Almayns / Sclauoney / & Spayne / and parte of

With the aid of his princes and barons he had already conquered the Alemanni, Slavonia, Spaine,

¹ Fol. i. col. 1 (A. i.).

² In the 'amended' edition of 1601, this paragraph runs thus :—I italicize all changes :—

In the time *by computation called y^e yeere of grace*, which was Seauen Hundred, Fifty & Six yeeres after our Sauours sufferings; Charles the great, *more rugarly knownen by the name of* Charlemaine, a right royall, religious, & warlike Prince, rained as *KING* in Fraunce, Emperour of Rome. *Whose course of time was applyed to many high & heroycall enterprises, wherein the fauour of heauen was euermore so assistant to him. as his owne heart and good hopes crowned him with the honour of many successfull victories: enabling all his endeavours with the aid of diuers noble Princes & Barons, whose chiuallrie & right knightly perfourmances, entitled him to the conquest of Almaine, Sclauonia, Spaine,*

CHARL. ROM. VI.

B

part of Africa
and Saxony,

Affryke / & Saxoney / wher as he had moche ado / but at
the ende, by the ayde of his noble barons and chyualrey /
he subduyde and put them to playne dyscounfyture, and
was crownyde with the crowne of the holy empyre of 4
Rome / the renoume of hym and of hys noble valiaunt
chyualry strechyd out of y^e eest in to the west in such
wyse that for euer theyr shalbe¹ made of hym perpetuall
memory, as here after ye shall here. 8

and gained
immortal renown.

¶ How the Emperour Charlemayn requyryd
hys barons that they wolde chose one
amonge them to gouerne his empyre.

Ca. .ii. 12

After the
Emperor's piteous
loss of eleven of
his twelve peers
at Roncesvalles,



So it was after that this ryght noble
Emperour charlemayn had lost his
dere nepheuse Rolant & Olyuer, &
dyuers other barons and knyghtes, in 16
the ryght pyteous² & dolorus batayle
that was at Rownseuall / where as theyr was so
grete & so pyteous a losse that al y^e.xii. peres of
france theyr were slayne excepte the good Duke Names 20
of Bauier. On a day y^e noble Emperour held open
court at his noble³ Cite of Paris / where as their was⁴
many / Dukes, Erles / and barons / sonnes / and
nepheuse & parentes⁵ of the noble prynces before slayn 24
and deed in the fore sayde batayle / by the purchace⁶
and grete treason done and ymagenyde⁷ / by Duke

he summoned his
vassals to a meet-
ing at Paris.

Saxonie, & a great part of Affrike, in all which attempts it is
not to be doubted, but both he & they had their handes full of
busie imployments. But let it suffice, God was their guide,
Religion the cause. Honour the obiect, & perpetuall Fame the
reward, which both led him & his traine to these worthy
attempts, & still brought them backe with the due to theyr
valorous Enterprises: extending both his & their renoume
to all parts of the world, & registering their names in the
Kalender of neuer dying memorie.

¹ shalbe be orig.

² unfortunate.

³ cheefe.

⁴ were assembled.

⁵ kindred.

⁶ falshood.

⁷ contrived.

Ganelon / the noble Emperour euer beyng after in
 doloure / and thought¹ / by reason of the grete anoyauce
 and dyspleasure that he hade of² hys sayde losse / and
 4 also by cause that he was sore³ febylle for⁴ the grete
 age that⁵ he felt hymself in.⁵ Thus when the kyng /
 and the prynces and barons hade dynyd⁶ / the noble Having dined
with them,
 Empe⁷rour called hys lordys before hym, he syttyng
 8 on a benche rychely aperelyd⁸ / and besyde hym
 satte⁹ hys noble barons and knyghtys. Than the kyng
 called to hym Duke Naymes, and sayde / 'Syr Duke
 Naymes, and al ye¹⁰ my barons beyng here present¹⁰ /
 12 ye know ryght well¹¹ the greate tyme and space that I
 haue bene kyng of Fraunce / and emperour of Rome¹¹ /
 the whiche tyme duryng¹² I have bene seruyd and
 obeyed of you¹² al, whereof I thanke you / & render Charles thanked
his barons for
their long service.
 16 grace and prayse to god my swet creatore / and now by
 cause that I knowe certainly / that my lyfe by course
 of nature can not long endure / for thys cause¹³ He knows his
end is near,
 pryncipally I haue causyd you all to be assemblyd here
 20 to gether / to declare to you my pleasure & wyll / the
 whiche I requere you all, & humblye desyre you / that
 ye wyll counsell together, and aduyse whiche of you
 may & wyll haue¹⁴ the gouernaunce of my realme / for and begs them to
choose a
successor.
 24 I can no longer bere the trauayle and payn of the
 gouernynge¹⁵ therof / for I wyl fro hense forth lyue y^e
 resedew of myn age in peace, and serue our lorde
 god / wherfore, as moche as I may, I desyre you all to
 28 aduyse whiche of you all shalbe therto most able / ye
 know all that I haue two sonnes / that is to say, He has two sons,

¹ Greefe & heaviness. ² by. ³ growen verie. ⁴ through.

⁵⁻⁶ now was stollen upon him. ⁶ were there assembled.

⁷ Fol. i. bk. col. 1 (A. i.). ⁸ in his royall Chaire of Estate.

⁹ likewise placed in their seuerall degrees.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ hether summoned by our royall commaundement.

¹¹⁻¹¹ howe longe I haue gouerned this kingdome of Fraunce
 & likewise swayd the imperiall Diadem of Roome.

¹²⁻¹² I haue found your duty & seruice so agreeable.

¹³ reason. ¹⁴ undertake. ¹⁵ belonging to the ruling.

Lewis and
Charlot,

but neither is
fitted for the
crown.

It was Charlot
who slew the son
of Ogier the Dane,
and caused much
evil thereby.

Loys,¹ who is to yonge, and Charlot, whom I loue well, and he is of age suffysyent to rewill. But hys maners and condesyons are not mete to haue the gouernaunce of suche two noble empyrs² as the realme of Fraunce / ⁴ and the holy empyre of Rome / for ye know well in dayes past, by reason of hys pryde, my realme was lykely to haue bene dystroyed, and I to haue had warre agynst you all, whan by hys felony³ he slew ⁸ Baudouyn, sonne to good Ogyer the Dane / ⁴ wherby so many illes hath fallen⁴ / that it shall neuer be⁵ out of remembrance ; wherfore, as long as I lyue, I wyll not consent that he shal haue the gouernance⁶ / though he ¹² be ryghtfull enherytor / and that after me he ought to haue the sygnory. ⁷ Thus I desyre you to aduyse me⁷ what I shall do.'

¶ The conclusyon & answer that the barons ¹⁶ made, & of the ill⁸ erle Amaury / & of the counsell that he gaue to the kyng agaynst the .ii. sonnes of Duke Seuin of Burdeaux, wherof grete myschyef fell after⁹ / and ²⁰ of the good counsell¹⁰ that duke Naymes gaue to the emperour. Capitulo .iii.

The barons
consult and

declare for
Charlot.



han duke Naymes / & all the barons assemblyd to gether in a corner¹¹ of y^e ²⁴ palays, and there were long to gether. At last they al concludyd that to Charlot y^e kynges eldest sone aperteynyd the gouernynge of the sayd realmes. Then they returnyd to ²⁸ the ¹² kyng, and shewyd hym there conclusyon where

¹ Lewes. ² States. ³ rashness.

⁴⁻⁴ whereon so many mishaps ensued. ⁵ raced added.
⁶ gouernment.

⁷⁻⁷ But instantly I entreat your Noble opinions.

⁸ dishonorable. ⁹ afterward ensued. ¹⁰ aduice.

¹¹ priuate parte. ¹² Fol. ii. col. 1.

- a pon they were agreyd / of the whiche themperour was
 ryght ioyfull. Than he called before hym hys sone, and
 shewyd hym many fayre reasons before all hys barons /
 4 therwith auauncyd¹ forth a felon traytour who had greate
 audyence² with themperour, & he had the gouernaunce
 of Charlot the kynges sone, who dyd no thyng but by
 hym³ / he was called Erle Amaury / he was son to on
 8 of the newewse of the traytour Ganelon. Than he
 sayde to the kyng & noble emperour, ^{points out} 'how is it that
 ye hast so sore to delyuer londys to gouerne to Charlot
 your sone? ^{Charlot's} ^{inexperience,} ^{Amaury,} ^{a traitorous Earl,} ⁴ Syr, be not yet so hasty.⁵ But, *ser*, to se &
 12 to proue hys gouernaunce,⁶ gyue hym a lond that ought
 to be your owne, wherof ye be nother honoryd nor
 seruyd⁷ / y^e which⁸ londe .ii. prowd boyes doth kepe /
 who, this vii. yere passyd, wolde not serue you / nor,
 16 syn theyr father y^e duke Seun dyed, wold do you any
 obeysaunce / the eldest is namyd Huon / and the other
 Gerarde / they kepe Burdeux and all the londe of
 Aquitainie / they thynke skorne to releue⁹ theyr londys
 20 of you. But, *ser*, yf ye wyl gyue me men,¹⁰ I shal
 brynge theym as prysoners in to your paleys, to do
 your wyll with them / and than the londe that they
 hold / gyue it to Charlot your sone.' 'Amaury,' quod
 24 the emperour, 'I can you gret thanke *that* ye haue
 aduertysyd me of thys mater. I wyll ye take of your
 best frendys, and besyde theym ye shall haue of myn
 .iii. M.¹¹ knyghtys, wel chosen and prouyd men of
 28 warre / & I wyl that ye brynge to me the two sonnes
 of duke Seun, that is to say, Huon / and gerarde,
 who by theyr pryde settyth¹² no thyng by me.'

¹ stepped. ² too much secrecie. ³ his direction.

⁴⁻⁶ whence proceeds it that you are so forward in deliuer-
 ance of your kingdome to the weake gouerning of Charlot your
 sonne?

⁶ forbear this hastnisse. ⁶ his ablenesse in such a case.

⁷ where you haue as yet neither fealtie nor seruice.

⁸ this. ⁹ hold. ¹⁰ and authoritie *added*.

¹¹ Thousand. ¹² set.



Duke Naymes
complains of
Amaury's guile
and the king's
haste.

He advises that
Huon and his
brother, who are
very young,

Han Duke Naymes, beyng there
present, herd the wordys of Amaury,
and saw how the emperour consentyd
to hys desyre, he stept forth fyerslye,¹ 4
& ² beheld Amaury, and sayde openly:³

'syr emperour, grete yll and greate syn it is *that* ye so
lyghtly do beleue suche men as ye know wel were neuer
certen nor trew. Syr, duke Seuyn hath seruyd you all 8
hys dayes wel and trewly / nor neuer dyd thyng wherby
ye ought to dysenheryte hys chydren / the cause that
they haue not come to your presence or thys tyme to
serue you is none other cause but by reason they be so 12
yonge. And also theyr mother who louth theym in-
tierly / wyll not gladly suffer them to departe fro hyr,
by cause of theyr yonge age. But, syr, yf ye wyll beleue
me, ye shal not be so hasty to take from them there 16
londes. But, syr, do as a noble prynce ought to do
for y^e loue of theyr father who so trewly hath seruyd
you / syr, sende .ii. of your knyghtes to y^e duches theyr
mother / & let them say to hyr fro you, that she do 20
sende hyr tow sonnes to you in to your court to serue

¹ boldly. ² Fol. ii. col. 2.

³ This speech is wholly rewritten in the later edition, and runs thus:—The ill is great but the sinne farre greater, when men of no truth or certaintie are so highly listned unto. As for Duke Seuyn, is it not well knowne, my Lord, what true & honorable seruice all his dayes he did you? & can you then bee so easilye woone to disinherit his children? Consider, good my Lord, that the reason why as yet they haue not tendered their dutie in your presence, is nothing else but their want of years for such allegiance, & their Mother deerely respecting them, is loath to leaue their companie so young. And would your Highness but be aduysed by me, you should not so rashly deprive them of their landes: but rather as best becomineth a vertuous Prince, & in some regard of their Father's good seruice, first send two of your knyghtes to the Duchesse & let them in your name commaund her Sonnes personall appearance at your Court in case of seruice & dutifull homage: which if she or they shall refuse to doe, then may you justly proceede otherwise against them. But I dare (my Lord) engage my honour, that send them shee will, and that onely a Mother's loue & care of her Children hath been the reason of their absence all this while.

you and to do theyr homage. And yf it be so that she should be sent for
nor they wyll not obey your commaundement, then to do homage.

- shall ye haue a iust cause to prouyde a remedye. But,
4 syr, I know for certeyn / y^e duches wyl send them to
you, for y^e absence that they haue made is for no
thyng / but for the loue that the mother hath vnto
hyr chyldren.'

- 8 ¶ Howe that themperour Charlemayne sent
two knyghtys to the duches to burdeux to
commaund hyr to sende hyr two sonnes to
hys court. Capitulo iiiii.

- 12 1 Han the emperour Charles had hard Charles approves.



- duke Naimes speke, he sayde, 'Syr
duke, I knowe certainly ² that duke
Seuyn hath seruyd vs trewly / and the
reason that ye have shewyd is iust.

- 16 And therefore I graunt that it shalbe as ye haue
deuysyd.³ 'Syr,'⁴ quod y^e duke, 'I thanke your
grace.' Than incontynent the kynge sent for two

- 20 knyghtes, and gaue theym in charge to go to burdeux
to do hys message to the duches, and to the sonnes of
duke Seuyn / the whiche they dyd, and so departyd
fro Parys without restyng past one night in a plase,

- 24 tyll⁵ they aryued at burdeux / and than incontynent
they went to y^e palays, where as they founde the
duches, who was as than but newly rysyn fro hyr
dyner; and whan she was aduertysyd of there comm-

- 28 yng / she cam in haste to mete theym / accompenyd
with Huon hyr son, who was by hyr; and Gerarde
came after with a sparhawke⁶ on hys fyst / when the
messengers saw the duches and hyr two goodly sonnes /

- 32 they kneilyd down, and salutyd the duches / & hyr
two sonnes ⁷ fro kynge Charlemayn, and sayd, 'Lady,

Messengers are
sent in haste to
Bordeaux.

They salute the
duches and her
sons from the
Emperor,

¹ Fol. ii. back, col. 1.

² for certainty.

³ aduised.

⁴ My Lord.

⁵ untill.

⁶ sparrowhawke.

⁷ col. 2.

and bid her send
her sons to court
on peril of losing
her land to
Charlot.

to you we be sent fro our emperour Charles / who by
vs sendyht to¹ you hys salutasyon with honour and
amyte.' When the noble lady vnderstode that they
were messengers sent fro the noble emperour Charles / 4
she auaunsyd and embrasyd theym / and sayde how they
were ryght welcom. 'Dam,'² quod they, 'our emperour
hath sent vs to you / & commaundyth you to send to
hym your two sonnes to serue hym in hys court / for 8
ther are but ³ few in hys realme, but that are come to
his seruyce, except your sonnes / &, lady, syn ye know
that the londe *that* ye hold parteynyng to your sonnes
is holden of y^e emperour Charles, by reason of his 12
realme of ⁴ Fraunce / and he hath greate merueyll *that*
ye have not sent them or ⁵ thys tyme to do hym service
as other dukes & prynces ⁶ hath ⁷ done / wherfore,⁸
lady, he commaundyth you for your welth, and con- 16
ceruasyon of your londys, *that* ye send them to hym /
or yf ye do not / know for certeyn he wyll take fro
you suche londys as ye hold, & gyue them to Charlot
hys sone / ⁹ Wherefore may it please you to shewe vs 20
your good wyll.' ⁹

¶ The aunswer that the duches of burdeux
made to themperours messengers.

Capitulo v. 24

The duchess
pleads in excuse
their youth,



Han the good lady hade well vnder-
stonde the messengers, she aunswered
them swetlye,¹⁰ & sayde, 'Syr,¹¹ knowe
for certeyn the cause that¹² I have not 28
sent my sonnes / to the court or¹³ thys
tyme / to serue y^e kynge as reason is¹⁴ / was by cause I

¹ unto. ² Madome. ³ verie. ⁴ royall prerogative in.

⁵ era. ⁶ in like case, *added*. ⁷ have. ⁸ In this respect.

⁹⁻⁹ This is the summe of our Messuage, and wee attend
your answere.

¹⁰ gently. ¹¹ My Lordes and honourable Freendes.

¹² the reason why. ¹³ before. ¹⁴ dutie required.

- saw theym so yonge;¹ and also for the loue of duke
 Seuyn theyr father / and by cause I knewe certainly
 that my ryghtfull² lorde, the emperour Charlemayne /
 4 loued alwayes the duke Seuyn, trustynge alwayes
 that he wold take no dyspleasure with the chyldren /
 these thynges hath³ ben the pryncypall cause that I
 haue not sent them or thys⁴ to serue the kyng /
 8 wherefore, Syrs, I requyre you, as affectuosly as I can,⁵
 to be meanes to themperour and to al the other barons
 to haue me and my chyldren excusyd, for y^e faulte is
 alonlye in me and not in them.' Than Huon stept
 12 forth before hys mother and sayde :— 'Madame, yf
 it had ben your pleasure, ye myght haue sent vs or⁶
 thys tyme' / 'that is trew,' quod Gerardyn / 'for we be
 grete ynow to be made knyghtes.'⁷ The lady behelde
 16 hyr two sonnes and wepynge sayde to the messengers,
 'Syrs, ye may retourne to the kyng / howe be it ye
 shal reste you thys nyght in my house, and to morow
 retourne⁸ at your pleasure / and ye shall recommend
 20 me and my sonnes to y^e kynges good grace & to the
 other barons and knyghtes / and amonge other salute
 duke Naymes, who is nere parent⁹ to my sonnes / and
 desyre hym for y^e loue of duke Seuyn to haue my sonnes
 24 as recommendyd.'¹⁰ 11 'Dame,'¹² quod the messengers,
 'haue ye no dought / for Duke Naymes is a noble man
 and a trew knyght / nor he wyl neuer¹³ be in no¹⁴ place
 where any yll iugement¹⁵ shulde be gyuen.' Than the
 28 duches commaundyd hyr sonnes / that they shulde make
 the kynges messengers good chere and to bryng them in
 to theyr chambre to reste them / the whiche they dyde /

and the Emperor's
love to their
father.

She bids the
messengers stay
the night,

and salute Duke
Naymes on their
return.

¹ in regards of their tender yeares. ² Fol. iii. col. 1 (A. iii.).

³ haue. ⁴ all this while.

⁵ let my entreats preuaile so much with you as, ⁶ before.

⁷ are old ynough to haue our knighthood. ⁸ depart.

⁹ kinsman. ¹⁰ to stand a continuall freend unto them.

¹¹ Fol. iii. col. 2. ¹² Madame. ¹³ will he at any time.

¹⁴ omitted. ¹⁵ opinion.

In the presence
of the messengers,
the duchess
promises to send
Huon and Gerard
to the Emperor at
Easter,
and advises them
as to their
conduct at court.

Presents are
given to the
messengers,

and they depart
for Paris.

and were serued, and festyd as it aparteyned.¹ Than
y^e next mornynge they retourned to y^e palayes where as
they founde the duches and hyr two sonnes / and they
humbly salutyd the lady / whan y^e duches sawe them 4
she called Huon and Gerardyn, and sayde, 'chyl dren,
here in the presence of these two knyghtes I say that
at Ester ye shal go to our soueren lorde themperour
Charlemayn / and, when ye be in y^e court, serue your 8
soueren lorde well & trewly, as subgettes ought to doo ;
be delygent at all tymys to serue hym trewly,² and
kepe company with noble men such as ye se *that* be
of good³ condysyons / be not in the plase where yll 12
wordys be spoken, or yll counsell gyuen / fly fro com-
pany of them *that* louyth not honour & trouthe /
open not your eeres to here liers, or false reporters, or
flaterers / haunt often the chyrche, and gyue largely 16
for goddes sake / be lyberal and courteys, & gyue to
poore knyghtes / fly the company of ianglers / and all
goodnes shall folow therby. I wyll there be gyuen
to eche of these knyghtes a courser & a ryche 20
gowne, as it aparteyneth to the messengers of a noble
emperour as is Charlemayne / & also eche of them
to haue a C.⁴ florence' / 'Madame,' *quod* Huon, 'your
pleasure shalbe acomplyshed' / than the .ii. sonnes 24
causyd to be brought before the palays two goodly
horses, and presentyd them to the two knyghtes, and
gave eche of them a ryche gown and a .C. florence /
Whereof the messengers were ioyfull, and thanked the 28
duches and hyr two ⁵sonnes, & sayde that they
courtesey shulde be remembred in tyme to come / how-
beyt they knew well it was done for y^e honour of the
kyng / then they toke leue of the duches and of hyr 32
two sonnes, and so departyd / and rode without lette

¹ as appertained to their woorth. ² faithfully.

³ and vertuous *added*. ⁴ hundred.

⁵ Fol. iii. back, col. 1.

tyll they came to Parys, where as they founde the
emperour in hys palayes syttyng amonge hys barons /
the kyng parseyued them / and incontynent called
4 them to his presence, and, or¹ they hadde layser to
speke, the kyng badde them welcome home, and
demaundyd of them yf they had ben at Burdeux, and
spoken with the duches and the .ii. sonnes of duke
8 Seuyne, & whether they wolde come and serve hym in
hys court or not. 'Syr,'² quod they, 'we haue ben at
burdeux, and done your message to the duches / who
ryght humbly reseyved vs, and made vs grete fest³ and
12 chere / when she had hard vs speke, and knewe that
we were your messengers, she made vs the best chere
that she cowde deuise, and sayde *that* the cause why
she had not sente hyr sonnes to your court before thys
16 tyme, was by cause of theyr yonge age / and she
humbly requyeth your grace 'to haue⁴ hyr and hyr
two sonnes excuysd / and that at thys next Ester she
wyll sende them to your court. And, syr,⁵ the two
20 chyldren are so goodly⁷ that it is pleasure to beholde
them / specyally Huon the eldest is so fayre and so
well formyde that nature cannot amende hym. Also,
syr, for the loue of you she hath gyuen eche of vs a
24 goodly horse, & a ryche gowne, and a C. florence of
gold. Syr, y^e goodnes, the valewre and y^e courtesey
that is in the duches and in hyr sonnes cannot be
recountyde. Syr, y^e duches and hyr two sonnes
28 requyeth your grace⁸ to retayne *them* alwayes in your
faouure and good grace / and to pardone the faulte of
theyr longe absence.'

On their arrival
they inform the
Emperor of the
duchess' promise,

and her sons'
behaviour
towards them.

¹ ere. ² Dread Lord. ³ gaue us gentle entertainment.

⁴ Fol. iii. back. col. 2. ⁵ hold. ⁶ trust me, my Lord.

⁷ two such lovely Gentlemen.

⁸ and on their behalf are we to entreat your Maiestie.

¶ How themperour was content with the report of the two knyghtes / and howe the traytor erle Amaury went & compleyned to Charlot the kynges sone. Capitulo .vi. 4



Han themperour had hard y^e messengers speke, he was ryght ioyfull, and sayd / 'alwayes I haue harde say that a good Impe¹ bryngethe forth 8 good ²freute / I say it for duke

Charles commends the conduct of the youths as worthy the sons of his friend and knight Duke Bevin,

Seuyn / who in his tyme was a valyant & trewe knyght, & by *that* I se and here³ the two chyl dren resembleth theyr good father. I se⁴ they haue reseyued my 12 messengers ryght honorably, and with grete reuerence hath gyuen them grete⁵ gyftes, y^e whiche shalbe to them vaylable⁶ in tyme to come / for they shal no soner be come to my court, but in the dyspyght of them⁷ 16 *that* wyll speke agaynst them, I shall do for them in suche wyse that it shalbe an ensample⁸ to al other to do well / for I wyll make them, for loue of theyr father, of my pryuey counsell.' Than themperour 20 behelde duke Naymes and sayde : 'Syr duke,⁹ alwayes your parentes¹⁰ hath¹¹ ben good and trew, and certainly I wyll *that* Amaury be banyshed my court / for he, nor neuer none¹² of hys lynage, gaue as yette any good 24 counsell.' 'Syr,' quod the duke, 'I knewe well y^e longe absence of duke Seuyns sonnes was for none other cause but by reason of theyr yought' / Whan the erle Amaury had harde the kyng speke, & sawe howe 28 he was chafyd¹³ agaynste hym, he was sorowful, and so departed secretlye fro the courte, and sware that he wolde purchase¹⁴ for the two sonnes of duke Seuyn

and promises them high posts at court.

He orders Amaury to be banished.

Amaury in grief, and filled with hate of Huon and Gerard, devises a plot against them.

¹ tree.

² Fol. iiii. col. 1.

³ that.

⁴ perceiue.

⁵ no meane.

⁶ available.

⁷ any.

⁸ example.

⁹ My Lord.

¹⁰ kindred.

¹¹ haue.

¹² euer any.

¹³ offended.

¹⁴ prouide.

suche a broth¹ that they shulde bothe dye in dolowre,²
 and wolde do so myche that he wolde brynge all
 Fraunce in to heuynes and trouble³ / so he went to hys
 4 lodgyng sorowfull and in grete dyspleasure / and than
 he imagyned and studyed on the mater, & howe to
 brynge about his interpryse / than he departed fro hys
 lodgyng, and went to Charlot the kynges sone, with
 8 whome he was ryght pryuey / he founde hym syttyng
 on a ryche couche⁴ deuysynge⁵ with a yonge knyght /
 than Amaury⁶ wepyng with a peteous vysage / and
 hys eyen full of water,⁶ he entred in to the chambre /
 12 and knelyde downe before Charlot, who hadde of hym
 grete petye to se hym in that case. Than⁷ Charlot
 toke hym vp, & demaundyd wherfore he made that
 sorow, and whether any man had dysplesed hym.
 16 'Syr,' quod Amaury, 'I shall shew you / trew it is⁸
 the two sonnes of duke Seuyng of burdeaux / shal come
 to the courte, and, as I haue harde say, the kyng hath
 sayde that, at there commynge, they shalbe made of hys
 20 pryuey counsell / so that none other aboute the kyng
 shall haue⁹ no profyght nor wynynge. But they and
 I can se none other that yf they thus come / by them,
 all other⁹ that be now grete about the kyng shalbe
 24 chasyd away, so *that* within this .ii. yere they shall
 haue y^e beste quarter¹⁰ of the realme of Fraunce / &
 you, yf ye suffer it, they shal brynge you clere out of
 temperours fauore your father. Therefore, Syr, I requyre
 28 you helpe me now in thys besynes / for in tyme past
 duke Seuyng theyr father, by grete wronge and grete

He reveals it and
 his wronge to
 Charlot the king's
 son,

and begs for his
 aid.

¹ traine. ² as should coost both their liues.

³ and hazard the heuinesse & trouble of all Fraunce
 beside. ⁴ bed. ⁵ communing.

⁶ shewing a very sad countenance, the teares in his
 eyes & trecherie in his heart.

⁷ Fol. iii. col. 2. ⁸ my greefe is not without great cause, for.

⁹ any honour or reckoning made of them. And assure
 yourselfe, my Lord, that if the State be thus aduanced, they.

¹⁰ partes.

treason, he toke fro me a strong castell of myn owne, & I neuer dyd him dysplesure / *ser*, ye ought to ayde in this besines,¹ for I am of *that* lynage / by reason of the noble quene your mother.' 4

The earl proposes to lay an ambush on the road,

and set upon the youths and slay them in their journey from Bordeaux.

Charlot agrees to assist him.

Charlot and Amaury prepare the plot,

and leave Paris at midnight with their men.

¶ Whan Charlot had wel understonde y^eerle Amaury, he demaundyd in what maner he myght ayde him / 'syr,' quod he, 'I shal shew you. I shall assemble y^e best of my lynage, & ye shal let me haue of yours .lx. 8 knyghtes well armyd, & I shal lye in y^e way / to mete with y^e .ii. boyes / & I shal lay y^e bushment² in a lyttyll wood a lege fro Montleherry on y^e way to Orleance, by y^e whiche waye they must nedes come / 12 & than we shall sette on them, & slay them also, *that* none shal speke therof / and if it be knownen after, who dare say agaynst you, or were any helme³ agaynst you?' / 'ser,' quod Charlot, 'sease⁴ & apeace your 16 sorow / for I shal neuer haue ioy in my herte tyll I be reuengyd of these .ii. boyes / goo, & make redy your men, & I shal prepare myn, & I wyl go my self with you y^e soner to make an end of this besynes'⁵ / whan 20 Amaury hard Charlot so liberally to offer hym selfe to go in hys ayde, he thanked hym, and embrased hys lege, & wolde a⁷ kyssed his shoo. But Charlot wold not suffer hym. But toke hym vp, and sayde:—'Syr, 24 haste you / and put to your payne that thys besynes may com to a good end.' Amaury departed fro Charlot ryght ioyous, and, at the day apoynted, he seasyd not day nor nyght to assemble hys men and hys next⁸ 28 frendys / and, in the euenyng before, he came to Charlot, who was as than also redy, and hys men / and, as secretely as they myght, they departed about the owre of mydnyght out of Parys, al armed, and they 32 seasyd⁹ not tyll they came to the plase apoynted to

¹ serious matter. ² ambushment. ³ healme in feeld.

⁴ qualifie. ⁵ businesse. ⁶ Fol. iiiii. back, col. 1.

⁷ haue. ⁸ nearest. ⁹ stayed.

tary the *commynge* of the .ii. sonnes of duke Seuyn /
 now I wyll leue to speke of them, and returne to
 speke of the two sonnes of duke Seuyn / Huon and
 4 Gerardyn.

¶ Howe the two sonnes of duke Seuyn of
 burdeux toke leue of the duchess there
 mother / & howe *in* there way they ouer
 8 toke the good abbot of Cluny there vncle
 goynge towardys Paris to the emperour
 Charlemayn. Capitulo .vii.



12 E¹ haue wel harde here before howe the
 messengers of the kynges departed fro
 burdeux. Than the two chyliden² made
 them redy to go to the courte, rychely
 apareyled / and well fornysshyd of
 16 euery thyng nedefull, aswell of gold & syluer & other
 aparel of sylke as to theyr estate apperteynyd / than
 they³ assemblyd the bar⁴ons of the countre, to whom
 they recommaundyd theyr londys and sygnoryes /
 20 and dyd chose out .x. knyghtes and .iiii. counsellers
 to ryde with them to ayde and to gouerne theyr
 besynes. Than they sent for y^e provost of Gerone,
 called *ser Guyre*, to whom they recommaundyd all the
 24 feactes⁵ of iustice / than,⁶ when Huon and his brother
 had chosen them that shuld go in theyr companye,
 than⁷ they toke theyr leue of y^e duchess there mother,
 and of the barons of the countre, who sore dyd wepe
 28 by cause of there deperture / of⁸ the which they had
 good occasyon so to do / and more yf they hade knowen
 the peteous⁹ aduenture that¹⁰ fell after to the two
 chyliden; for, yf y^e duchess had knowen¹⁰ therof, she

Huon and Gerard
 take leave of their
 friends and their
 mother.

Ten knyghtes bear
 them company.

¹ You. ² sons. ³ there. ⁴ Fol. iiii. back, col. 2.

⁵ affaires. ⁶ Then. ⁷ than *om.* ⁸ for. ⁹ haplesse.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ afterward befell them on the way. Or had the good
 Duchesse but dreamed.

The duchess and

her people weep
at their departure.

On their way
Gerard tells Huon
a dream of evil
import.

wold neuer haue sufferyd them to departe fro hyr / for
after there fell suche myschyfe that it is a peteous¹
thyng to recount it. Thus y^e.ii. bretherne departyd
& kyssyd theyr mother, sore wepyng. Thus² they 4
toke theyr horses and theyr company, and in passyng
by y^e strettys of y^e towne / y^e people made greta
sorow for theyr departyng, & sore wepyng, prayed to
god to be³ theyr gyde and condute. The wepynges & 8
lamentacyons were so extreme that the .iii. brethern
kowd not haue so ferme a⁴ courage. But that they
gaue many a sore seygh at theyr⁵ departinge out of
the town / and when they had rydyn a certeyn space, 12
and that theyr sorow was sumwhat apeasyd / than⁶
Huon called hys brother Gerarde & sayde, 'Brother,
we go to the court to serue the kyng, wherfore we
haue cause to be ioyfull / wherfore⁷ lette vs two synge 16
a songe to refreshe vs' / 'brother,' quod Gerarde, 'my
hert is not very ioyfull to synge nor to make fest⁸ / for
thys nyght I drempt⁹ a merwelous dreme / me thought
.iii. lybardes¹⁰ assayllyd me and drew out¹¹ my hert out 20
of my body. But me thought ye skapyd¹² saue and
sownd, and retournyd bak / wherfore, dere brother, yf¹³
it be your pleasure / to withstond my dreme, ¹⁴the
whiche I reken our wyage to be a daungerous passage / 24
therfor I wold desyre you lete vs retourne¹⁴ agayn to
Burdeux to our mother. She¹⁵ wyll be ioyfull of our
retourne.' 'Brother,' quod Huon, '& god wyll, we
shall not retourne for feer of a dreme, it shuld be for 28
euer to our reproche and shame / I wyll not retourne
to Burdeux tyll¹⁶ I haue sene the kyng. Therefore,

¹ lamentable. ² Then. ³ Fol. v. col. 1. ⁴ firme.

⁵ the. ⁶ then. ⁷ therefore.

⁸ sing or make any sport at all. ⁹ dreamed. ¹⁰ Leopardes.

¹¹ drewe. ¹² you escapyd. ¹³ if so.

¹⁴⁻¹⁶ which makes me dread our iourney to be dangerous:
might I preuaile with you, we would ride backe.

¹⁵ who. ¹⁶ vntill.

swete brother, dismay you not. But rather make good
 chere; our lorde Ihesu Crist shal gyde & condute vs
 in saue gard.' Thus these two bretherne rode nyght
 4 and day so longe tyll they parseyued before theym the
 Abbot of Cluny with a .xxx. horse in hys companye,
 and he was goynge to the kynges court.

They see before
 them the Abbot of
 Cluny and his
 company.



Han Huon parseyued that companye, he
 called hys brother Gerardyn and sayde:
 'loo, yonder I se men of relygyon hold-
 ynge the way to Parys / & y^e know
 well whan we departyd fro y^e duches

12 our mo²ther, she chargyd vs that we
 shuld always companye with good peopyl / therfore
 it is good that we make hast to ouertake them.'
 'Brother,' quod Gerardyn, 'your pleasure be fulfilled: '

16 so they rode so longe that they ouertoke the Abbot,
 who regardyd on y^e ryght syde, and saw the .ii.
 bretheren commyng to ouertake hym. Than^s he stode
 styll, and saw Huon who came rydyng on before /

20 Huon salutyd hym humbly / and the abbot in lyke
 maner to hym / & demaundyd whether he rode so
 hastely, and fro whense he came, and what he was,
 and who was hys father. 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'syn⁴ it

They ride on and
 salute the Abbot.

24 is your pleasure to knowe, Duke Seuyn of burdeux was
 our fater: it is .vii. yere syns he trepasyd⁵ thys lyfe.
 And, ser, behold here my brother, who is yonger than⁶

I, and we are goynge to noble kynge Charlemayns
 28 court, to releue of hym our londys and countre / for he
 hath sent for vs by two noble knyghtes / and, syr, we
 are in dowt of sum truble by the way' / When the
 good Abbot vnderstode that they were sonnes to duke

32 Seuyn, he was ryght ioyfull / and in token of trew
 amyte he embrassyd theym one after another, and
 sayde / 'dere frendys, haue no dowt, for, by the grace

The Abbot
 welcomes them
 kindly,

¹ you.

² Fol. v. col. 2.

³ Then.

⁴ since.

⁵ departed.

⁶ then.

and offers to
conduct them to
Paris.

Together they
approach the
wood,
where Charlot
and Amaury lie
in ambush.

of Ihesu Cryst, I shall condute¹ you sauely to Parys /
for duke Seuyn your father was my cousyn germayn,
wherfore² I am bownd to ayde you: know³ for
trought, I⁴ am sworne of the greate counsell with 4
kynge Charlemayn / and yf there be any that wyl
moue or styre against you, I shall ayde you to my
power / wherfore ye⁵ may ryde suerly in my company
without any dowt.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke you' / 8
thus they rode talking with y^e abbot theyr parent: ⁶
that nyght they came to Montleherry. Than the next
day they rose⁷ be tymys and herd masse, & after
masse⁸ toke theyr horsse; and they were in all a .iiii. 12
score horsse / & they rode so longe tyll they came to a
lytyll ⁹woodsyde / where as Charlot and the erle
Amaury lay in a bushment / and¹⁰ they spyed Huon
and Gerarde rydyng before, wherof they were ioyfull. 16
Than Amaury¹¹ sayde to Charlot, 'Syr, now is the tyme
come to be reuengyd of the damage that duke Seuyn
dyd to me / yonder I se hys .ii. sonnes commyng: yf
they be not incontynent slayne by vs, we are not 20
worthy to haue any lond.¹² And Syr, by theyr deth
ye shall be lorde of Burdeux / and of all the duchy of
Aqytanie.'¹³



¹⁴¶ Howe by the counsell of the erle of¹⁵ 24
Amaury they ran fyrst¹⁶ [at] Gerardyn,
brother to Huon, & bare hym to the erth,
and sore wouzd yd hym, wherof Huon was
ryght sorowfull. Capitulo .viii. 28

¹ conducte. ² therefore. ³ and know. ⁴ that I.

⁵ you. ⁶ kinsman. ⁷ arose. ⁸ afterward.

⁹ Fol. v. back, col. 1. ¹⁰ lay closely ambushed, there.

¹¹ Then Amerie. ¹² Land or life. ¹³ Aquitaine.

¹⁴ Fol. v. back, top of col. 2. ¹⁵ of Earle ¹⁶ first at.



- 4 **W**han¹ that Charlot vnderstode the erle
 Amaury, he strechyd hym in hys
 steropes, and toke a spere with a
 sharpe hed, and issuyd out² alone out Charlot advances
alone from the
wood fully armed
 of the wood / when Amaury saw that
 Charlot went out of the wood alone, he drew a lytyll
 out of the way, & sayde to hys men, 'suffer Charlot
 8 alone, there nede none go to ayde hym.' Thys sayde
 y^e false traytour, by cause he desyred no thyng elles,
 but³ one of the sonnes of duke Seun myght sley Charlot,
 wherby he thought [Charlot] shuld be dystroyed
 12 in acusyng them of murder, wherby he myght come
 to⁴ his dampnable⁵ intent / Charlot came agaynst thes
 .ii. brethern / the Abbot of Cluny saw Charlot comm- The Abbot
perceives him
afar off.
 ynge al armyde / and saw in the wood a greate nombre
 16 of armyd men⁶ / then he stode styll, and called Huon
 & Gerarde, & sayde / 'dere neuewe, I parseyue⁷ in
 yonder wood a knyght all armyd, and the wood full of
 horsemen : I can not tell what they meane. Haue ye
 20 done any wronge to any man? yf ye haue done, or
 holde any thyng that ys not your owne / steppe forth
 and offer hym reason, and promyse to make a mendys.'
 'Syr,' quod' Huon, 'I know no man lyuyng that I or
 24 my brother haue done to hym any displeasure / nor
 we know not that any creature do⁸ hate vs' / than
 Huon sayde to hys brother, 'Syr,⁹ ryde on before, and
 mete with yonder knyght / and demaunde what is hys
 28 pleasure.' Gerarde rode forth and mette with Charlot,
 and demandyd what hys pleasure was to haue, or
 whether he was kepar of that passage or not, and
 demaundyd any trybute or not: yf he dyd, he was
 32 redy to pay yt. Charlot aunswered hym fyersely, and
 sayde, 'what art thou?' Gerarde aunswered and

¹ Across the page, not in columns. ² yssued. ³ but that.

— and as himselfe detecting them of the murder.

⁴ Fol. vi. col. 1. ⁶ men more. ⁷ perceiue.

⁸ doth. ⁹ Brother.

Charlot replies
that their father
did him base
wrong,

for which he will
revenge himself
now by slaying
Gerard.

Gerard pleads that
he is unarmed.

Charlot will hear
nothing,

and rushes upon
him.

sayde, 'Syr, I am of the Cite of Burdeux, and sone to
duke Seuyn, whom god pardon; and herafter commyth
Huon myn elder brother, and we are goyng to Parys to
the kynges court, to releue our londys and our fees, 4
and to serue hym / and yf there be any *that* wyl any
thyng with vs, let hym come to Parys, & we shall do
hym reason.' 'Hold thy tounge,' quod Charlot, 'whether
thou wylt or not, I wyl haue reason ¹of that / that 8
Seuin thy father toke fro me¹ / for he toke .iiii. of my
Castelles,² and I kowd neuer ³haue reason of hym.³
But now, syne⁴ thou art here, I wyl be reuengyd of the
wronge that thy father dyde to me, for as long as thou 12
and thy brother be a lyue, I shall neuer haue ioy in
my hert / there for ⁵beware of me, for, or⁵ it be nyght,
I shall ⁶make thy lyfe depart fro thy bodye.' 'Syr,'
quod Gerarde, 'haue petye of me: ye may se I am but 16
naked without armure. It shalbe greatly to your
veleny⁷ and reproche yf I be thus slayne by you: it
neuer commyth of a yentyll courage of any⁸ knyght to
assayle any person *without* armure or wepeyn / howe 20
be it, syr, I crye you mercy / wel ye se *that* I haue
nother swerde / shyld / nor spere / to defende me with
all / ye may se yonder comyng my elder brother, who
shalbe redy to make you amendes, yf any harme hath 24
bene done to you' / 'peace,' quod Charlote / 'theyr ys
as now no thyng so dere to⁹ me as can moue me
contrare. But that shamfully I shall put [thee] to y¹⁰
deth / beware of me.' Gerarde, who was but yonge, 28
was in greate feer, and called apon our lorde god, and
tourneyd hys hors to come agayne to hys brother. But
Charlot, who was in hys foolyshe opynyon,¹¹ cowchyd
hys spere / and ran after Gerarde, and strake¹² hym on 32

¹⁻¹ for some wrongs done me by thy Father Duke Seuin.

² Castles from me. ³⁻³ know the reason thereof. ⁴ since.

⁵⁻⁵ stand on thy ground, for before. ⁶ Fol. vi. col. 2.

⁷ shame. ⁸ or a. ⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ put thee to.

¹¹ desperate moode. ¹² strooke.

- the syde with suche force that the spere ran throw
 parte of hys body, and so bare hym to the erth, Gerard falls.
 wenyng he had bene slayn / how be it y^e stroke was
 4 not mortale / ¹our lord god sauyd hym at that tyme ;
 howbeit¹ he was so sore hurte that he kowd not
 remoue for payne that he felt. The good Abbot of
 Cluny behelde Gerarde, and saw hym borne to the
 8 ground, and peteously wepyng,² sayde to³ Huon / 'ha,
 cosyn, I se yonder your brother Gerarde slayn, the
 whiche⁴ sleyth my⁵ hert.' 'A, ser,' quod⁶ Huon, 'for Huon thinks him
slain,
 goddessake counsel me.⁷ Alas, what shall the duches our
 12 mother say when she knowith that my brother is slayne,
 who so swetly⁸ hath norysshed vs. A, my dere brother
 Gerarde / now I se wel your dreame is⁹ trew. Alas that I
 had not belyued you; yf I hade thys had not fortunyd.¹⁰
 16 A, Syr,' quod⁶ Huon to the Abbot, 'I requere¹¹ you¹² and in vain begs
aid of the Abbot,
 socoure me / for yf I shulde be slayne I wyll go and
 wyl demaunde of yonder knyght for¹³ what occasyon he
 hath slayne my brother, nor I shal neuer retourne tyl¹⁴
 20 I haue slayn him or he me.' 'A, fayre nephew,' quod⁶
 the Abbote, 'beware what ye do / haue no trust to be
 socouryd by me / for ye knowe well in thys cas / I who is a priest
and man of
peace.
 can not ayde you / I am a prest & serue gode; I may
 24 not be where any man ys slayne.' 'Syr,' quod⁶ Huon,
 'of suche companye as yours is we myght well forbeer.'
 Then Huon behelde peteouslye¹⁵ the .x. knyghtes that
 came with hym fro burdeuxe / And sayde, 'Syr, ye
 28 that are come hether with me / and haue bene
 norysshede in my hous, how say you, wyll ye ayede
 me to reuenge y^e deth of my brother / & to socoure me
 agaynst thys fals morderers that hath lyene¹⁶ in a

1-1 although in sooth verie dangerous, for.

² (overcome with great greefe.) ³ unto.⁴ the sight whereof. ⁵ poore *added*. ⁶ quoth.⁷ in this heauie case *added*. ⁸ louingly. ⁹ too *added*.¹⁰ happened. ¹¹ desire. ¹² to *added*.¹³ Fol. vi. back, col 1. ¹⁴ untill. ¹⁵ heavily. ¹⁶ lain.

They gladly lend
assistance.

Huon rides to
where his brother
lies sorely
wounded.

wayte and slayn my brother Gerarde?' 'Syr,' quod¹
they,² 'to dye in the quarell³ we shall⁴ ayde & socoure
you:⁵ goo forth & haue no dowt' / and then they
rode forth with suche smal defence as they had. Then⁴
Huon brochyde⁶ forth his hors with such fyersnes that
he made the erth to trymble vndere hym / and hys
knyghtes folowyde hym with a hardye courage, deter-
mynde⁷ to do walyauntly / when the goode Abbot⁸
saw hys nephew depart and hys companye he had grete
petye / he prayed our lorde god to defende them fro
deth. And the Abbot wyth hys companye folowyde
softly after Huon to see what ende y^e matere shulde¹²
come vnto. Huon rode so long til⁸ he came wher as
hys brother lay sore woundyd. Then he cryede alowde,
'my ryght dere brother, yf theyr be any lyfe in your
bodye, aunswer me, & shew me how ye fele your selfe.'¹⁶
'Brother,' quod¹ Gerarde, 'I am sore woundyde; I can
not tell yf I may skape a lyue / thynke on your selfe /
yt ys no losse of me / fly ye away yonder; ye may se
how the woode ys full of armyde men / and they²⁰
abyde for no thyng but to sley you as they haue
done me.'



¶ Howe Huon of Burdeux was soroufull
when he sawe hys brother Gerarde so sore²⁴
woundyde / and how he slew Charlotte /
and how he came before the kyng at
Parys and apealyde¹⁰ hym of treason.

Capitulo .ix. 28

¹ quoth. ² were we sure *added*. ³ yet *added*.
⁴ should. ⁵ therefore *added*. ⁶ spurred.
⁷ determining. ⁸ untill. ⁹ Fol. vi. back, col. 2.
¹⁰ appeached.



- Hen Huon vnderstod his brother / he
 haile grete petye,¹ and sayde how² he
 hade rather dye then to³ departe
 4 wythoute reuengynge of hym, ' & god
 wyl I shall not departe tyl I haue
 slayn hym that hath brought you in to thys poynte'⁴ /
 then he sporryd hys hors, and folowyd after Charlate,
 8 who was retournynge to the woode to hys companye /
 but when Charlot parseyuyde how Huon folowyd
 hym / he tournyde hys hors and behelde hym fyerslye.
 Then Huon cryed with a hye voyse & sayd, ' wassale,⁵
 12 who⁶ art thou *that* hath⁷ slayn my brother? wher wert
 thou borne?' / Charlot answeryd⁸ & sayde, ' I was borne
 in Almayne, & I am sone to Duke Thyrrey' / Huon
 beleuyd he had sayd trouthe, by cause⁹ Charlot had a
 16 dysgysyd shylde bycause he wolde not be knowen / ' a,'
 quod Huon, ' god gyue the incombraunce; ¹⁰ why hast
 thou slayne my brother?' / than Charlot answeryd
 fersly,¹¹ and [sayd], ' thy fader Duke Seuyn toke fro me
 20 .iii. castels, and wolde neuer do me ryght / therfor I haue
 slayne thy brother, and in lyke wyse so shal I the.'

Huon promises to
 avenge the injury,

and challenges
 Charlot,

who falsely
 declares himself
 Duke Thierry's
 son.

- ¶ Then Huon in grete yre¹² sayd, ' false and vntrew
 knyght & morderer, or¹³ it be nyght, I shall shewe thee
 24 thy dolour that thou hast brought me in'¹⁴ / than
 Charlot sayd, ' beware the of me fore I defy the' /
 Huon, who had but small¹⁵ armure, toke hys cloke of
 skerlat & wrappyd it about hys arme, & drewe hys
 28 sworde & sporryd his hors, & came agaynst Charlot
 with his sword in his hande, and Charlot on the other
 parte came agaynst him with his spere in the reste, &
 he stroke Huon about the ryght arme, so *that* the
 32 stroke passyd through the doublenes of his cloke, and

Huon prepares to
 fight,

¹ was verie sorrowfull. ² that. ³ omitted. ⁴ peril.

⁵ villaine. ⁶ what. ⁷ hast. ⁸ Fol. vii. col. 1.

⁹ for. ¹⁰ shame for y^e fact. ¹¹ boldly.

¹² rage. ¹³ before.

¹⁴ quittance this wrong appon thine own head. ¹⁵ no.

and strikes
Charlot dead.

through his gowne and shyrt, & myst the¹ fleshe / thus
Huon scapyd² that stroke, & thankyd god therof / then
he lyfte vp his sworde with bothe his handys and lette
the brydell of his hors goo, and so with all his myght 4
and vertu he stroke Charlot on the helme in suche
wyse that the serkell nor coyfe³ of stele coud not
defende hym. But that the sworde went in to his
brayne, and so fell to the erth, and neuer rose after: 8
thus Charlot was slayne myserably / then the traytour
Amaury, beyng in the wode, perseyuyd well how
Charlot was slayn, wher of he thankyd god, & sayde,
'Charlot is deed, god be thankyd / for by that stroke 12
I shall brynge Fraunce in to suche a trouble, that I
shall atayne to all my desyres.' Then Huon, seyng
Charlot deed, retournyd to Gerarde hys brother, lyenge
styll on the 'erthe, brought hym Charlot horse, and 16
demaundyd yf he myght ryde or not / 'brother,' quod
Gerarde, 'I thynke yes; yf my wounde were bounde
fast I wolde assay.'

Huon binds up
his brother's
wound,

and sets him on
Charlot's horse.

¶ Then Huon alyghtyd and toke a pece of his shyrt, 20
and therwith bounde his brothers wounde / therwith⁵
Huons knyghtes came to hym, and aydyd⁶ to set
Gerarde on his hors: but for the payne that he
sufferyd he swounyd⁷ twyse / then when he came 24
agayne to hym selfe they set hym on an amblynge
palfrey, and a knyght behynd hym to sustayne hym vp
ryght / then he sayde to Huon / 'brother, I requyre⁸
you let vs departe fro hense without goynge any 28
farther forward; rather let vs retourne to Bourdeux
to the Duches our moder, for I dowght yf we goo
any forther that some grete yll shall come to vs / I
promyse you yf we be perseyuyd by them that be in 32
the wode, and *that* they knowe that ye haue slayne
hym that hurt me, I fere me they wyll sle vs al' /

¹ his. ² escaped. ³ wikle nor coft. ⁴ Fol. vii. col. 2.
⁵ then. ⁶ holpe. ⁷ swounded. ⁸ desire.

'brother,' quod Huon, 'by the grace of god I shal not
 retourne for feer of deth / tyll I haue sene y^e kyng to
 apele¹ hym of treason, when vnder his condught and
 4 commaundement we be betrayed, and watchyd by y^e
 waye to murder vs' / 'brother,' quod Gerard, 'as your
 plesour is, so be it' / then they rode forthe the way to
 Parys fayre and easly, by cause of Gerard who was sore
 8 hurt / then y^e knyghtes that were inbushyd² in the
 wode sayd to syr Amaury, 'syr, what shall we doo,
 senne³ Charlot is slayne and lyeth in the playne / and
 yf we shall goo after them that hath done this dede /
 12 it shall be yll done yf they scape⁴ alyue a way.'
 Then syr Amaury answeyrd and sayde, 'let them goo,
 god curse them, letta vs folowe them aferre of / tyll
 they come to Parys / let vs cary with vs the body of
 16 Charlot and brynge it to the kynge / and there ye
 shall se what I shall saye, and yf ye wyll agree to bere
 wytnes⁵ of that I shall say to y^e kyng, I shall⁶ make
 you all so ryche that ye shall neuer be power after' /
 20 they answeyrd they wolde fulfyll his pleasure / then
 they went out of y^e wode, and came there as Charlot
 lay deed / then they toke hym vp and layde hym
 before y^e erle Amaury on his horse necke / and so
 24 rode forth that, god confounde them,⁷ / for as moche as
 in them lay, they dyd⁸ to haue Huon iugyd to dethe /
 thus they rode the hye waye to parys / & the abbot of
 cluney, who was rydyn⁹ on before, lokyd behynde hym
 28 and sawe the .ii. brethren comynge after hym / then he
 taryed and demandyd of Huon what aduenture he had
 founde / 'syr,' quod he, 'I haue slayne hym that hath
 sore hurt my brother / and¹⁰ he thought to haue slayn
 32 me / but, thankyd be god, I haue lefte hym ded in the

He proceeds to
 court to accuse
 the Emperour of
 treason,
 for the attack
 has been made
 while under his
 safe conduct.

Amaury raises
 Charlot's body on
 to his own horse,
 and follows after
 Huon.

Huon with his
 brother meets the
 Abbot again.

He recounts to
 him the
 adventure.

¹ appeach. ² ambushed. ³ see. ⁴ escape.

⁵ Fol. vii. back, col. 1. ⁶ will.

⁷ mischeefe & mishap followe them. ⁸ laboured. ⁹ ridden.

¹⁰ where.

The Abbot
promises to plead
for him to the
King.

place' / 'fayr nephew,' quod the abbot, 'I am sorry
therof, but seen¹ it is done / yf any plee² come therby,
and *that* ye be excusyd³ before y^e kyng, I shall ayed
you with all my power' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'of that 4
I thanke you' / then Huon lokyd behynde hym and
sawe were⁴ the erle Amaury with all his powre came
fayre & easely after hym / therwith all his blode⁵
trymbelyd / then he sayd to the abbot / 'syr, what 8
shall I do? yonder I se them aproche that desyryth⁶
my deth / they be the same that laye in y^e wode
wachynge for vs' / 'fayr nephew,' quod the abbot,
'haue no doubt / for they that come after vs cometh' 12
but a soft pase; they make no semblant to ouer take
you / let vs ryde on a good pase, we shall be anone at
Parys; it is but .ii. myles thether.' Then they rode on,

They reach Paris.

and restyd not tyll they came to the paleys, and ther 16
alyghtyd and went vp. Huon helde his brother by the
hande, and the abbot by the other hande / then they
sawe the kyng syttyng amonge his barons / then
Huon salutyd duke Naymes and all the other barons, 20
and sayde / 'god that for vs dyed on a crosse saue all
these noble barons / and ⁹confounde the kyng whome
I se there sytting⁹ / for there was neuer harde of a
greter¹⁰ treason then the kyng hath purchasyd for¹¹ 24
vs / seyng that by his messengers and his letters
patentes he hath sent fore vs to do hym seruyce / the
which commaundement we haue¹² obbeyed as to our
souerayne lorde / but by false treason & a wayte hath¹³ 28
layde asspyall¹⁴ fore vs, and a grete busschement,¹⁵ for to
haue murderyd vs by the way / and¹⁶ they haue¹⁷

Huon tells the
barons in the
King's presence
of the treachery
he has practised
on them.

¹ seeing. ² hurt. ³ accused. ⁴ where.

⁵ heart. ⁶ desire. ⁷ come. ⁸ Fol. vii. back, col. 2.

⁹ Health & faire hap to all these noble Lords, but shame
& dishonour to my Lord the King.

¹⁰ fowler.

¹¹ practised against.

¹² in all dutie.

¹³ been *added*.

¹⁴ secretly.

¹⁵ close ambush.


¹⁶ first.

¹⁷ *omitted*.

assaylyd my brother here present, and by them was he brought in to that poynt¹ / *that* they lefte hym for deed / and he sayde that² they set on me to haue
 4 slayne me / but by y^e ayed of oure lord Ihesu Cryste with my sworde I so defendyd me / *that* he that thought to haue slayne vs, I haue slayne hym.'

¶ How the kynge was sore dyspleasyd with

8 Huon bycause he apeychyd hym of treason / & how Huon shewyd all the maner why he slewe the knyght that woundyd his brother. Capitulo .x.

12  Hen the kynge vnderstode³ Huon he
 said, 'wassell,⁴ beware and thynke well what thou sayest here before all my
 barons / for neuer of⁵ all my lyfe I
 16 nother dyde⁶ nor consent⁷ any treason / but by the fayeth that I owe to saynt Denys,⁸ and by my berde / yf it be so that thou canst not proue this
 that thou layest to my charge / I shall cause bothe the
 20 and thy⁹ brother to dye an yll¹⁰ deth' / whan Huon herd the kyng how he toke his wordes / he stept
 forthe and sayd / 'O thou¹¹ kynge, beholde here my brother, who by the¹² is sore hurte and in iuperdy¹³ of
 24 hys lyfe' / and so dyd¹⁴ of his brothers gowne and his doublet to his shyrt, and than vpeneth the grete
 wounde, so that the blode ranne out,¹⁵ so that Gerardyn fell¹⁶ in a swoune before the kyng and the barons, for¹⁷
 28 the grete payne¹⁸ that he felt: wherof the emperour

Charles is
 wrathful at the
 charge brought
 against him by
 Huon.

Huon shows
 Gerard's wound
 to the court.

¹ into such danger. ² afterward. ³ had heard.

⁴ knight. ⁵ in. ⁶ did I euer act. ⁷ give consent to.

⁸ my maker. ⁹ Fol. viii. col. 1. ¹⁰ euill. ¹¹ Great.

¹² thy meanes. ¹³ ieopardie. ¹⁴ did take.

¹⁵ abundantly added. ¹⁶ it enforced G. to fall. ¹⁷ through.

¹⁸ anguiah.

Charles pities the
injured youth,

and promises to
punish him who
has brought him
to such a plight.

Huon describes at
length the manner
of the attack,

had suche pyte¹ / that his herte tenderyd² / than
incontynent³ he sent for his surgens, causyng them to
serche his wounde / than he demaundyd yf they coude
saue his lyfe / and when they hadde well vysytyd⁴ the 4
wounde, they sayde / 'syr, by the plesure⁵ of god with
in this moneth he shal be hole & sounde' / the kyng
was glad of that answere / than he regardyd⁶ Huon
and sayde, 'sene thou leyst this deed to my charge / 8
'by the feyth that I owe to god & to saint Denis /
neuer in my lyfe I thought to do this treason⁷ / but by
y^e glorious saynt James,⁸ and by the crowne that I bere
on my hede / yf I may knowe, who hath done this⁹ I 12
shall do suche puysson¹⁰ and so grete iustyce that it
shall before euer¹¹ a perpetuall memory¹² / & I shall
do you suche ryght¹³ that ye shall haue no cause to
complayn' / 'syr,' quod¹⁴ Huon, 'I thanke you, for in 16
obbeynge of your commaundement this myschyf is
fallen to vs. I can not thynke nor knowe that any
tyme of oure lyfe nother I nor¹⁵ my brother dyd neuer
wronge nor¹⁶ trespase to any creature / syr, at lenght I 20
shall shewe the maner of this dede¹⁷ / after that why¹⁸
departyd fro Burdeaux we founde no aduenture / but
whan we came with in a lege of mount leherry / we
met with our vncl, the Abbot of cluney / and so fell in 24
company with hym / to conducte vs to your court, and
so we rode to gether tyll we came on this syde mount
leherry / than¹⁹ we sawe a lytell wode, and by the

¹ took such compassion.

² that he could not choose but much bemoane him.

³ And therefore immediately. ⁴ thorowly searched.

⁵ help.

⁶ and beholding.

⁷⁻⁷ thou must thinke, that thou hast touched the royall
reputation of a King & that in such sort, as verie hardly may
the condition of Majestie endure it.

⁸ by my Countreys honour. ⁹ heynous offence *added*.

¹⁰ right. ¹¹ as it shall remaine for. ¹² of due honour *added*.

¹³ And that yourselves shall report. ¹⁴ My Lord, answered.

¹⁵ either . . or.

¹⁶ ever . . or.

¹⁷ but thus (by your kingly pacience) the case happened.

¹⁸ we.

¹⁹ Fol. viii. col. 2.

bryghtnen of the sonne we sawe the helmes and
 speres and shyldes of them that were embusshyd in the
 wode, and the one came out of y^e wode all armyd, his
 4 spere in his hande, and shyld aboute his necke, and
 he came soft¹ a pace to warde vs / than all we stode
 styll, and sent my brother to the knyght to know
 8 y^e entent that, yf they demandyd any trybute, they
 shold haue ryght of vs / yf they wolde haue any of
 vs / whan my brother came nere to the knyght he
 demandyd what we were / & my brother sayde / how
 12 we were the chyldren of the Duke of burdeaux, and
 where comynge by your commaundement to your court,
 to releue our londys and fees of your grace / than the
 knyght sayde how we were the same persons that he
 16 sought for / and sayd how that a .vii. yere² passyd that
 duke Seuyⁿ our father had taken fro hym .iii. castels /
 the whiche was neuer so / than my brother offeryd
 hym that if he wolde com to parys before you & your
 20 barons he shuld haue ryght done to hym, yf he hadde
 any wronge done to hym / than the knyght answeyrd
 that he wolde not so do / and ther with sodenly
 couchyd his spere, and stroke my brother as ye see, he
 24 beyng vnarmyd, so that he fell to the erthe, wenyng
 he had been slayne / and than he rode agayne fayre
 and easley towarde the wode. And whan I sawe my
 brother borne to the erthe, I had suche sorowe at my
 28 herte that I coude tarry no lenger to be auengyde /
 than I demandyd of myne vncle yf he wolde ayed me /
 he answeyrd and sayd no, because he was a preest, so
 he and all his monkes departyd, and lefte me alone /
 32 than I toke the .x. knyghtes that came with me out of
 my countre / and I rode as faste as I coude to the
 entent that he sholde not ³skape⁴ that had so woundyd

and of his
brother's fall.

¹ a soft. ² yeares. ³ Fol. viii. back. col. 1.

⁴ escape.

He tells how he
slew his brother's
would-be
murderer,

and how his body
is now being
borne to the
court.

Charles wonders
who the false
knight may be.

Gerard by the
king's order is
carefully tended.

my brother / & as sone as he sawe *that* I folowyd
hym / he retournyd agaynst me / than I demaundyd
of hym what he was / he sayd he *perteynyd* to Duke
terrey of Ardayn / than I demaundyd why he had 4
slayne my brother ; he answeyrd & sayd in lyke wyse
he wold serue me / & therwith he couchyd his spere &
stroke me on y^e syde through my gowne & dowblet, &
hurte not my fleshe, as it was the pleasure of god / than 8
I wrappyd my mantell aboute myne arme & I drew out
my sworde, & with bothe my handys as he passyd by
me I gaue hym such a stroke *that* I cloue his hede
nere to the tethe / & so he fell downe to y^e erthe 12
deed. I know not what he is / But what soeuer he be,
I haue slayn hym / & yf there be any *that* wyll
demaund ryght in this case, let hym in to your royall
court before al your peeres, & I shal do hym reason yf 16
it be founde *that* I haue done any wronge ; & whan
I had slayne hym, I layde my brother on y^e deed
knyghtes horse, & ouer toke y^e abbot myne vncle / as
I rode I sawe¹ behynd me I saw them *that* where 20
inbusshyd in y^e wode come rydyng after, & one knyght
came before & brought vpon his horse y^e sayde deed
knyght. I knowe well, yf they be not come, they
wyll soone be here' / whan kyng Charlemayn vnder- 24
stode Huon / he hadde grete meruayll what knyght it
was *that* was slayne, and sayd to Huon / 'knowe for
trough I shall do you reason, for I know none so grete
in my realme, who so euer it be, yf I can proue on hym 28
any poynt of treason, but I shall cause hym to dye an
yll² deth / for y^e mater touchyth me ryght nere, syn³
vnder myne assurance & by my commandement ye
are come hether.' Than y^e kynge commaundyd *that* 32
Gerarde sholde be had to a goodly chambre & well
lokyd vnto / y^e whiche was done.

¹ and looked. ² euill. ³ seeing.

¶ How Charlot the kynges sone ¹ was brought
before hym deed, & of the grete sorow
that he made / & how the erle Amaury
4 appellyd ² Huon for the deth of Charlot /
& how the kyng wolde haue runne vpon
Huon / & of the good counsell that Duke
Naymes of bauyer gaue to the kyng.

8

Ca. .xi.



12 **D**ow ³ Huon of Burdeux & y^e abbot
of cluney his vncler herd the good
wyll of the kyng & the offer *that*
he had made / they knelyd down
to haue kyst his fote, & thankyd
hym of his courtesey / than ⁴ y^e
kyng ⁵ toke hym vp. Than y^e abbot sayd, 'syr, all
16 that my nephew Huon had sayd is trefw' / y^e ki[n]ge
sayd, 'I belyue you wel' / y^e king dyd to them honour,
& feest ⁶ / but he had grete desire to knowe the trough
of this case / & sayd, 'Huon, & ye, abbot of cluney /
20 know for trough ⁷ I haue a sone whome I loue
enteerly / yf ye haue slayne hym in doynge suche a
velayn ⁸ dede as to breke my assurance, I do pardon
you, so *that* it be as ye say' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'of ⁹
24 *that* I thanke your grace / & surely y^e trough is as I
haue shewyd you' / then y^e kyng sent for Charlot his
sone / so he was serchyd for in his logynge / & there
it was sayde how he was departyd out of y^e towne y^e
28 nyght before / so y^e messengers departyd, & whan they
came in to the strete / they sawe where the erle Amaury
came rydyng with Charlot deed on his horse neck /
& they herde in stretes lordes, knyghtes, ladyes, &

Huon and the
Abbot thank the
king for his
courtesy.

Charles asserts
that if Charlot
himself proved
the traitor his
death should be
readily pardoned.

He sends for
Charlot.

But meanwhile
his body is being
carried to the
palace.

¹ Fol. viii. back, col. 2. ² appeached. ³ when.

⁴ but. ⁵ knyng *in orig.*

⁶ feested them in his Pallace royally. ⁷ certaintie.

⁸ villainous. ⁹ for.

The people throng
the streets,
and greet the
cortège with
lamentation.

Charles hears the
cry, and
bids Duke
Naymes discover
its cause.

But straightway
Amaury brings
the corpse into
the audience
chamber,

and lays it down
before the King.

Duke Naymes
endeavours to
assuage Charles'
grief.

damasels makyng grete cryes & pytyous complayntes
for Charlot, the kynges sone, whome they sawe deed /
these messengers had grete meruayll¹ / at the last they
persayuyd it was for y^e loue of the deth of Charlot / 4
than they returnyd to the palayes / but by rayson of the
cry² that the pepull made, ³the noyse therof ⁴cam to
the palayes. Y^e kyng Charlemayn herd his sonne
Charlot namyd / than he sayde to duke Naymes / 8
'syr, I haue grete meruayll what noyse is it *that* is
made in y^e towne, & as me thynkyth I here my sonne
Charlot namyd / sertenly my hert gyuyth me *that* it is
my sone that Huon hath slayne, wherfore I requyre 12
you go & knowe what the matter is.'⁵

¶ Than duke Naymes / departyd, & incontenent he
incounteryd Charlot borne deed betwene .iiii. knyghtes
vpon a shyld / whan he sawe *that*, he was ryght 16
sorowfull, so *that* he coud speke no⁶ worde / than y^e
vnhappy erle Amaury went vp in to y^e hall, & came
before y^e kyng & all his barons, & ther he leyde
downe Charlot / whan Charles sawe his sonne so 20
slayne / y^e doloure & sorow that he made was inport-
able;⁶ it was pyte to se him / than duke Naymes had as
mych sorow as other,⁷ seyng the pytfull aduenture,
& also y^e sorow⁸ *that* his lordes made / than he came 24
to the kyng & sayde / 'syr,⁹ comferte yourselfe in this
mysaduenture / syr, by takyng this dolour¹⁰ ye can

¹ were annoyed at these exclamations, but.

² outcries & pityous moone.

³ From 'the noise . . . is' is thus altered:—with oft repetition of Charlot's name (all which the Emperour, leaning at a window, confusedly heard) his heart waxed wondrous heauie, saying, 'Mee thinkes I heare such sorrow as hath not been usuall, and my Sonne Charlot's name is tossed to & fro in this outcry; it maketh me feare that it is my Sonne whome thou hath slain.' Then calling Duke Naymes unto him, requested him to goe forth & resolute him on this matter.

⁴ Fol. ix. col. 1. ⁵ one. ⁶ unspeakable.

⁷ any other. ⁸ moane. ⁹ Good my Lord.

¹⁰ by ouergreeuing at this ill hap.

wynne nothyng / nor recouer your chylde agayne / syr,
 ye know well *that* my cousin Oggyer the dane slew my
 sonne Bertrand / who bare your message of defyaunce
 4 to the kyng of Pauey / yet I dyd suffer it without any
 grete sorow makying, by cause I knew well sorow coude
 not recouer hym agayne' / 'Naymes,' *quod* the kynge,
 'I can not forgete this / I haue grete desyre to knowe
 8 the cause of this dede' / than duke Naymes sayd to
 duke Amaury / 'syr, know you who hath slayne
 Charlot, & for what cause?' Than erle amaury stept
 forthe, and sayde *with* a loude woyse¹ / 'syr² kynge
 12 Charlemayn / what³ demaunde you any forther, whan
 ye haue hym before you *that* hath slayn your sonne? &
 that is Huon of Bourdeux, who is syttyng there in
 your presence' / whan the kynge herd what the erle
 16 Amaury had sayd / he lokyd feersly on Huon, and had
 strykyn⁵ him with a knyfe,⁶ & duke Naymes had not
 ben,⁷ who blamed the kynge, & sayd, 'a, syr,⁸ what
 thynke⁹ you to do this day, to receyue y^e chylde¹⁰ of
 20 duke Seuyⁿ in to y[ou]r court, & hath promysed to do
 them ryght & reason, & now wold sle them / so may
 all suche as shall here of y^e mater shal¹⁰ say *that* ye
 haue sent for them to¹¹ murder & to sle them / and *that*
 24 ye sent your sonne to lye in a wayte for them, to haue
 slayne them / syr, ¹²by that I se in you / as now ye
 maynteyne not youre selfe lyke a man, but rather lyke
 a chylde¹² / syr, demaunde of erle Amaury / the cause
 28 why he had forthe Charlot your sonne / & why *that* he
 assayld y^e .ii. brethren' / ther was present Huon, who
 was gretely abasshyd of the kynge¹³ / who receyuyd
 hym so humbly,¹⁴ & now wolde sle hym / he was in

The King inquires
the manner of his
son's death.

Amaury
denounces Huon
as the murderer.

Charles would
have rushed upon
Huon but for
Duke Naymes'
intervention.

Huon fears the
King in his
wrath.

¹ voyce. ² Great. ³ why. ⁴ Fol. ix. col. 2. ⁵ stroken.

⁶ his Sceptre. ⁷ but for duke N. ⁸ Forbeare, my Lord.

⁹ meane. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ to no other end but to.

¹²⁻¹³ By this may be discerned, that you forget the true
Maicatie of a King, & expresse actions unseeming Charlemaine.

¹³ at the Kings furie. ¹⁴ first so kindly.

He pleads that he
slew Charlot in
his own defence,

and knew him not
to be the King's
son.

The barons ask
Amaury for his
account of the sad
business.

grete fere / and as moche as he myght he drewe backe
fro the kyng / & was abasshyd¹ in *that* he had slayn
the kynges sonne vnknowyng;² & than he was sore
troubelyd it was no meruayll, for theyr³ he sawe no 4
man *that* perteynyd to hym nor⁴ to ayed hym / nor⁵
too mayntayne his ryght / but alonely y^e good abbot of
cluney, his vncl / who coud gyue him none other ayed
but *with* his wordes: *than* he toke on hym corage, & 8
ryght humbly sayd to y^e kyng / 'syr, I requyre your
grace touch me not / for, syr, know for troug / he that
lyeth ther deed before you / I slew him in my defence /
& not knowynge *that* he was your sonne Charlot / 12
for, syr, yf I had knowyn him I wolde in no wyse haue
touchyd hym / for, syr, ye may well knowe yf I had
knowyn *that* it had ben he I wolde not haue com
to you for resyne;⁶ I wold rather haue fled awaye 16
so farre that no man shulde haue herd any tydynges of
me / &, syr, for goddes sake I requyre you, as hertely
as I can, to let me haue ryght / I submyt my body / to
abide the iugement of your noble Peres,⁷ and yf it can 20
be prouyd *that* I slewe Charlot knowynge hym to be
your sone / than, syr, let me haue a shamefull dethe' /
than all the Peeres & barons beyng theyr sayde with
a hye voyse / how he had spoken resonably, & that yf 24
the erle Amaury wolde any thinge say to the contrary,
it was tyme than to speke and to shewe it.

¶ How the traytour erle Amauri chargid
Huon before the emperour, how that he 28
traytourously with treason prepensyd⁸ had
slayne the kynges sonne, & in that quarell
he appellyd Huon to batayll. Ca. .xii.

¹ greatly agreed. ² not knowing him.

³ And blame him not to be much troubled in mind when.

⁴ omitted.

⁵ or.

⁶ rescue.

⁷ Fol. ix. back, col. 1.

⁸ pretended.



4 When the kynge had harde Huon speke,
 he beheld duke naymes, & desyred
 him too shewe¹ hys aduyse. 'syr,'
 quod the duke, 'I can seye none other
 thyng to you but as I sayd before /
 demaunde erle Amaury why he led fourth your sonne
 all armid, and kepte the busschement in the woode to set
 8 on the .ii. bretheren, or elles what was it that he sought
 for there' / then erle Amaury sayd, 'syr, I shall shewe
 you the trouthe, & yf I do otherwyse let me dye a
 shamefull dethe / trewe it is, this nyght passyd, your
 12 sonne sent for me, desyryng me to ryde with hym an
 hawkyng / and I desyred hym to abyde tyll² the
 mornynge / but he sayd *that* he would nedes go afore
 nyght / then I grauntyd to go with hym, so that he
 16 woulde ryde armyd / for I doughtyd the men of Arden,
 to the entente that yf we met with eny of them we
 myght be able to resyst them; and so we dyd / thus we
 rode out of this towne, and came into a lytell wode,
 20 and there we cast of our hawkys, and theyre we lost one
 of them, and therwith the same waye came the chyldren
 of duke seun / and there we sawe Huon, the eldest, who
 is here present, who ³had taken vp oure hawke / and
 24 your sone came in courteyse maner to hym, and
 desyryd hym to rendre agayne his hawke, but the
 traytoure would not in no wyse / then Gererde, the
 younger brother, came to your sonne, and they straue so
 28 togyther that your sonne strake him; then Huon, with-
 out eny word spekyng, lyft vp his sward, & so
 petuously⁴ slew youre sone / then he & his brother ran
 awaye so fast that we coulde not ouer take hym,⁵
 32 wherof we were sory / thus he knewe well your sonne,
 and he slew hym / and yf he wyll say the contrary,
 here is my gage, the which I present here before you /

The King follows
 Duke Naymes'
 advice,
 and appeals to
 Amaury.

The false Earl
 tells a lying story

how he and
 Charlot, while
 hawking, lost a
 hawk,

which Huon
 seized and refused
 to restore,

and how Huon
 thereon struck
 Charlot down.

Amaury
 challenges Huon
 to reassert that he
 knew not who
 Charlot was.

¹ giue. ² untill. ³ Fol. ix. back, col. 2.

⁴ villaynously. ⁵ them.

and yf he be soo hardy to lyfte vp my gawge, I shall make hym confesse it or¹ it be nyght that it is trew that I haue sayd: and this I wyll proue,² my body ayenst his.' 4

¶ How the abbot of eluney wold proue that the sayeng of the erle amaury was fals & vntrew, & how the erle dyd cast his gauge ayenst Huon, who toke it vp. Ca. .xiii. 8

The Abbot of Cluny declares Amaury to have falsely spoken.



After that erle Amaury had endyd his tale, y^e abbot of cluney stept fourthe, and sayd to the kyng, 'syr, ye neuer herd so fals a tale before as 12 this traytour Amaury hathe sayd, for I and .iiii. moo³ of my mounkes,

beynge preestes here presente, ar redy to swere & to make solempne othe *that* the sayeng of this traytour is 16 false, and therfore there ought no gage to be layde in y^e cause, synse⁴ there is trew wyttenes of the mater' / 'syr,' quod the kyng, 'the wyttenes is to be beleuyd / syr Amaury, how say you therto?' / 'A, syr,' quod 20 he, 'I wolde be lothe to say agaynst y^e abbot, but y^e troughe is as I haue sayd / y^e abbot may say as it playse him / but yf Huon be so hardy to deny this *that* I haue sayd before you / let him com in to y^e felde 24 agaynst me, &, or⁵ it be nyght, I shall cause him to ⁶confesse it openly' / whan y^e abbot harde *that*, he had grete meruayll, & beheld Huon, & sayde⁷ / 'fayr nephew, offer your gage, for the ryght is with y^e / for 28 yf thou be vanquysshid in this quarel, yf euer I retourne in to myne abbey theyr is no seynt in my churche, but I shall with a staffe beat & breke them all to pyces /

Amaury adheres to his story.

The Abbot bids Huon accept the false Earl's challenge.

¹ ere. ² with *added*. ³ more. ⁴ seeing.

⁵ before. ⁶ Fol. x. col. 1.

⁷ he grew offended, & looking stearely upon H., sayd.

for yf god wyll suffer suche a wronge, I shal gyue
 suche strokes vpon y^e shryne of seynt Peter *that* I
 shall leue nother gold nor precyous stone hole to-
 4 gether' / 'syr,' quod Huon / '& god wyll I shall not
 let to lyft vp his gage, for I shall proue *that* falsly and
 vntrewely / syr Amaury lyeth, as an yll¹ & a false
 traytour, & shal make him to confesse *that* I neuer
 8 knew *that* he *that* I slewe was y^e kynges sonne' / than
 y^e kyng sayd *that* Huon muost lay² hostage / 'syr,'
 quod Huon, 'ye shall haue my brother; I can not
 delyuer you any *that* is so nere me as he is / for here I
 12 haue nother cosyn nor kynsman *that* wyl lay in hostage
 for me' / 'fayre neuue,' quod y^e abbot, 'say not so /
 for I & my monkes wyl be pledges for you, & yf
 anything shuld fall to you other wyse than wel,
 16 which god forbed, than shame haue kyng Charlemayn,
 without he hange on the galous bothe me & all my
 monkes.' 'A, syr,'³ quod the kyng, 'ye say yll / for
 I wold neuer do *that*' / than sayde the kyng to
 20 Amaury / 'sir, lay⁴ pledges for your part' / the traytour
 answeyrd / 'sir, here be .ii. of my nephese shall be
 pledge for me' / 'I am content,' quod the kyng, 'on y^e
 condycyon *that* yf *thou* be vanquyshyd or dyscomfytyd
 24 I shall cause *them* to dye an yll deth.' than y^e pledges
 said they wold be no pledges on *that* condycyon: let
 other be pledges who wold: but they sayd yf y^e king
 wold take *them* on the lesynge⁵ of ther londes / they
 28 were content / & the kyng graunted them.

If his nephew
 be defeate-d,
 he will break all
 the image of the
 saints in his
 church.

Huon takes up
 the challenge,

and gives his
 brother as
 hostage.

Amaury offers his
 two nephews as
 pledges.

¶ How those .ii. champions came in to the
 felde where as they shuld fyght, acompanyd
 with there frendis. Capitulo .xiii.

¹ euill. ² giue. ³ Go to, Abbot.
⁴ bring in. ⁵ loosing.

The lists are
prepared for the
duel.



The Duke
Naymes makes all
arrangement.

The champions
with their friends
repair to church
on the day
appointed for the
fight,

and thence ride to
the field.

The people debate
the chances of the
warriors.


¹ Thus as ye herd both parteyes delueryd
pledges; than y^e kyng, to be in y^e more
suerte, put them both in a toure² tyll
y^e day of y^e batayll: than y^e feld was ⁴
ordaynyd, for / y^e kyng than sware *that*
his sonne shuld not be buryed tyll he that were van-
quysshlyd were hanged, yf he were not slayne in y^e felde /
than he commandyd duke Naymes to be redy with an ⁸
C. knyghtes to kepe y^e felde & to se *that* no treason
shuld be done; for he sayd he had rather lese³ y^e best
Cyte of his realme / 'syr,' quod duke Naymes, 'be y^e
pleasour⁴ of god, the mater shall be so orderyd for y^e ¹²
suerte of both partes, *that* none shal haue wrong' / y^e
which thinge was done so delygently *that* euery thinge
was redy / so bothe partes were brought in to the
church of our lady in Paris, accompenyd with theyr ¹⁶
frendes, as in suche a case requyryd. with Amaury
was is next frendes, all issuyd of y^e genalogey of
Gannelon / whan they both had hard masse, they toke
a sopp⁵ of wyne / than they were rychely armyd & ²⁰
mountyd on good horsse, & so tooke y^e way to y^e
felde / y^e stages were redy, & y^e kyng & his barons
there redy⁶ / abydyng for the .ii. champyons / who
came one after another through y^e strettes / fyrst came ²⁴
y^e erle Amaury, & he rode tyll he came to the felde,
& than he alyghtyd, & salutyd y^e kynge & all the
barons / than Huon cam anone after, accompenyd with a
goodly soort / there was⁷ lenyng in wyndous ladys & ²⁸
damesels a grete nombre, who all prayed our lord Ihū
Cryst to ayed & to defend Huon fro the traytour
Amaury / the peopell compleynyng / and thought it in
possyble that Huon shulde resyst agaynst erle Amaury / ³²
by cause Huon was so fayre and yong / but of the
age of foure an twenty yere. But he was so fayre and

¹ Fol. x. col. 2. ² Tower. ³ loose. ⁴ grace.
⁵ draught. ⁶ present. ⁷ were.

so well made of body that he coude not be amendyd,¹
 nor none more replste with vertu / there fore he was
 sore bemoynd² both of men and ³woman that sawe hym
 4 passe by / & by cause y^e erle Amaury was a byg⁴ man
 & a valyant, & an expert man⁵ in armes, none stronger
 in all the kynges court / he was preuy⁶ with the
 kyng, & welbelouyd / pyte it was that⁷ he was suche
 8 a traytour, for a worse coud not be founde in any
 realme / he had grete trust in his owne strenthe / &
 lytyll praysyd⁸ Huon of bourdeaux, thynkyng he
 shuld not longe endure agaynst hym / but there is a
 12 comon prouerbe / the which hath begyld many a
 man: it is sayd that a small rayne abatyth a grete
 wynd / for yf our lord Ihū Cryst wyll saue Huon / y^e
 force & puyssance of erle Amaury shall do Huon but
 16 small hurt / for the ryght excellent proffers⁹ and grete
 corage that was in Huon defendyd hym, as ye shall
 here here after.

¶ How those .ii. champions made theyr
 20 othes vpon the relykes that theyr sayenge
 was trewe / & what the kyng sayde.

Capitulo .xv.

24  Hus Huon [rode]¹⁰ tyll he came in to
 y^e felde: than he salutyd the kyng &
 all the barons ryght humbly / than he
 aprochyd to the relykes, & ther made
 his soleme othe in the presence of
 28 duke Naymes of Bauyer, who was
 keper of the felde, affermyng *that* neuer in his lyfe he
 knewe not *that* he had slayne Charlot, the kinges

Huon swears on
 the re'lice that he
 has spoken truth.

¹ no knight so gallant & seemly. ² bemoynd in the orig.

³ Fol. x. back, col. 1. ⁴ big boned. ⁵ knight.

⁶ inward. ⁷ everie one greatly pityed that. ⁸ regarded.

⁹ partes. ¹⁰ rode is written in the orig.

Amaury swears
that Huon speaks
falsely.

Amaury stumbles
when mounting
his horse.

The champions
enter the lists.

The Emperor
proclaims that
should either of
them be slain
before he had
confessed the
truth as to
Charlot's death,
the survivor
should be
banished and lose
his land.

sonne, &¹ all *that* erle Amaury hath sayd was false &
vntrew, & that he lyed lyke a false traytour, & so
kyssed the relykes / whan Huon had thus made his
othe, erle Amaury stept forthe all afraide / and sware 4
how Huons othe was false, and *that* [he] surely knew
that it was Charlot whan he slewe him, by cause he
claymyd his hawke, y^e which Huon had taken vp, &
that he sayd he ²wold cause hym to confesse or³ it 8
were nyght. whan he had sworne, he thought to haue
retournyd to his horse, & stumblyd so *that* he had
nerehand fallen to y^e erth. all *that* saw it toke it for
an yll syne, & iugyd in ther mindes how y^e mater was 12
lykely to go yll⁴ agaynst the erle Amaury. whan
bothe those champyons had made⁵ theyr othes, & the
duke Naymes had causyd the felde to be avoydyd /
had set the keepers of the f-ld in deu order as it 16
aperteynyd / than the .ii. champyons lept on theyr
horses, theyr speres in theyr handys, & there shyldes
about theyr neckes / than a crye was made *that* none
shulde be so hardy to moue or to make any token to 20
any of y^e partes vpon payn of deth / after *that* crye
made y^e noble emperour Charlemayn, full of Ire &
dyspleasour, causyd it to be cryed,⁶ *that* yf it fortunyd
that the vanquysser sle his enmye in y^e feld / or⁷ he 24
confesse y^e treason for y^e deth of his sonne, *that* than
y^e vanquesser to lese all his londys, & hym selfe to be
bannysshyd out of y^e realme of france, & out of y^e
empyre of Rome for euer / after *that* crye made⁸ duke 28
Naymes & y^e other barons & peeres cam to the kynge
and sayde / 'A, syr, what wyll ye do? / this that ye
wolde do⁹ is agaynst the statute of the noble realme of
france & of y^e empyre of Rome / for often tymes it 32

¹ that as he was true knight, & loyall liegeman to the
Emperour, *added*.

² Fol. x. back, col. 2. ³ ere. ⁴ euill. ⁵ taken.

⁶ againe to be proclaimed. ⁷ before.

⁸ proclamation ended. ⁹ you haue proclaymed.

happyth¹ that one of y^e champyons is slayne & haue
 no puissance² to speke³ / for your grete renowne, the
 whiche so long tyme hath been spred abrode, that it
 4 shulde be quenshyd or blamysshed, it shall be sayde
 that you who hath lyuyd in so grete tryumphe⁴ all y^e
 dayes of your lyfe, & now in your latter dayes to
 become a⁵ chylde;’ of the which wordes / the kyng
 8 toke small ragarde.

Duke Naymes
 urges that the
 King is herein
 unjust.

¶ How Huon of burdeaux and the erle
 Amaury fought together be^efore kyng
 Charleman, & how the traytour Amaury
 12 was slayne by the noble prowes and
 cheualry of Huon. Ca. .xvi.

16 **W**Han kyng Charlemayn had herd Duke
 naimes / he swore by saynt Denys of
 fraunce & by his crowne & berde that
 it shulde be as he had sayd, nor other
 wyse he wolde not do it / than the
 noble barons where sory & sore dyspleasyd. and they
 20 departyd fro y^e kyng, & sayd that by all semylytude⁷ fro
 thens forth ryght sholde haue no place in his court. many
 noble prynces & barones murmuryd sore at y^e crye⁸
 that was made / those⁹ .ii. champyons drew a parte, &
 24 eche of them fersly regardyd other / than erle Amaury
 spake aloude & sayd / ‘thou Huon of burdeaux, false
 traytour¹⁰ knyght / this day I shall cause the to confesse
 thy falsnes / how be it I haue grete pyte of the, I see
 28 the so yonge¹¹ / yf¹² thou wylt confesse this murder
 that thou hast done / I shall desyre kyng charlemayn

His barons make
 like complaint,
 but Charles will
 hear nothing.

Amaury cries
 aloud that Huon
 is a false traitor.

¹ happeneth. ² power.

³ shall therefore the conquerour been so much iniuriel?
added.

⁴ dignity. ⁵ weaker than a. ⁶ Fol. xi. col. 1.

⁷ likelihood. ⁸ proclamation. ⁹ and the.

¹⁰ trayterous. ¹¹ in regard of thy youth.

¹² therefore.

Huon answers
in rage.

They rush on
one another,
and their horses
fall.

They fight on
foot.

Amaury strikes
Huon's helmet
so that he nearly
swoons.

to haue mercy¹ vpon the' / whan Huon² herde the
treatour so speke, for anger he blusshyd red & sayde /
'a! thou false gloton and yll traytour,³ thy venemus
wordys full of bytternes doth no thyng⁴ abasshe me / 4
for the good ryght that I am in shall ayed me by the
helpe of our lorde Ihesu Cryst / and I shall so ponyshe
thy trespace / that this day I shall make the to confesse
thy falsnes haue ther of no dought' / ther with couchyd 8
ther speres & dasht⁵ so to ther horses / that it semed
that the thounder had fallen fro heuen / thus with
ther sharpe speres they enconteryd in suche wyse that
ther spers brake to ther handes, so that y^e sleuers flew 12
a hye in y^e ayer, & in to y^e kynges stage / & both ther
horses fell to the erth / & the knyghts sore astonnyd
with ther fallyng / than venturously⁶ they releuyd
them with ther swordys in ther handys, & so aprochyd 16
eche to other / and so fought eche with another⁷ &
Huons horse strangelyd syr Amauryes horse, &⁸ whan
he saw his horse slayne / Amaury stept to Huon for to
haue slayne him / ⁹ than Huon stept betwene them ⁹ & 20
lift vp his sword, & gaue y^e erle such a stroke that he
was astonnyed therwith, & reculyd¹⁰ backe more than
.ii. pases, & more ¹¹ had he not fallen to y^e erth¹¹ / so
that all that sawe them had meruayll of Huons vertu & 24
force, seyng y^e grett strenght that was in syr Amaury /
than whan y^e erle Amaury felte hym selfe in grete
payne he began to dysspyse the name of god and of the
glorious vyrgyn mary / how be it, as well as he myght 28
he aprochyd to Huon, and with his sworde gaue Huon
suche a stroke on the helme that all the floures &
precyous stones ther flewe abroad in the felde, and the
syrle of the helme all to broken / and the stroke was 32

¹ compassion. ² Fol. xi. col. 2. ³ most disloyall knight.
⁴ at all. ⁵ gave such carrier. ⁶ very boldly.
⁷ so long while that. ⁸ who.
⁹— but Huon met him valiantly. ¹⁰ staggered.
¹¹— hardly holding himself from falling to the earth.

so puysaunt that Huon was therwith astonyd, and by
 force was fayne to syt¹ on one of his knees to the
 erthe² / and he hadde nere almoost fallen to the erthe /
 4 & there was present in y^e feld lordes & knyghtes / &
 one of y^e abbot of ³cluneys syruantes / whan he saw y^e
 grete stroke *that* Huon had receyuyd, he departyd out
 of y^e felde & went in to y^e church, were as he founde
 8 his mayster y^e abbot in his prayers for y^e good spede of
 Huon his nephew / than the varlot sayd,⁴ 'a, syr,⁵ pray
 hertely to our lorde Ihesu Cryste to socoure your
 nephew / for I sawe hym fayne to knell upon one of his
 12 knees in grete dought of deth' / than y^e good abbot
 with out any answer lyfte vp his handys to warde
 heuen deuoutly, & wepyng, prayyng to god ayed & to
 defende y^e honoure of his nephew & to mayntayne his
 16 ryght / thus Huon beyng in y^e felde in grete doute
 of his lyfe, felyng *that* force⁶ of y^e erle Amaury / he
 callyd with a good herte to our lorde Ihesu Cryste /
 requyryng hym to ayed his ryght, y^e whiche he
 20 knewe *that* it was trew⁷ / whan erle Amaury sawe
that Huon had receiuyd of hym such a heuy stroke, he
 sayde, 'Huon, I belyue *thou* wylt not endure longe /
 better it were *that thou* confesse y^e dede or⁸ I slee
 24 *thee*, for, or it be nyght, I shall cause *thee* to waue in
 the wynde' / 'holde thy tounge, thou false traytour,'
 quod Huon; 'thyne ylnes⁹ shall not ayed the / for I
 shall bryng the to that poynt / that all thy frendys
 28 shall haue shame of the' / than Huon auansyd hym,
 and made semblant too haue stryken Amaury on the
 helme. Than Amaury lyfte vp his shyld to haue
 receyuyd y^e stroke / but whan Huon sawe that / he
 32 tornyd his stroke to a reuerse, and stroke Amaury

The Abbot prays
 for his nephew's
 safety.

Amaury threatens
 to slay Huon
 unless he
 confesses the
 wilful murder of
 Chariot.

Huon defies him,

and strikes off
 Amaury's left
 arm.

¹ fall. ² the other Legge but weakly supporting him.

³ Fol. xi. back, col. 1. ⁴ to whom the seruant sayd.

⁵ Ah, my Lord. ⁶ sturdie strength. ⁷ to be most true.

⁸ before. ⁹ illness.

under the arme with his sharpe sword, so that he stroke of his arme, the which fell downe into the felde, slykde and all.

Amaury falsely
appeals to Huon's
pity,

and offers him his
sword.
But when Huon
advances to
take it,

Amaury deals
him a fierce blow
which misses its
aim.

In anger Huon
cleaves Amaury's
head before
he can confess
his sin.

¶ whan erle Amaury sawe & felt y^e meruelous 4
stroke, & that he had loste his lyfte arme, & sawe it
lay in y^e felde, he was full of payne and sorow / &
aduysyd hym selfe of a grete treason. Than he spake to
Huon and sayde / 'a, noble knyght, haue pyte of my, 8
for ¹wrongfully & without cause I haue appellyd you
of the deth of Charlot, y^e kynges sone / but I knowe
y^e thought ye knew hym not / but he is dede by my
neymes; for I brought hym in to the wode for to 12
haue murderyd you and your brother. I am redy
knowlege² this before the kyng and all his barons,
and to dyscharge you therof / I pray you slee³ my
not; I yelde me to you / take here my sworde' / than 16
Huon came to hym and put downe hys arme to haue
taken the sworde / but than the false traytour Amaury
with a reuerse stroke / stroke Huon on the arme,
thynkyng to haue stryken it of / but he faylyd. How 20
be it, he gaue hym a grete wounde in the arme, so that
the blode fell downe./ whan Huon sawe his grete⁴
treason / he sayd, 'O thou vntrew & false traytour /
thyne ylnes can no lenger saue the / for thou shalt 24
neuer do trayson more' / than Huon lyft vp his
sworde / & gaue the erle suche a meruaylous stroke
betwene the helme & the shulder / that he stroke of
his hede clene fro y^e body, so *that* the helme & hede 28
fell one way and y^e body another way / alas, what hape
was it to Huon *that* he dyd not remembre or he slewe
Amaury y^e crye⁵ *that* y^e emperour had made before /
for after Huon sufferyd so moche payne & trauayell⁶ / 32

¹ Fol. xi. back, col. 2.

² to acknowledg.

³ kill.


⁴ horrible.

⁵ Proclamation.

⁶ iniurie as might mouue the verie hardest heart to compassionate his case, and as you shall more large vnderstand in the following discourse.

¹that theyr is no clerke can wryten it nor bryng it in
to memorey / and so Huon slewe the erle Amaury.¹

¶ How² that³ after the emperour Charlemayn
4 had seen the erle Amaury⁴ slayn, he com-
mandyd expresly that Huon shoulde avoyde
the realme and empyre and to be banny hyd
for euer. Capitulo .xvii.

8 ⁶  Hen that duke Naymes who kept the
felde / sawe how by Huon the erle was
slayne he was ryght ioyfull / and came
to Huon and demaundyd how he dyde /
12 'syr,' quod he, 'thankyd be god I

fele no dolour nor grefe' / then they brought hym to
the palayes to the kyng, whoo was departed out of
the felde, when he saw y^e erle slayne and was therof

Huon is brought
before the King.

16 ryght sorowfull / then he demaundyd of Huon and of
the duke Naymes yf they had herde y^e erle Amaury
confesse the treason that he had layde to Huon for the
deed⁷ of Charlot his sone / 'syr,'⁸ quod y^e Duke, 'I

Charles asks if
Amaury confessed
his sin,

20 thynke he dyd confesse it / but I herde it not / for
Huon pressyd so sore on hym that he had no leyser to
do it' / then Charlemayn sayde / 'a, erle Amaury,

and when he
learns that none
heard his
confession,

I knowe certainly *thou* dydest neuer *that* treason, nor
24 neuer thought it / wherfore thou art slayne wrongfully
and with out cause / for ther was neuer a trewer
knyght than thou wert / for⁹ I am sure yf thou
haddest done it thou woldest haue confessyd it before

28 me' / then the kyng sayd to¹⁰ Huon, 'I charge the
incontenent to avoyde my realme / out of the whiche I
bannysche the for euer / nor *thou* shalt neuer enioy
one fote of lounde in Bourdeux nor in Aquitanie / and

he bids Huon
depart the
realm,
and surrender
his lands.

¹ omitted in Lord Berners.

² after.

³ the.

⁴ was.

⁶ Fol. xii. col. 1.

⁶ omitted.

⁷ death.

⁸ My Lord.

⁹ and.

¹⁰ unto.

Huon begs
Charles have
mercy upon him,

and denounces his
injustice.

also I defende¹ the that thou neuer be so hardy to go
to Bourdeux / for by my² lorde saynt Denis,³ yf I
knowe that thou goest thether I shall make *the* to dye
an yll deth / nor ther is no man lyuyng, though he be 4
neuer so nere³ frend to⁴ me,⁵ yf he make any request
for *the* I shall neuer loue hym / nor he shall neuer
after come in to⁶ my syght / then Huon sayd, ⁷'syr,
how is it?⁷ ⁸haue I not done my deuore / sene before 8
you & all your barons I haue dyscomfytyd in playn
batayll he *that* hath brought you in to all this trouble? /
⁹syr, sertenly yf ye do to me as ye say, I shall
complayne me to god / for neuer more wronge was 12
done to any noble man / yll ye remembre y^o good
*seruyce*⁸ *that* the noble duke Seuyn my father hath
done to¹⁰ you / so *that* by¹¹ this ye shewe grete
ensample to all your noble barones and knyghtes for 16
them to be well aduysyd how fro hense forthe they
shuld order them self, & how to truste in you, when
that by your owne aloneley¹² opinion, foundyd vpon all
yll¹³ grounde / & agaynst all statutes royal & emperall, 20
wold execute your owne vnreasonable wyll / *sertenly* yf
it wher another¹⁴ prynce besyde you *that* wolde do me
this grete wronge, or I wolde consent so to be delt with
all / many a castell and many a good towne shuld be 24
distroied & brought to ruyn, & many pour men
dystroyed¹⁵ and dyssherytyd, & many a knyght brought
to dethe.'

¹ forbid. ²⁻³ honour & crowne. ³ a.

⁴ vnto. ⁵ but. ⁶ to omitted.

⁷⁻⁷ Alas, my Lord, what iustice is this?

⁸⁻⁸ haue I done any more then knighthood bound me
too? haue not you and your Barons seene him discomfited in
playne Battaile that hath brought you unto all this trouble?
vndoubtedly, my Lord, if you doe to me as you say, God in
heauen be my witnes that neuer more wrong was done to any
noble man. This is but bad remembrance of the good
seruice. ⁹ Fol. xii. col. 2. ¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ for.

¹² obstinate. ¹³ euill. ¹⁴ any other.

¹⁵ more impouerished.

¶ when Huon had thus spoken to y^e kyng / duke
 Naymes stept forth and sayd to the kynge / 'syr,¹
 what thynke² you to do? / ye haue seen *that* Huon had
 4 done his deuore³ / ⁴when he hath brought his enemy
 to vttrance, and slayne hym⁴ / ye may well thynke
that it was the worke of god when suche a chylde
 shuld brynge to vttrance⁵ & dysconfyt suche a pusant
 8 knyght as was y^e erle Amaury. Syr,⁶ yf ye do as ye
 haue sayde / ⁷I nor neuer any⁷ other man shall⁸
 truste you / ⁹& euery man shall say fare & nere *that*
 herof thys extorsyon,⁹ *that* in the ende of your dayes
 12 ye are become chydysche,¹⁰ & more lyke a sot¹¹ then a
 wyse man.¹² then Huon desyryd all y^e barons *that*
 were ther present *that* they wold all requyre y^e kyng to
 haue mercy¹³ of hym, seen they were all bounde so to
 16 do in that he was one of the peeres of the realme /
 then all the prynces and barons, holdynge Huon by
 y^e hande, knelyd down before y^e kynge / than Huon
 sayd / ¹⁴'syr, sene your grace to hate me so sore as ye
 20 speke of / I requyre you at y^e ¹⁵request her of all your
 barons / that ye wyl graunt me *that* I may abyde
 in myne owne countree for euer, and neuer to com
 in your syght, and in this I requyre your grace of
 24 mercy.¹⁴

Duke Naymes
 intercedes for
 Huon.

The barons
 entreat Charles
 in his behalf.

Huon begs
 Charles to permit
 him to live for
 ever at
 Bourdeaux.

¹ My Lord. ² meane. ³ no more then his dutie.

⁴⁻⁴ hauing brought his enemy to confusion, and slayn him.

⁵ shame. ⁶ Therefore, my Lord.

⁷⁻⁷ neither I nor any. ⁸ euer.

⁹⁻⁹ but euery one farre & neere that shall heare of this
 crueltie, will report.

¹⁰ sencelesse. ¹¹ Tyrant.

¹² Prince. ¹³ more respect.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ Seeing it is so, my Lord, that your displeasure is such
 againste me as you haue expressed, Let your Barons and my
 self obtaine but this fauour at your handes, that I may be
 confined to my owne natie Countrey for euer, there to lead a
 poore & priuate life, neuer to be admitted to your presence
 againe, & for this grace we shall all right humbly thanke you.

¹⁵ Fol. xii. back, col. 1.

¶ How kyng Charlemayne sent Huon to
do a message in babylon to the admyrall
gaudyse. Capitulo .xviii.

Charles is
obdurate.



Duke Naymes
protests against
his unjust
sentence.

He and the barons
leave his presence
in anger.

Hen the emperour hade herd Huon 4
speke, he sayde incontynent, 'auoyd
out of my syght / for when I remembre
my sone Charlot whome thou haste
slayne, I haue no member¹ on me but 8
that² trymheleth for the dysplesour that I haue to the /
& I charge all my barons here present that they neuer
speke to me more for the' / when duke Naymes herde
y^e kyng say so, he sayde to all the barons / 'syrs,³ ye 12
that be here present & haue well herde the grete
vnresonablenes that the kyng do⁴ too one of oure
peres / the whyche, as ye knowe well, it is agaynst
ryght and reason / and a thyng not to be sufferyd. 16
But that by cause we knowe serteynly the kyng is
our souerayn lord, we muste suffer his plesour. But
fro hense forthe / sens he wyl vse hym selfe and to do
thynges agaynst reason and honour, I wyll neuer abyde 20
an oure lenger with hym / but I⁵ wyll departe and
neuer retourne agayne in to y^e place wher as suche
extorsyon⁶ and vnresonableness is vsed / I wyll go
in to my countre of Bauier / and lette the kyng do fro 24
hense forth as he lyst.' Than all the barons departyd
with the duke fro the kyng without spekyng any⁷
worde, & so lefte the kyng alone in hys palayes /
when the kyng sawe the⁸ duke depart and hys other 28
lordys / he was ryght sorowful and in greate dis-
pleasure / and sayd to the yonge knyghtes that were
left about hym / how that he ought⁹ greatly to be
anoyed for⁹ y^e deth of hys sone, who was slayne so 32

¹ parte. ² it. ³ My Lord. ⁴ offers. ⁵ I omitted.
⁶ extremitie. ⁷ (one). ⁸ Fol. xii, back, col. 2.
⁹⁻⁹ in nature to take heauylye.

peteously,¹ / and also² to se how hys barons had
 abandonyd hym and left hym alone / ³than he sayde
 openly / 'I se well I am³ forsyd sum what to folow
 4 theyr wylls' / and ther with he wept peteously / and
 incontynent marchyd⁴ forth and folowed them, &
 sayd, 'duke Naymes and all ye my barons, I requyre
 you⁵ retourne agayne, for of force I most graunt your
 8 desyres⁶ / though it be agaynst that promys that I
 made before' / then the duke and all other⁷ retournyd
 to the palayes with the kynge / who sat downe on a
 benche of gold, & hys barons abowt hym. Than he
 12 sent for Huon, who knelyd downe before the kynge,
 requyryng hym humbly of mercy and petye; than⁸ the
 kynge sayde / 'Huon, sen thou woldest be agreed⁹
 with me, ¹⁰Then it must behoue the to do that I
 16 commaunde and orden.'¹⁰ ¹¹'Syr,' quod Huon, 'to obey
 you there is no thyng in this mortall worlde than any
 humayn body may do, But that I shall vndertake to
 do it / not lettynge for fere of any deth, though it be
 20 to go to the dry tre / ye, or to hell gattes to fyght witt
 the fendes there, as sum tyme dyd Hercules,¹¹ yf I may
 therby be agreed with¹² your grace.' 'Huon,' quod
 the kynge, 'I thynke to sende the in to a worse place,
 24 for of .xv. messengers that I haue sent, ther was neuer
 none retournyd agayne / I shal shew *thee* whether thou
 shalt go / sen¹³ thou wylt *that* I shall haue mercy of

Charles declares
 himself forced
 to relent,

and recalls the
 barons.

He bids Huon
 approach him,

and orders him
 to depart on a
 perilous mission
 to Babylon.

¹ disloyally. ² and could not likewise but greue.

³⁻⁵ therefore there is no remedy, but I must be.

⁴ went. ⁵ (to). ⁶ requests.

⁷ the rest. ⁸ to whom. ⁹ at peace.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ it is requisite that thou performe whatsoever I
 enioyne thee.

¹¹⁻¹¹ Else, my Lord (said Huon), god forbid, there is no
 man in the world owes you more obedience than I doe, or shall
 more gladly vndertake whatsoever your highnesse shall please
 to command me, dreadlesse of death or any danger, be it goe
 to Hell gates, to fight with the fiendes there, as sometime did
 Hercules.

¹² reconciled to. ¹³ seeing.

He is to
enter the palace
of Admiral
Gaudys,

kill the chief
lord present,

and thrice kiss
the Admiral's
daughter
Esclarmonde.

Huon is to
bring home
for Charles
hawks, bears,
youths,
and maidens,
together with
a handful of
hair from the
Admiral's beard,
and four of his
teeth.

thee. thou must go to the cyte of Babylone / to the
admyrall Gaudys / and shew hym¹ / as I shal declare²
to *thee* / and³ be ware on payne of thy lyfe *that* thou
fayle not to do it / whan thou cummyst there, mount 4
vp in to hys palays / and there tary tyll he be at hys
dynner, 'and whan thou seest hym sytte at the table,
than thou to be armyde with thy sworde nakyd in thy
hande / and loke the⁵ gretest lord that thou seest 8
sytte at his table, whether he be kyng or admyrall /
thou most stryke of hys hede / and after that 'do
so myche as to fyaunce and to kys thre tymes the
fayre Esclarmonde, dowghter to the Admyrall Gaudysse,⁶ 12
openly in his presence / and before all other there
present / for I⁷ wyll thou knowyst⁷ she is the fayrest
mayde *that* is now lyuynge / ⁸and after that⁸ thou
shalte say to the admirall Gaudyse that I commaunde 16
hym to sende me a .M. hawks, a .M. berers, and a .M.
wayters all cheynede, and a .M. yonge variettes / and a
.M. of the fayrest maydens in his realme. And also
thou to brynge me thy handfull of the here of hys 20
herde / and .iiii. of hys grettest teth.' 'A, Syr,'⁹
quod the barons, 'We se well ye desyre gretely hys
deth whan ye charge hym wythe suche a message.'
'That is trewe,' quod the kyng, 'for without I haue his 24
berde & hys grete teth¹⁰ without tromperey or couyn,¹⁰
Lette hym neuer retourne in to Fraunce, nor come in to
my presence / for and¹¹ he do he shal be hangyd and
drawyn.' 'Syr,'¹² quod Huon, 'haue ye shewyd me all 28
your pleasure?' 'Ye,' quod the kyng, 'my wyll is
as I haue sayde, yf thou wylt haue peace with me.'

¹ there doe. ² appoint. ³ but.

⁴ Fol. xlii. col. 1. ⁵ the verie.

⁶⁻⁸ enquire for faire Escleremond, daughter to the Admirall,
and kisse her there.

⁷⁻⁷ giue the to vnderstand. ⁸⁻⁸ this being done.

⁹ Alas, my Lord. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ brought me hether unfaynedly.

¹¹ if. ¹² My Lord.

- 'Syr,'¹ quod Huon, 'by y^e grace of god I shall furnyshe your message / the fere of dethe shall not lette me to do it.' 'Huon,' quod the kyng, 'yf god
4 of his grace wyll suffer the to retourne agayne in to Fraunce, I charge the be not so hardy to come to Bourdeux nor to no² parte of thy cowntre tyll thou hast spoken with me / yf I fynde the doynge contrare /
8 I shall cause the to dye an yll dethe. And vpon this I wyll thou layest vnto me good hostages.' 'Syr,'³ quod Huon, 'here be x. knyghtes whom I shall leue with you for suerte, to the entent that ye shalbe con^tent with
12 me / howbeit, syr,⁴ I requyre your grace to suffer the knyghtes that came *with* me fro Burdeux to go with me to the holy sepulcre.' 'I am content,' quod y^e
kyng, 'that they go with y^e to the red see.'⁶ 'Syr,'⁷
16 quod Huon, 'I thanke your grace.' Than Huon made hym redy to furnyshe his vyage.

Huon accepts the mission, and prepares to set out.

Charles permits a few knights from Bourdeaux to go with him.

- ¶ Howe Huon of Burdeux toke leue of the kyng & of the barons, and rode wythe the
20 good abbote to Cluny. Capitulo .xix.

- A**fter that ⁸Charlemayne hade gyuen Huon y^e charge of hys message, the kyng called be fore hym Gerardyne, brother to Huon, & delynered to hym the gouernance of all his brothers
24 *londes* in his absence tyll his retourne.

Gerard is intrusted with the care of Huon's lands in his absence.

- And thus whan Huon was redy he came to y^e kyng
28 and to the barons / to take his leue, and the Abbot of Cluny⁹ sayde he wolde go *with* hym parte of his way / &¹⁰ .xii. of the gretest pryn¹¹ce and ladyes conuayed,

The Abbot of Cluny, with other ladies and gentlemen, insist on accompanying Huon a little way on his road.

¹ My Soueraigne Lord. ² any. ³ My Lord.
⁴ Fol. xiii. col. 2. ⁵ my Lord. ⁶ thether or else where.
⁷ My Lord. ⁸ king. ⁹ who.
¹⁰ so likewise did. ¹¹ Fol. xiii. back, col. 1.

At Troyes
all but the Abbot
bid him farewell,
and return.

At Cluny the
Abbot leaves him.

Gerard seeks
to obtain from
Charles the rank
of peer of
France.

Duke Naymes
begg the Emperor
to refuse the
request.

Gerard goes to
Bourdeaux,
and tells his
mother what has
passed.

a¹ .ii. ²dayes iournay; and whan they came to the
towne of Troye in Champayne / duke Naymes toke
leue of his cosyn Huon, and gaue hym a somner
charged with gold, and kyssed hym at theyr departynge / ⁴
then gerard his brother toke his leue, & also kyssed
hym / but knowe for tought the kysse that he gaue
hym was lyke to the kysse *that* Judas gaue to ³our
lorde god⁸ / the whiche was derely bought, as ye shall ⁸
here after / thus duke Naymes and gerard departyd
and toke theyr way to Parys / & ⁴the abbot and Huon
restyd not tyll thy came to the abbey of cluney, wher
as they were receyuyd with grete ioye and well feestyd / ¹²
than the nexte mornynge / Huon departyd, and toke
leue of his vncler sore wepyng, desyryng hym ⁵that
he might be recommendyd⁵ to his mother the duches,
and to gerard his brother. the abbot promysyd so to ¹⁶
do, and gaue Huon his nephew a mulet chargyd with
money coraunt in fraunce / thus he departyd and toke
the way to rome. Now leue we to speke of Huon, and
shewe of duke Naymes and Gerard, who retornyd ²⁰
to Parys. than⁶ gerard requyryd the kynge that it
wolde playse hym to resyue his homage for the londes
of bourdeaux, to the entent *that* he myght be auancyd,
and to be in y^e state of one of y^e peeres of fraunce / ²⁴
the whiche thyng duke Naymes wolde not consent
vnto nor agre to it / but sayd to the kynge, 'syr,⁷ ye
ought not to suffer that Huon shuld be dysherytyd' /
wher of gerarde was not content / but duke Naymes ²⁸
set lytell therby / for he beleuyd Huon inteerly /
so this homage was delayed / than gerarde retournyd
to bourdeaux / where as he was well receyuyd. ³²whan
the Duches sawe hym and not Huon to retourne, she
was sorowfull in her harte / than she demaundyd of

¹ accompany him for. ² Fol. xiii. back, col. 2.

³⁻³ his Maister. ⁴ but. ⁵⁻⁶ to recommend. ⁶ where.

⁷ My Lord. ⁸ but.


Gerard why that Huon his brother was ¹not retournyd
 with hym / than Gerarde shewyd her all the hole
 mater and aduenture / and of the departynge of Huon,
 4 and of the maner of hys vyage / wherof the Duches
 had suche sorow / that she fell syke, and so lay .xxix.
 dayes, and on the .xxx. day she dyed, and renderyd vp
 her soule to god, wherof all the countre was sorowfull.
 8 Gerard nobly buryed her in the Church of saynt
 Seueryne by the duke her husbonde / Anon² after
 maryed hym to the doughter of duke Gylberde of
 Cecyll / who was the gretest traytour and moost
 12 crewell that myght be harde of / Anon² & Gerard his
 sone in lawe lernyd his wayes and folowyd his
 condycyon / for he delte so yll with the towne of
 bourdeux & with the countre about, that pyte it was to
 16 here the poore people / and wepte³ for the losse of
 duke Seuyn and of the Duches / and prayed to god
 for y^e good retourne of there lorde Huon / Now we
 shall leue to speke of them, and speke of ⁴Huon.

The duchess falls
 sick on learning
 Huon's fate,
 and thirty days
 later dies.

Gerard weds the
 daughter of the
 traitorous Duke
 Gylberde of
 Cecyll.

20 ¶ How Huon of bourdeux came to Rome, &
 was confessyd of the pope, who was his
 vncl; & of his departynge, & how he
 came to brandys, wher he founde his vncl;
 24 Garyn of saint Omers, who fore loue of
 Huon passyd the see with hym.

Capitulo .xx.

28  Ere before ye⁵ herde how Huon
 departyd fro his vncl, the abbot
 of Cluney / so longe he rode with
 his knyghtes that he came to the
 Cyte of Rome / and there he was
 32 logyd in a good hostrey / than Huon

Huon reaches
 Rome.

¹ Fol. xliii. col. 1.² Anon *in orig.*³ To weep.⁴ returne vnto.⁵ howe.

Huon salutes
the Pope,
who was his
mother's brother.

He confesses
to him,

and receives
absolution.

The Pope
entertains Huon,

rose in the mornynge, accompanyd with Guychard, whom
he well louyd, and with the other knyghtes that ¹came
thether with hym, and went to the church of saynt
Peter and herde masse,² & whan y^e mas³ was done the 4
pope cam out of his oretorey / than Huon cam to hym
and humbly salutyd hym / the pope behelde him, and
demaundyd what he was / 'syr,' *quod* he, 'my father
was Duke Seuyn of bourdeux, who is decessayd.' than 8
the pope stept to hym & embrasyd hym, and sayd,
'fayr nephew, ye are welcome / I praye you shewe me
how dothe my syster the Duches, your mother, and
what aduenture hath brought you hether' / 'syr,' 12
quod he, 'I requyre your holynes *that* ye wyll here my
confessyon a parte / for I haue grete nede therof.'
'fayr nephew,' *quod* the pope, 'it pleasyth me ryght
well to here you.' than the pope toke hym by the 16
hande and went with hym in to his oretory, and ther
Huon shewyd hym all the aduenture that he had syns
he cam fro bourdeux, and of the vyage *that* Charlemayne
had set hym to do and to saye to the admirall Gaudyse / 20
'whan he had all shewyd⁴ / he requiryd pardon and
penaunce for his synnes / the pope sayd he wolde
gyue⁵ hym none other⁶ penaunce but⁷ *that* kyng⁸
Charles had gyuyn hym⁹ / the which was so grete 24
that none humayn body coude suffer it, nor durst
thynke¹⁰ to do it / than the pope gaue hym absolucyon
of all his synnes / ¹¹than the pope¹¹ lede hym in to his
palayes, where he was honorable receyued with grete 28
ioy / after they had dynyd and deuysyd too gether a
grete space, the pope sayde to Huon / 'fayr nephew,
the way that ye muste go is to go to the porte of
brandys, there shall ye fynde my brother Garyn of 32

¹ Fol. xiii. col. 2.

² service.

³ service.

⁴⁻⁴ all which being declared and done.

⁵ assigne.

⁶ no.

⁷ for.

⁸ the Emperour.

⁹ done that alreadie.

¹⁰ vndertake.

¹¹⁻¹¹ and louingly.

- saynt Omers, who is your vncler / to whome I shall
 wryte a letter to the entent that he shall haue knowlege
 of you, for I knowe well he shall haue grete ioy of
 4 you / he hathe the keypyng of the Oryentall see / he
 shall adresse you, and delyuer you shype or galee suche
 as shall be nesses'sary for you' / ² 'holy father,' quod
 Huon, ³ 'of this I thanke you' / 'well,' quod the pope,
 8 'this nyght ye shall abyde here with me.' 'syr,' quod
 he, 'I requyre you let me departe / for gretely I desyre
 to se myn vncler Garyn' / whan the pope sawe that he
 wolde nedys departe, he delyueryd hym his letter, and
 12 sayd, 'fayr nephew, salute fro me my brother Garyn
 your vncler' / 'syr,' quod he, 'I shall do your com-
 maundement' / than the pope gaue to Huon grete and
 ryche presentes, and to all them that were with hym /
 16 than he kyssyd his nephew at his departyng / Huon
 toke leue of hym all wepyng / and so departyd, and
 enteryd in to the Ryuer of Tybre in a ryche shype, the
 whiche the pope had well garnysshyd for hym.
 20 ¶ Thus he had good wynde / so that anon they
 aryuyd at brandys / but whyles he was on the water he
 wepte sore, and pyteously compleynyng in that he was
 so departyd out of his countre / than his men comfortyd
 24 hym, and shewed hym many fayre ensamples to comfort
 hym / 'syr,' quod Guychard, 'leue your sorow / for
 makyng of sorow⁴ can not auayle you / ye must put
 all to the mercy of our lorde god, who neuer forgettyh
 28 them that louyth hym / shew your selfe a man and no
 chylde / to the entent that we that be with you may be
 reioysyd / for the sorowe that we se you in dothe sore
 trouble vs' / 'syr,' quod Huon / 'syn it is so I shall
 32 folowe your wyll' / thus they aryuyd at the porte of
 Brandys. Than they issuyd out of ther shyppe /
 and toke out ther horses, & theyre thy sawe Garyn

and gives him
 letters of
 introduction to
 his brother
 Garyn of Saint
 Omer.

Huon passes
 down the Tiber.

His knights
 comfort him in
 his dejection.

They arrive at
 the port of
 Brandys.

¹ Fol. xliii, back, col. 1.

² Most.

³ Hunn is orig.

⁴ greefe and sadness.

They meet
Garyn.

Huon's face
recalls to Garyn
memories of
Duke Sevin his
father.

Garyn is greatly
pleased at Huon's
arrival,

and asks the
reason of his
journey,

which Huon tells
him.

syttynge before the porte in a loge, well and rychely
hangyd in a ryche¹ chayre / whan Huon sawe hym
syttynge he salutyd hym / thynkynge that he was
lorde of that countre / than Garyn behelde Huon and 4
began to wepe, and sayd / 'syr, it pertey²nyth not to
me *that* ye sholde do me so greate honcur as ye do /
for by that I se in you I am constreynyd to wepe /
bycause ye resemble so myche to a prynce of the realme 8
of Fraunce called duke Seuyne, who was lord of the
cyte of Burdeux / the grete loue that ³I haue hade to³
hym causyd me to wepe / I requyre you tell me where
ye were borne, and who be your parentes and frendes / 12
for duke Seuyne hade⁴ weddyd my syster, y^e duches
Aclis.' 'Syr,' quod Huon / 'sen ye wyll knowe what
I am, I may well sheu it to you, for the duke was my
father / and y^e duches Aclis was⁵ my mother / we be⁶ 16
two bretherne. I am the eldest, and the younger ys
styll at Burdeux to kepe the⁷ londe' / whan Garyn
vnderstode that Huon was sone to duke Seuyne of
Burdeux / the ioy that he had ⁸can not be estamyd⁸ / 20
than he embrassyd Huon all wepynge, & sayde, 'ryght
dere neuwe, your commyge is to me the greatest ioy
in thys worlde.' he knelyd downe and wolde haue
kyssyd Huons fete, But Huon releuyd hym incon- 24
tynent. The ioy *that* was betwene them two was so
greate that all that sawe it hade meruayll therof.
Than Garyn demaundyd of Huon and sayde, 'fayre
neuwe, what aduenture hath brought you in to these 28
partes?' Than Huon / shewyd hym fro poynt to poynt
all his besynes / & the cause why he was enterlyde in
to that enterpryse. whan Garyn had harde all he
begane to wepe / and yet, to comfort hys neuwe, he 32
sayd / 'fayre neuwe, where as lyeth grete parelles /

¹ goodly. ² Fol. xliii. back, col. 2. ³⁻³ euer I bare vnto.

⁴ hade *omitted*. ⁵ is. ⁶ are. ⁷ our.

⁸⁻⁸ could not be expressed.

there lieth grete honour. god ayde you to eschew & to
 fornysh thes greate besynes / all is possyble to god
 and to man by meanes of hys grace. A man ought
 4 neuer to be abasshyd / for worldely maters.' Than
 Huon delyueryd his letters to hys vnclé Guaryn / who
 gladly reseuyd them / and red the contynew therof
 at length. Than he sayde, 'fayre neuw / there ¹nede
 8 none other recommendacion but y^e syght of your
 presence / for it aperyth wel by your chere² that ye be
 the same person that oure holy father maketh mensyon
 of / suerly your commynge semyth to me fayre and
 12 good / & ye be aryuyd at a good port / for I promyse
 you faythfully I loue well my wyfe and my chyl drene.
 But the grete loue that I haue to you for the loue of
 your father duke Seuyn and the duchess your mother,
 16 who was myne owne dere syster / I abandon all that I
 haue to serue you and kepe you company, both with
 my body and all that I haue. know for trouht I
 haue thre good galees & thre grete shyppes well
 20 furnyshyd of euery thyng for the warre, y^e whiche I
 shall lede with you / for as longe as lyfe abydeyth in my
 body I shall not abandon you, But I shall ayde you
 in all your enterpryses.' 'Fayre vnclé,' quod Huon,
 24 'of the grete courtesye that ye offer me I ³ thanke
 you' / than Guaryn toke Huon by the hand and lede
 hym in to his castell / where as he was rychely
 reseuyd / Gauryns wyfe and .iiii. of hyr sonnes /
 28 came to Huon, and he full courteously kyssyd the lady
 and hyr .iiii. chyl drene, hys cosyns. greate ioy was
 made there in the hall, and the tabyles sette to suppar.
 than Gauryn called the lady his wyfe and sayde /
 32 'dame,⁴ thys yonge man⁵ that ye se here is my neuw,
 and cosyn to your chyl dren, who is come hether for
 refuge to haue counsell and ayde of me in a vyage &

Huon presents the
 Pope's letters.

Garyn promises
 he will give all
 aid to Huon.

He leade Huon
 home to his
 castle,

and introduces
 him to his wife.

¹ Fol. xv. col. 1. ² countenance. ³ can but.

⁴ Madame. ⁵ knight.

Garyn resolves
to accompany
Huon,

enterpryse that he hathe to do / and by the grace
of god I shall go with hym to ayde and to condute
hym, wherfore I pray and commaund that ye take in
rule all my affayres and kepe your chyldren.' 'Syr,'⁴
quod she, 'sen it is your pleasure thus to do, & *that*
ye wyll go with hym / your 'pleasure shalbe now,'¹
howbeit I had rather ye abode then went.' this she
spake sore wepynge / the next day in the mornynge 8
Guaryn, who hade grete wyll to serue and to please hys
neuew / he ordened a grete shyppe to be made redy,
wel furnyshyd with bysket / wynes and flesshe, and all
other maner of vytaylles / and with monysyons of 12
warre as it apertaynyd, and put therin theyr horses
and armure / golde and syluer / and other ryches
necessary for them / then they toke leue of the lady,
and so left hyr sore wepynge / thus Garyn & Huon 16
enteryd in to theyr shype, and all theyr company /
they were .xiii. knyghtes and .ii. varlettes / to serue
them / they wolde haue no greter nombre.

and has a ship
made ready.

They embark,

²¶ How Huon of Burdeux departyd fro 20
Brandys, and garyn hys vncle with hym,
and how he cam to Jerusalem, and fro
thase in to the desertes, where as he found
Gerames, and of theyr deuyses.³ 24

Capitulo .xxi.

and set sail.



They land at
Jaffe.

Han Huon & Garyn were enteryd in
to theyr shyppe, they lyft vp theyr
sailes & sayled nyght and day, so that 28
they aryuyd sauely at the port of
Jaffe; than they tooke lond⁴ and drew
out theyr horses, and rode forth; so the same day
they came to Rames / & the nexte day to y^e Cyte

¹⁻¹ will let be fulfilled.

³ conference.

² Fol. xv. col. 2.

⁴ lauding.

of Ierusalem / that nyght they restyd / and the
 nexte day they dyd theyr pylgrymage to the holy
 sepulchre / and there deuotly hard masse¹ and offeryd
 4 accordynge to theyr deuosyon / whan Huon came
 before the holy sepulchre he knelyde downe on hys
 bare knees, & all wepyng made hys prayers to our
 lorde god, requyrynge hym to ayde and comfort hym in
 8 hys vyage / so that he might retourne agayne in to
 fraunce, and to haue peace with kynge Charlemayne.
 And when they al had made there prayers and offeryd /
 Huon and Garyn went into a lytyll chapell vpon the
 12 mount of Caluery, where as now lyeth Godfrey of
 Boillon / and Baudwyn hys brother. Than Huon
 called to hym al those that came with hym out of
 Fraunce, and sayd, 'syr, ye that for the loue of me
 16 haue left fathers & mothers, wyues / and chyldren /
 and londes / & synngoryes, of² thys courtosy that ye
 haue shewyd me I thanke you. Now ye may retourne
 in to Fraunce,³ and⁴ recommaunde me to y^e kynges
 20 good grace, and to all the other barons / and when
 ye come to Burdeux, recommaunde me to the duches
 my mother, & to Gerarde my brother, and to the
 lordes of my countre.' Than Guicharde and all the
 24 other knyghtes answeyrd Huon & sayde, 'Sir, as yet
 we wyll nor leue you, nother for deth nor lyfe, tyll we
 haue brought you to the red see.' 'Syr,'⁵ quod
 Huon, 'of⁶ the greате seruys & courtosy that ye offer
 28 me I thanke you' / than Garyn called two of his
 seruantes, and commaundyd them to retourne to⁷ his
 wyfe, and to desyre her to be of good chere, and that
 shortly he wolde retourne / the whiche thyng they
 32 dyd, and retournyd and dyd there message / whan
 Huon vnderstode that his vnclе garyn was dyssposyd
 to abyde with him, he sayd / 'fayre vnclе, ye shal not

They travel to
Jerusalem,

and worship at
the Holy
Sepulchre.

Huon thanks his
companions for
their devotion to
him,

and bids them
return.

They protest they
will not leave him
till they reach the
Red Sea.

¹ seruice. ² for. ³ againe. ⁴ humbly.

⁵ why then. ⁶ for. ⁷ Fol. xv. back, col. 1.

nede to trauayll so myche / I wo'd counsell you to
retourne to your wyfe and chylderne.' 'Syr,' quod
Nor will Garyn
depart from him. garyn, 'and god wyll, I shall not leue you no day
tyll ye retourne your selfe' / 'vnclé,' quod Huon, 4
'I thanke you of your courtesy.' Thus they went to
theyr lodgyng and dyned / & after dyner tooke there
horses / and so rode by hylles and dales / so that yf I
sholde recounte all the aduentures that they founde in 8
theyr way, it sholde be to longe a processe to show it./
but as the trew story¹ wytnessyth / they sufferyd
myche payne and trauayl / for they passyd suche
They pass
through deserts,
and suffer much. desertes / where as they founde but small sustenance / 12
whereof Huon was ryght sorowfull for the loue of them
that were with hym / and began to wepe & to
Huon weeps and
complains of the
Emperor's
injustice. remembre his owne countre, sayynge, 'Alas, noble
kyng of Fraunce, grete wronge and grete syne ye haue 16
done, thus to dryue me out of my countre & to sende
me in to² strange countres,³ to thentent to short my
dayes. I pray to god pardon you therof'⁴ / than garyn
and the other knyghtes comfortyd hym & sayd, 'A, 20
syr, dysmay you not for vs / god is puyssant ynough
to ayde vs / he neuer fayllyth them *that* louyth hym' /
thus they rode forth in the deserte so longe tyll at last
They ride on to a
small cottage,
where an old man
is found to dwell. they sawe a lytyll cotage, before the whiche sat an olde 24
aunsyent man with a longe whyte berde, and hys heyre
hangynge ouer hys shulders / whan Huon parseyuyd
hym he drew thedyr & salutyd y^e olde man in y^e
name of god & of y^e blyssyd wyrgyn saynt⁵ mary / 28
than the aunsyent man lyft vp his eyes & behelde
Huon, & had grete meruayll, for of a greate⁶ season
before he had sene no man / *that* spake⁷ of god / than
he behelde Huon in the vysage / & began sore to wepe ; 32
than he stept⁸ to Huon & tooke hym by the legge &

¹ history.² a.³ Land.⁴ therefore.⁵ saynt *omitted*.⁶ long.⁷ Fol. xv. back, col. 2.⁸ and stepping vnto Huon.

kyssyd it mo then .xx. tymys / 'frend,' quod Huon,
 'I requyre you shew me why ye make this sorow.'
 'Syr,' quod he, 'a¹.xxx. yere passyd I cam hether / &
 4 sen *that* tyme I neuer saw man beleuyng on the
 crysten fayth / & by² the regardyng of your vysage
 causyth me to remembre a noble prynce *that* I haue
 sene in Fraunce, who was called duke Seun of
 8 Burdeux / therfore I requyre you shew me yf euer ye
 saw hym, I pray you hyde it not fro me' / 'frende,'
 quod Huon / 'I pray you shew me where ye were
 borne, & of what lynage & countre ye be of.' 'Nay,
 12 sir,' quod he, '*that* wyll I not do fyrst; ye shall shew
 me what ye be, and where ye were borne, & why
 ye come heder' / 'frende,' quod Huon / 'sene it please
 you to knowe, I shall shewe you' / then Huon & all
 16 his company alyghtyde & tyed theyr horses to trees.

He tells Huon he
 has seen no
 Christian man for
 thirty yere,
 and his face
 reminds him of
 Duke Sevin.

WHan Huon was alyghtyde, he sat downe by the
 olde man & sayd, 'frend, sen ye wyll know
 my bysenes, I shall shew you. know for trouthe /
 20 I was borne in the cyte of Burdeux, and am sonne
 to duke Seun' / then Huon shewyd hym all his hole
 case & enterpryse, & of y^e deth of Charlot, & how he
 dyscomfytyd erle Amaury, & how *that* Charlemayn
 24 had chasyd hym out of Fraunce / & of the message
that he was chargyd to say to the admyrall Gaudyse /
 'this *that* I haue shewyd you is of trouthe.'³ whan y^e
 old man had well harde Huon, he began sore to wepe.
 28 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'sen it please you to know of
 my sorow / duke Seun my father is deed .vii. yere
 past / my mother I trust be a lyue, & a brother of
 myn whom I haue left *with* her. And now, sir, sen⁴
 32 ye haue harde of myn affayres, I requyre you gyue
 me your counsell & aduyse / & also, yf it please you, to
 shew me what ye be, & of what countre / & how ye⁵ came

At the old man's
 request Huon
 tells his history.

¹ about. ² now. ³⁻³ affirming all to be for certainty.

⁴ seeing. ⁵ Fol. xvi. col. 1.

The old man tells
in return how he
was born at
Geronville,
and was brother
to the provost
Guyer;

and how he was
sent for slaying a
noble knight
on a pilgrimage
to the Holy
Sepulchre;

and how when
setting out again
for France

he was seized by
the Saracens,
who imprisoned
him at Babylon;

and how he
escaped thence to
this forest,
where he has
since lived for
thirty years.

in to these parties.' 'Syr,' quod the old man / 'know
for trouthe I was borne in Geronnill / & brother to y^e
good prouost Guyer / whan I departyd thense I was a
yonge knyght / & haundyed the iustes & tornoyes; so that 4
on a day it fortunyd at a tornay that was made at
Poitiers, I slew a knyght of a noble blode, wherfore I
was banyshyd out of the realme of Fraunce. But my
brother y^e prouost made suche a request to duke Seugn 8
your father / that by his meanes my peace was made
with the kyng / & my londe sau'd / on the¹
condycyon that I shulde goo ²a pylgrymage² to the
holy sepulchre to ³pray for y^e soull³ of y^e knyght that 12
I slew, & to forgyue my synnes⁴ / thus I departyd out
of my countre / and when I had done my vyage I
thought to haue retournyd / but as I departyd out of
y^e cyte of Jerusalem / to take the way to Acre / 16
passynge by a wood betwene Jerusalem and Naplese /
ther cam apon me a .x. sarasyns, who tooke me and
brought me to the cyte of Babylon, where as I was in
pryson .ii. yere complete, where as I sufferyd myche 20
pouerte & mysere / but our lorde god, who neuer
faylyth them that seruyth hym & haue in hym
full affyaunce, he sende me the grace that by the
meanes of a ryght noble ladi I was brought out of 24
pryson in an nyghte, and so I fiede in to this forest,
where as I haue bene this .xxx. yere, and in all this
space I neuer saw nor harde man beleuyng on Jhesu
Cryst / thus I haue shewyd you all myn affayre' / 28
when Huon had harde the knyghtys tale he had grete
ioy / and embrassyd hym & sayde how often tymys
he had sene Guyer, his brother the prouost, wepe for
you⁵ / 'and whan I departyd fro Burdeux ⁶I delyueryd 32
to⁷ hym all my londes to gouerne / wherfore I requyre

¹ upon. ²⁻³ omitted.

³⁻⁵ to punish my body. ⁴ faults. ⁵ him.

⁶ quoth he added. ⁷ vnto.

you shew me your name.' 'Syr,' quod he, 'I am called Gerames / and now I pray you shew me your name.' His name is Gerames,

'Syr,' quod he, 'I am namyd Huon, & my yonger
4 brother is called Gerarde. But, syr, I pray you shew
me how ye haue so longe lyued here, and what
sustenance ye haue.'² 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'I haue
eten none other thyng but rootes & frutes that I haue
8 founde in the wood' / then Huon demaundyd of hym
yf he coude speke the langage sarasyn. 'Ye, syr,' quod
he, 'as well or better then any sarasyn in the countre,
nor there is no way but that I know it.'

and he can speak
the language of
the country.

12 **W**Han Huon had harde Gerames / than he
demaundyd forther of hym yf he coude go
to Babylon / 'ye, syr,' quod Gerames, 'I can go
thether by .ii. wayes / the most surest way is hense

There are, he
says, two roads
to Babylon.

16 a .xl. iurneys,³ & the other is but .xv. iurneys.³ But
I counsell you to take the long way / for yf ye take
the shorter way ye most passe throwout a wood a .xvi.
leges of lenght; but the way is so full of y^e fayrey &

But the shorter is
beset by Oberon
and his fairies.

20 straunge thynges, that suche as passe that way are lost,
for in that wood abydyth a kynge of y^e fayrey namyd
Oberon / he is of heyght but of .iiii. fote, and crokyd
shulderyd, but yet he hathe an aungelyke vysage, so

Oberon is a dwarf,

24 that there is no mortall man that seethe hym but that
taketh grete pleasure to beholde his fise / and ye shall
no soner be enteryd in to that wood, yf ye go that
way / ⁴he wyll fynde the maner⁵ to speke with you /

28 and yf ye speke to⁶ hym ye are lost for euer / and ye
shall euer fynde hym before you / so that it shalbe in
maner imposyble that ye can scape fro hym without
spekyng to hym / for his wordes be so pleasant to
32 here that there is no mortall man that can well scape
without spekyng to⁶ hym / and yf he se that ye wyll
not speke a worde to⁶ hym, Than he wyll be sore dys-

and any one who
speaks with him
is lost for ever.

¹ Fol. xvi. col. 2.

² had.

³ dayes iourney.

⁴ but.

⁵ meanes.

⁶ vnto.

Yet if a man
is silent when
addressed by him
he will cause
storms to arise,
and mock him
with magic,

but he can work
him no serious
evil.

Gerames begs
Huon to avoid
Oberon,

but Huon longs to
see him,

and determines to
take the shorter
path.

Gerames reluc-
tantly assents to
Huon's plan, and
offers his
guidance.

He has often seen
Gaudyse and his
fair daughter.

pleasyd with you, and or¹ ye can gete out of the wood
he wyll cause / reyne and wynde / hayle / and snowe /
and wyll make ²meruelous tempestes / with thonder and
lyghtenynges / so that it shall seme to you that all the 4
worlde sholde pereshe, & he shall³ make to seme before
you a grete rynnynge riuer, blacke and depe. But ye
may passe it at your ease, and it shall not wete the fete
of your horse / for all is but fantesey and enchaunt- 8
mentes / that the dwarfe shall make / to thentent to
haue you with hym / and yf ye can kepe your selfe
without spekyng to hym / ye maye than well skape.
But, syr, to eschew all perelles, I counsell you take the 12
lenger way, for I thynke ye can not skape fro hym /
and than be ye lost for euer.' Whan Huon had well
harde Gerames he had grete meruayll, and he had grete
desyre in hym selfe to se that dwarfe kyng of the 16
fayrey, and the straunge aduentures *that* were in that
wood. than he sayde to Gerames, that for fere of any
deth he wolde not leue to passe that way, sen⁴ he
myght come to Babylon in .xv. dayes / for in takynge 20
the lenger way he myght paraduenture⁵ fynde mo ad-
uentures / and sens he was aduertesyd / that with kepyng
his tonge fro spekyng he myght abrege hys iorney,
and⁶ he sayde that surely he wolde that way what so 24
euer chaunce fell.⁷ 'Syr,' quod Gerames / 'ye shall do
your⁸ pleasure / for whiche so euer way⁹ ye take, it shall
not be without me / I shall bryngye you to Babylone to
the admirall Gaudyse; I knowe hym ryght well / and 28
when ye be come thether ye shall se there a damesell,
as I haue harde say, the most fayrest creature in all
Inde, and the grete¹⁰ and most swetest and most courte-
sest that euer was borne / & it is she that ye seke, 32
for she is doughter to the admirall Gaudyse.'

¹ before. ² Fol. xvi. back, col. 1. ³ will. ⁴ seeing.
⁵ perchaunce. ⁶ and *omitted*. ⁷ befell. ⁸ own.
⁹ way soeuer. ¹⁰ onely.

¶ Howe Gerames went with Huon and his
company, and so came in to the wood, wher
as they found ¹kyng Oberon, who coun-
4 iuryde them to speke to ²hym.

Capitulo .xxii.

W Han Huon had well hard Gerames howe
he was myndyd to go ³with hym, he
was ther of ryght ioyfull, and thankyd
hym of hys courtesy and seruys / and
gaue hym a goodely horse whereon he
mountyd / and so rode forth to gether / so longe that they
12 came in to the wood where as kyng Oberon hauntyd
most. Than Huon ⁴was wery of trauyll, and what for
famyn and for hete, the whiche he and his company had
enduryd two dayes without brede or mete, so that he
16 was so febyll that he coude ryde no forther / & then he
began petuosly to wepe, and complaynyd of the grete
wronge that kyng Charlemayn hade done to ²hym /
and than Guaryn and Gerames comfortyd hym and had
20 greate pety of hym, and they knewe well by the reason
of his yought hunger opressyd hym ⁵more then it dyde
to them of gretter age / than they alyghtyd vnder a
grete oke, to y^e entent to serche for sum frute to ete /
24 they ⁶lette theyr horses go to pasture. whan they were
thus alyghtyd / the dwarfe of the fayre / kyng Oberon,
came rydyng by, and had on a gowne so ryche that it
were meruayll to recount the ryches and fayssyon ther-
28 of / and it was so garnyshyd with precyous stones that
the clerenes of them shone lyke the sone. Also he had
a goodly bow in hys hande so ryche that it coude not
be estemyde, and hys arrons after the same sort / and
32 they ⁷had suche proparte / that any beest in the

Huon and
Gerames set out
together,

and reach the
wood that Oberon
haunts.

Huon is sore
distressed by
hunger and
fatigue,

and while he
and his com-
pany are alighting
to seek for food

Oberon rides by.

His dress shines
with precious
stones,

and in his hand
is a bow of great
value.

¹ Fol. xvi. back, col. 2. ² vnto. ³ along.

⁴ who. ⁵ Fol. xvii. col. 1. ⁶ glad therof.

⁷⁻⁷ were of such a nature or qualitie.

A horn, the gift
of four fairies,
hangs about his
neck.

One fairy had
endowed it with
the power of
curing by its
blast all manner
of sickness;

another with that
of satisfying
hunger and
thirst;

a third with that
of lightening
every heavy
heart;

and a fourth with
that of forcing
whosoever heard
it to come at the
pleasure of him
that blew it.

At the sound of
the horn Huon
and his com-
panions are filled
with joy.

Huon is no
longer thirsty or
hungry.

worlde that he wolde wyshe for / the arow sholde¹
areste hym / Also he hade about hys necke a ryche
horne hanging by two lases of golde / the horne was
so ryche and fayre / that there was neuer sene none² 4
suche; it was made by .iiii. ladyes of the fayre in the
yle of Chafalone / on of them gaue to the horne suche
a proparte / that who so euer hard the sownde therof,
yf he were in the gretest syknes in the worlde / he 8
sholde incontynent be hole and sownde; the lady that
gaue thys gyft to this horne was namyd G'loriande / the
secounde lady was namyd Translyne; he³ gaue to this
horne a nother properte, and that was, who so euer 12
harde this horne, yf he were in the gretest famyn of
the worlde, he sholde be satysfied as well as though he
had eten al that he wolde wysse for, and in lyk wyse
for drynk as well as though he had dronken his fyllle 16
of the best wyne in all the worlde. the thyrd lady,
namyd Margale, gaue to this horne yet a greter gyft /
and that was, who so euer harde this horne / though he
were neuer so poore or febyll by syknes, he sholde haue 20
suche ioy in his herte that he sholde synge and daunce /
the forth lady, namyd Lempatrix, gaue to this horne
suche a gyft, that who so euer harde it, yf he were a⁴.C.
iorneys⁵ of, he sholde come at the pleasure of hym that 24
blew it, farre or nere. Than kyng Oberon, who knew
well and hade sen the .xiiii. compaygnyons, he set hys
horne to hys mouth and blewe so melodyous a blast /
that the .xiiii. compaygnyons, beyng vnder the tre, had 28
so parfayte a ioy at there hertes that they al rose vp
and begane to synge and daunse. 'A, good lorde,' quod
Huon, 'what fortune is come to vs? / me thynke we be
in paradyse / ryght now I coude not susteyn my selfe 32
for lake of mete & drynke, and now I fele my selfe
nother hungry nor thrusty. fro whense may this come?' /

¹ would. ² any. ³ she. ⁴ Fol. xvii. col. 2.

⁵ dayes iourneys.


'Syr,' quod Gerames / 'know for trougħ thys is done
by the dwarfe of the fayry / whom ye shall sone se
passe by you. But, syr, I require you in¹ iupardy in²
4 lesynge of your lyfe that ye speke to hym no worde,
without ye purpose to hyde euer with hym.' 'Syr,'
quod Huon, 'haue no dought of me, sen I knowe the
iupardy.' Therwith y^e dwarfe began to crye alowde,
8 and sayde, 'Ye .xiiii. men *that* passyth by my wood,
god kepe you all / and I desyre you speke with me,
and I coniure you ther to by god almyghty, and by
y^e crystendome that ye haue receyuyd, and by all that
12 god hath made, answer me.'

Gerames warns
Huon to speak no
word to Oberon.

Oberon calls to
the knights to
speak to him.

¶ Howe kynge Oberon was ryght sorowfull
and sore dyspleasyd in that Huon wold
not speke / and of the grete fere that
16 he put Huon and hys company in.

Capitulo .xxiii.

20  Han that Huon and hys company harde
the dwarfe speke, they montyd on
there horses & rode awaye as faste as
they mygh without spekyng of any
worde / and the dwarfe, seynge howe
that ³they rode away & wolde not speke, he was
24 sorowfull and angry / than he sette one of his fyngers
on his horne / out of y^e whiche issuyd out⁴ suche
wynde a⁵ and tempest so horryble to here that it bare
downe trees, and therwith came suche a rayne & hayl
28 that⁶ semyd that heuen and the erthe hade fought
together, and that y^e worlde shulde haue ended / the
beestys in the wodes brayed and cryed / and *thou*
foules of the eyre fell doune deed for⁷ feer that they
32 were in / ther was no creature but he wolde haue bene

Huon and his
company ride
away.

Oberon in anger
raises a tempest
about them,

¹ on. ² of. ³ Fol. xvii. back, col. 1.
⁴ out *omitted*. ⁵ a winde. ⁶ it. ⁷ the.

and causes a
perilous river to
appear in the
path before them.

Huon is stricken
with fear.

A fair castle rises
upon the opposite
side of the river,

but soon vanishes.

Gerames shows
that all this is the
work of the
dwarf king of
Fairy-land, who is
wrathful because
Huon has spoken
no word with
him.


afrayed of that tempeest / than sodenly aperyd before
them a grete ryuer / that ran swyfter than the byrdes
dyde flye / and the water was so blacke and so perre-
lous, & made suche a noyse that it myght be herde .x. 4
leges of / 'Alas,' quod Huon, 'I se well now we all¹ be
all loste ; we shall here be oppressyd without god haue
pyte of vs / I repent me that euer I enteryd in to
this wode ; I had ben better a² traueyld a hole here³ 8
than to haue come hether' / 'Syr,' quod Gerames,
'dysmay you not / for all this is done by the dwerfe of
the Fayrey' / 'well,' quod Huon, 'I thynke it beste
to alyght fro our horse, for I thynke we shall neuer 12
skape fro hense, but that we shall be all oppressyd' /
than Garyn and the other companyons had grete
meruayll, and wher in grete feer / 'a, Gerames,' quod
Huon, 'ye shewyd me well that it was grete perell 16
to passe this wode / I repent me⁴ that I hadde not
beleuyd you' / than they sawe on y^e other syde of the
ryuer a fayre castell enuyronyd with .xiiii. grete
toures, and on euery toure a clocher of fyne golde be 20
semynge / the whiche they long regardyd / & by *that*
tyme they had gone a lytyll by y^e ryuer syde they
loste y^e syght of y^e castell, it was clene vanysshyd
a way / wher of Huon & his company were sore 24
abasshyd / 'Huon,' quod Gerames, 'of all this *that*
ye se dysmay you not / for all this is done⁵ by the
crokyd dwarfe of y^e Fayrey, & all too begyle you / but
he can not greue you so ye speke no worde / how be it, 28
or⁶ we departe fro hym he wyll make vs all abasshyd,
for anone he wyll come after vs lyke a madd man by
cause ye will not speke to⁷ hym ; but, syr, I requyre
you as in goddys name / be nothyng afreyde, but 32
ryde forth surely, & euer be ware *that* ye speke to⁷
hym no worde' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'haue no dought

¹ all omitted. ² to haue. ³ yeere. ⁴ now.
⁵ Fol. xvii. back, col. 2. ⁶ ere. ⁷ vnto.

therof / for I had rather he were bresten¹ than I
 shulde speke one worde to hym' / than they rode to
 pass y^e ryuer, and than they founde there no thyng to
 4 let them, & so rode a² .v. legges / 'syr,' quod Huon, Huon vainly
imagines he has
now escaped
Oberon's toils.
 'we may well thanke god *that* we be thus skapyd thes
 dwarfe, who thought to haue dysceyuyd vs / I was
 neuer in such feer duryng my lyfe, god confounde
 8 hym' / thus they rode deusynge of y^e lytyll dwarfe
 who had done them so myche trouble.

¶ How kynge Oberon, dwarfe of the Fayrey,
 pursuyd soo moche Huon that he con-
 12 straynyd hym to speke to hym at laste.

Capitulo .xxiiii.

16  Han Gerames vnderstode y^e companye
 how they thought they were³ skapyd
 fro the dwarfe, he began too smyle, &
 sayd / 'syrs, make none a vance⁴ that Gerames warns
him not to be too
certain that his
dangers are yet
overcome,
 ye be out of his⁵ daunger / for I
 belyue ye shall soone se hym agayne' / & as sone
 20 as Gerame had spoke the same wordys / they sawe
 before them a bryge, y^e which they must passe, &
 they sawe y^e dwarfe on y^e other parte. Huon sawe and straightway
Oberon is seen on
a bridge before
them,
 him fyrst, & sayd, 'I se y^e deuyll who hath done vs
 24 so myche trouble' / Oberon herde hym, and sayde,
 'frende, thou doest me iniurey⁶ without cause, for I
 was neuer deuyll nor yll creature / I am ⁷a man⁷ as
 other be / but I coniure the by the deuyne puisance to
 28 speke to ⁸me.' than Gerames sayd, 'syrs, for goddes sake
 let hym alone / nor speke no word to hym / for by hys
 fayr langage he may dyssayue vs all / as he hath done
 many other; it is pyte that he hath leuyd so longe.'

¹ destroyed. ² about. ³ whree in orig.

⁴ bragging. ⁵ this. ⁶ Fol. xviii. col. 1.

⁷⁻⁷ omitted. ⁸ vnto.

than they rode forthe a good pase, and left the dwerfe
alone sore dyspleysyd / in that they wolde not speke to
hym / than he toke his horne, and sette it to his
mouthe and blewe it / whan Huon and his companye 4
herde it they hadde no power to ryde any ferther / but
they began all to synge / than Oberon the dwarfe
sayde, 'yonder company are fooles, and proude / that
for any salutacyon that I can gyue them they dysdayne 8
to answeere me / but by the god that made me, or¹
they escape me the refuse² of my wordes shall be dere
bought.' than he tooke agayne his horne, and strake it
.iii. tymes on his bowe / and cryed out aloude and 12
sayde, 'ye my men, come and apere before me' / than
there came to hym a³ foure hondred men of armes,
and demaundyd of Oberon what was his pleasure, and
who had dyspleasyd hym / 'Syr,' quod Oberon, 16
'I shall shewe you / how be it I am greuyd to shewe
it / here in this wode there passyd .xiii. knyghtes /
who dysdaynyth to speke to⁴ me / but to the entent
that they shall not mocke me / they shal derely by the 20
refusynge of theyr answeere / wherefore I wyll ye
go after them and slee them all, let none escape' /
than one of his knyghtes sayd, 'syr, for goddes sake
haue pyte of them' / 'sertenly,' quod Oberon, myne 24
honour sauyd, I can not spare them syn they dysdayne
to speke to⁴ me' / 'syr,' quod Gloriand, 'for goddes
sake do not as ye say / but, syr, worke by my counsell,
and after do as it please you / syr, I counsell you yet 28
ones agayne goo after them / for⁵ yf they do not⁶ speke
we shall slee them all ; for surely, syr, yf they see you
retourne agayne to them, so shortly they shall⁷ be in
grete feer' / 'frend,' quod Oberon, 'I shall do as ye 32
haue counsellyd me' / thus Huon & his company rode
forth a grete pace / and Huon sayd, 'syr, we are now

Oberon blows his
horn, and Huon
and his company
can ride no
further, but stop
and sing.

Another blast of
the fairy's horn
summons four
hundred armed
men.

Oberon bids the
warriors slay the
knights.

Gloriande begs
the dwarf to give
them some
respite.

Huon and his
company ride on
apace.

¹ before. ² refusal. ³ about. ⁴ unto.

⁵ Fol. xviii. col. 2. ⁶ then. ⁷ will.

- fro the dwerfe a¹ .v. leges; I neuer sawe in my lyfe
 soo fayre a cature in y^e visage / I haue grete meruayle
 how he can speke of god almyghty² / for I thinke he
 4 be a deuyll of hell / & sennys he spekyth of god, me
 thynke we ought to speke to hym / for I thynke suche
 a creature can haue no power to do vs any yll³ / I
 thinke he be not past of y^e age of .v. yeres / 'syr,' quod
 8 Gerames, 'as lytel as he semyth, & that ye take him
 for a chylde / he was borne .xl. yere afore y^e Natyuyte
 of our lord Jhesu Cryst' / 'surely,' quod Huon, 'I care
 not what age he be of / but yf he com agayne, yll hape
 12 come to me yf I kepe my wordes & spech fro him / I
 pray you be not dyspleasid.' & thus as they rode
 dyuysynge .xv. dayes / sodenly Oberon aperyd to⁴ them
 & sayd, 'syrs, are ye not yet aduysyd to speke to⁴ me? /
 16 yet agayne I am com to salute you in y^e name of y^e
 god that made & formyd vs, & I coniure you by
 y^e puysaunce that he hath geuin me / that ye speke to
 me, for I repute you for fooles to thinke thus to passe
 20 thorow my wod & dysdayne to speke to me / a, Huon,
 I knowe thee well ynough, & wether thou woldest go /
 I know all thy dedes, &⁵ thou slewest Charlot, and
 after dyscomfyted Amaury / and I knowe y^e message
 24 that Charlemayn hath chargyd the to say to the
 admyrall Gaudys, y^e which thyng is impossyble to be
 done without myne ayed / for without me thou shalt
 neuer acomplyshe this entrepryce / speke to me / & I
 28 shall do the that courtesy that I shall cause y^e to
 acheue thyne entrepryce, y^e which is⁶ impossyble
 without me / & whan thou hast acheuyd thy message I
 shal bringe thee agayne in to france in sauegard / &⁷
 32 I know y^e cause that thou⁸ wylt not speke to me /
 hath ben⁹ by reason of olde Gerames who is there with
 the. Therefore, Huon, beware of thy selfe; go no

He marvels at
Oberon's beauty,
and desires to
speak with him.

After fifteen days
Oberon re-
appears to them,

and salutes Huon
in the name of
God.

He recites Huon's
history,

and shows him
that without
fairy aid he will
never fulfil his
mission.

¹ about. ² almightie God. ³ euill. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ how.
⁶ else. ⁷ and omitted. ⁸ Fol. xviii. back, col. 1. ⁹ it is.

Oberon once more
begs Huon to
speak with him,

and Huon bids
him welcome.
The dwarf
promises him rich
reward for this
salutation.

further / for I knowe well it is thre dayes passyd sene
thou dydyst ete any mete to profyt the / yf thou wylt
beleue me / thou shalt haue ynough / of suche
sustenance as thou wylt wysshe fore. And as soone as 4
thou hast dynyd I wyll giue the leue to departe / yf it
be thy pleasure / of this haue no dought.' 'Syr,' quod
Huon, 'ye be welcom.' 'A,' quod Oberon, 'thy
salutasyon shalbe well rewardyd. know for trouthe 8
thou neuer dyddest salutasyon so profytable for thy
selfe / thou mayst thanke god / that he hathe sent the
that grace.'

¶ Of the grete meruaylles that Oberon 12
shewyd to¹ Huon / & of the aduentures
that fell. Capitulo .xxv.



Huon asks
wherefore Oberon
has pursued him.

Oberon tells how
he loves Huon,

and who he is.

His father was
Julius Caesar, and
his mother the
lady of the Secret
Isle, once loved by
the fair
Florimont.

Han Huon had well herd Oberon he
had grete merueyll, and demaunyd yf 16
it were trew that he hade sayd. 'ye
trewly,' quod Oberon, 'of *that* make
no dought.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I
haue greate merueyll for what cause ye haue alwayes 20
pursuyd vs' / 'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'know well / I
loue *thee* well by cause of the trouthe that is in the /
and therefore naturally I loue the / and yf thou wylt
knowe who I am, I shall shew the / trew it is Julius 24
cesar engenderyd me on the lady of the pryuey² Isle /
who was sumtyme welbelouyde of the fayre Florimont
of albaney. But by cause that Florimont who as than
was yonge / & he had a mother who dyd so myche / 28
that she sawe my mother and Florimont to gether in
a soletary place on y^e see syde / whan my mo³ther
parseyud / that she was spyed by Florimontes mother /
she departyd and left Florimont hyr louer in grete 32

¹ vnto.

² secret.

³ Fol. xviii. back, col. 2.

- wepynges and lamentasyons / and neuer saw hym after /
 & than she retournyd in to hyr¹ countre of y^e priuey²
 Isle / the which now is namyd Chyfalonnys, wher as
 4 she maryed after, & hade a sonne who in his tyme after
 was kynge of Egypt / namyd Neptanabus / it was he
 as it is sayde that engenderyd Alexander y^e grete, who
 aft causyd hym to dye / than after a .vii. yere Sezar
 8 passyd by the see as he went in³ to thesallee⁴ wher as
 he fought *with* pompee / in his way he passyd by
 Chyfalonnys / wher my mother fetchyd hym / and he
 fell in loue with her bycause she shewyd hym that he
 12 sholde dyscomfyt Pompee / as he dyde / thus I haue
 shewyd you who was my father / at my byrthe there
 was many a prynce⁵ and barons of the fayrre / and
 many a noble lady that came to se my mother whyles
 16 she trauayld of me. & among them theyr was one was
 not content / by cause she was not sent for as wel as
 y^e other, & whan I was borne / she gaue me a gyft, y^e
 whiche was, that whan I sholde passe .iii. yere of age I
 20 sholde growe no more / but thus as ye se my now /
 and whan she had thus done / and sawe that she had
 thus seruyd my by heyr wordis / she repentyd heyr
 selfe / and wolde recompense me a nother waye. Than
 24 she gaue my⁶ another gyfte / and that was, that I
 sholde be the fayreste creature that euer nature formyd /
 as thou mayst se my now / and another lady of the
 Fayrrey namyd Transline / gaue me a nother gyft, &
 28 that was, all that euer any man can knowe or thynke,
 good or yll, I do⁷ know it / the thyrd lady, to do
 more for me / and to please my mother y^e better / she
 gaue my / that there is not so fayre⁸ a contray / but
 32 that yf I wyll wyasse me selfe theyr, I shall be there
 incontynent with⁹ what nombre of men as I lyste / and

His mother's
island is
now known as
Chyfalonnys.
By one marriage
she was mother of
Neptanabus, the
father of
Alexander the
Great.

Cesar fell in love
with her on his
way to Theosaly
to fight with
Pompey.

At Oberon's birth
all the faeries
were invited to be
present except
one,

who in anger
caused him to
cease growing
when three years
old.

But she later
repented of her
wrath, and made
him the fairest of
mortals.

A second fairy
gave him the
power of seeing
into all men's
minds;

a third that of
going whither he
would by merely
wishing.

¹ owne. ² secret. ³ vnto. ⁴ place. ⁵ many Princes.

⁶ me. ⁷ should. ⁸ farre.

⁹ Fol. xix. col. 1.

Everything
indeed that he
requires he can
procure by merely
wishing for it.

He is king of
Momur.

Oberon offers
Huon sustenance.

No bird nor
beast is there that
keeps its wildness
in presence of
Oberon.
He will never
seem older,
and when he
leaves the world
he will find a
place ready for
him in paradise.

Huon accepts the
fairy's offer of
food and drink.

He and his
company sit down
at Oberon's
bidding.

more ouer, yf I wyll haue a castell or a palays at
myne owne deuyse, incontenent it shall be made / and
as sone gone agayne and¹ I lyste; and what mete or
wyne that I wyll² wysse for it,³ I shall⁴ haue it 4
incontenent; & also I am kynge of Momur, the whiche
is a⁵ .iiii. C. leges fro hense / and yf I lyste incontenent.
I can be there / know for trouthe that thou art aryuyd
at a good porte / I know well thou haste grete nede of 8
mete / for this .iiii. dayes thou hast had but small
sustenance / but I shall cause the to haue ynough / I
demaunde of the wether thou wylt haue mete and
drynke here in this medow, or in a palayes, or in a 12
hall; commaund where as thou wylt, & thou shalt haue
it for the and thy company' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I
wyll folowe your pleasour, and neuer do nor thynke
the contrary' / 'Huon,' quod he, 'as yet I haue not 16
shewyd all the gyftes that were gyuen me at my
byrthe / the .iiii. lady gaue me / that there is no byrde
nor beest, be they neuer so cruell / but yf I wyll haue
them I may take them with my hand, and also I shall 20
neuer seme⁶ elder than thou seest me now / and whan I
shall departe out of this worlde, my place is aperrelyd⁷
in paradyce / for I knowe that all thynges creatyd in
this mortall world must nedys haue an ende' / 'syr,' 24
quod Huon, 'such a gyft ought to be well kept' /
'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'well ye were counselyd when
ye spake to me / ye had neuer before so fayre
aduenture / shewe me by thy faythe / yf thou wylt 28
ete / & what mete thou wylt haue and what wyne thou
wylt drynke' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'so that I had
mete and drinke I care not what it were, so that I and
my company were fyllyd and ryd fro our famyn' / 32
than Oberon laughyd at hym and sayde / 'syrs, all ye
syte downe here in this medow / and haue no dought

¹ when. ² would. ³ it omitted. ⁴ should.
⁵ about. ⁶ beseme. ⁷ appointed.

When all are
satisfied, Huon
asks Oberon's
leave to depart.

Oberon sends for a
cup, and shows it
to Huon.

The dwarf makes
the sign of the
cross over it and
it fills with wine.

All guiltless men,
says Oberon, will
find the cup full
when raising it to
their lips.

Oberon bids Huon
drink of it, but he
fears that he has
sinned, and is
unworthy of it.

all satysfied and replete, and had well dynyd, ¹he sayd
to kyng Oberon / 'syr, whan it shall be your pleasour
I wolde ye shulde gyue vs leue to departe' / 'Huon,'
quod Oberon, 'I am ryght well content so to do / but ⁴
fyrste I wyll shewe you my iuelles' / than he callyd
Clariand, a knyght of the fayrey, and sayd, 'frende, go
and fetch to me my cuppe.' he dyd his commaunde-
ment. and whan Oberon had the cuppe in his hande / ⁸
he sayd to ²Huon / 'syr, behold wel ye se well ³this
cuppe is ⁴voyde and empty' / 'that is trewe, syr,'
quod Huon / than Oberon sete the cuppe on the
table, and sayde to ²Huon / 'syr, beholde the grete ¹²
power that god hath gyuen me, and how that in the
fayrey I may do my pleasour.' than he made ouer the
cuppe the signe of a crosse .iiii. tymes / than ⁵incontenent
the cuppe was full of wyne / and than he sayde, 'lo, ⁶
syr, ye may well se that this is done by the grace of
god / yet I shall shewe you the grete vertu that is in
this cuppe, for yf all the men in the worlde were here
assembelyd to gether, and that the cuppe were in the ²⁰
handes of any man beyng out of deedly synne, he
myght drinke therof his fyll / but who so euer offer his
hande to take it beyng in deedly synne, the cuppe shulde
lese his vertu / and yf thou mayst drynke therof, I ²⁴
offer to giue the the cuppe' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I
thanke you, but I am in dought *that* I am not worthy
nor of valoure to drynke ther of nor to touch the
cuppe / I neuer herd of suche a dyngnyte as this ²⁸
cuppe is of / but, syr, knowe for trouthe I haue ben
confessyd of all my synnes, and I am repentant and
sorowfull for *that* I haue done / and I do perdon and
forgyue all the men in the worlde what so euer iniury ³²
hath bene done to ³me / and I knowe not that I haue
done wronge to any creature, nor I hate no man.' and

¹ Fol. xix. back, col. 1.
⁵ and.

² vnto.
⁶ Behold.

³ that. ⁴ now.

so he toke the cuppe in bothe his handes and set it to
his mouth, and dranke of the good wyne that was
therein at his pleasour.

Huon however
seizes the cup,
and it fills in his
hands.

¶ Of the grete giftes that Oberon gaue to⁴
Huon, as his horne of Iuorey & his cuppe,
the whiche were of grete vertues / and
Huon after thought to proue the vertu of
them, whereby he was in grete perell of
dethe.

Capitulo .xxvi.

12 **W**han Oberon sawe that, he was ryght
glad, and came and enbrasyd Huon,
seyng how⁵ he was a noble man /
4 I gyue the⁶ this cuppe as it is in the
maner as I shall shewe thee in any

Oberon is
gladdened by this
proof of Huon's
innocence, and
entrusts the cup
to his keeping.

wyse for any thyng; for y^e dyngnyte of the cuppe be
16 thou euer trewe and faythfull / for yf thou wylt worke
by my counsell I shall ayed thee and gyue the socour
in all thyne affayres / but as soone as thou makyst any
lye the vertu of the cuppe wyl be lost and lese his
20 bounte, and besyde that thou shalt lese my loue and
ayed / 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I shall ryght well be
ware ther of / and now, syr, I requyre you suffer vs to
departe.' 'abyde yet,' quod Oberon⁶; 'yet I haue

Huon desires to
set forth,

24 another iuell the which I wyll gyue thee / by cause I
thynke there be trouthe and nobles in the. I wyll
gyue the a ryche horne of iuorey, the whiche is full of
grete vertu / the⁷ whiche thou shalt bere with the / it is
28 of so grete vertu / that yf thou be neuer so farre fro me,
as soone as thou blowest the horne / I shal here the /
& shall be incontenent with the with a .C. thousaunde
men of⁸ armes for to socoure and ayed the / but one
32 thyng I commaunde thee, on the payne of lesinge of

but Oberon delays
him to give him
his ivory horn,

one blast of which
will bring the
dwarf to his aide
with a hundred
thousand men.

¹ Fol. xix. back, col. 2.

² vnto.

³ saying that.

⁴ and.

⁵ (quoth he).

⁶ Huon misread in orig.

⁷ and.

⁸ at.

But it is only to
be blown when
Huon is in great
peril.

Huon takes leave
of King Oberon.

Oberon weeps on
parting with his
cup and horn.

The knights
reach a deep,
fordless river,

but a servant of
the fairy king
appears,

and by striking
the water makes
a path through it.

Huon and his
company pass
along it, and the
river closes in
behind them.

my loue and on iuberdy of thy lyfe / *that* thou be not
so hardy ¹to sowne thy² horne / without thou haste
grete nede ther of ; for yf thou do other wyse I auow to
god *that* creatyd me, I shall leue *thee* in as grete ⁴
pouerte & mysere as euer man was / so that who so
euer shulde se the in that case shulde haue pyte of
the' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I shall ryght well be ware
therof / now I desyre you let me departe' / 'I am ⁸
content,' quod Oberon, 'and god be thy gyde.' Than
Huon toke leue of kynge Oberon / and trussyd vp all
his baggage / and dyde put his cuppe in³ his bosome /
& the horne about his necke / thus they all tooke there ¹²
leue of [the] kynge. Oberon⁴ all wepyng enbrasyd
Huon / who had merueyll why he wept, and sayd,
'syr, why do you wepe?' / 'frend,' quod Oberon, 'ye
may well knowe / ye haue with you .ii. thynges that I ¹⁶
loue derely. god ayde you ; more I can not speke
to you' / thus the .xiii. knyghtes departyd, and so
they rode forthe a⁵ .xv. leges or more / *than* they sawe
before them a grete depe ryuer / and they coude fynde ²⁰
no gyde nor passage to pass ouer, and so they wyste
not what to do / *than* sodenly they sawe passe by
them a seruaunt of kynge Oberon berynge a rodde of
gold in his hande, and so without spekyng of any ²⁴
worde he enteryd in to y^o ryuer, and toke his rodde
and strake y^o water therwith .iii. tymes / *than* incon-
tynent the water withdrew a bothe sydes in suche wyse
that thir was a pathe that .iii. men myght ryde a ²⁸
frount / and that done he departyd agayne without
spekyng of any worde. *than* Huon and his company
entryd in to the water, and so passyd thorow without
any daunger / ⁶whan they were past they behelde⁷ ³²
behynde them, and sawe the ryuer close agayne and ran
after his olde course / 'by my faythe,' quod Huon /

¹ Fol. xx. col. 1. ² they *in orig.* ³ into.
⁴ and. ⁵ about. ⁶ and. ⁷ looked.

- 'I thynke we be inchantyd. I beleue surely kynge
 Oberon hath done this / but sene¹ we be thus skapyd
 out of perel, I truste fro ²hense forth we shall haue no
 4 dought' / thus they rode forthe to gether synggyng,
 and often tymes spake of the grete meruayles that they
 had sene kynge Oberon doone³ / and as they rode
 Huon beheld on his ryght hande & sawe a fayre
 8 medow well garnysshyd with herbes and floures, and
 in the myddes therof a fayre clere fountayne. than
 Huon rode thether / and alyghtyd and let there horses
 4 to pasture / than they sprede a clothe on the grene
 12 grase / and set there vp⁵ suche mete as kynge Oberon
 had gyuen them at there departyng / and there they
 dyde ete and drynke suche drynke as they founde in
 the cuppe / 'by my faythe,' quod Huon, 'it was a
 16 fayre aduenture for vs whan we met Oberon, and that
 I spake to hym / he hath shewyd me grete tokens of
 loue whan he gaue me suche a cuppe / yf I may
 retourne in to fraunce in saue garde, I shall gyue it to
 20 Charlemayne / who shall make grete feest⁶ therewith /
 & yf he can not drynke therof the barons of fraunce
 wyll haue grete ioy⁷ therof' / than agayne he re-
 pentyd hym of his owne wordes, and sayde, 'I am a
 24 fole to thynke or say thus / for as yet I can not
 tell what ende I shall come to / the cuppe that I haue
 is better worth than .ii. cytyes / but as yet I can not
 beleue the vertu to be in the horne as Oberon hath
 28 shewyd / nor that he may here it so farre of / but what
 so euer fortune fall, I wyll assay it yf it hath suche
 vertu or not' / 'A,⁸ syr,' quod Gerames, 'be ware
 what ye do / ye knowe well whan we departyd what
 32 charge he gaue you / sertenly you and we bothe are
 loste yf ye trespas his commaundement' / 'surely,'
 quod Huon, 'what so euer fortune fall, I shall⁹ assay it' /

They ride to a
 fair meadow, in
 the midst of
 which was a
 clear fountain.

There they alight,

and eat and
 drink of the
 store Oberon had
 given them.

Huon declares
 that if ever he
 return to France
 he will give the
 cup to the
 Emperor.

But he mistrusts
 its magic power,
 or that of the
 horn.

Gerames warns
 Huon not to
 make heedless
 trial of them,

¹ seeing.

⁶ on.

² Fol. xx. back, col. 2.

⁶ ioy.

³ doe.

⁷ sport.

⁸ alas.

⁴ goe.

⁹ will.

but Huon blows
the horn.

Oberon hears the
blast, and fears
his knight is
in peril.

With a hundred
thousand men he
approaches Huon.

Huon fears he
has done
foolishly.

Oberon curses
Huon when
he perceives
his folly.

Huon pleads that
the virtue of the
draught from the
cup has led him
into error, and
asks for pardon.

& so toke y^e horne & set it to his mouthe / and blew it
so loude that the woode rang / than Gerames and all
the other began to synge and to make grete ioy / than
Garyn sayd, 'fayre neuew, blow styll' ¹ / and so Huon ⁴
blewe styll with suche force *that* Oberon, who was in
his woode a².xv. leges of, herde hym clerely, and sayde,
³'a, very god,³ I here my frende blowe whom I loue
best of all the world / alas, what man is so hardy to do ⁸
hym any yll? / I wysshe my selfe with him with a
.C.M. men of⁴ armes' / incontynent he was nere to
Huon with a .C.M. men of⁴ armes / whan Huon & his
company herde y^e hoste comynge, and sawe Oberon ¹²
com rydyng on before,⁵ then they were afreyd; ⁶'it was
no merueyll / seyng the commaundement that Oberon
had geuen them before / than Huon sayd, 'a,⁷ syrs, I
haue done yll; now I se well we can not escape, but ¹⁶
that we be⁸ lykely⁹ to dye' / 'sertenly,' quod
Gerames, 'ye haue well deseruyd it' / 'holde your
peace,' quod Huon, 'dysmay you not / let me speke to
hym' / ther with Oberon cam to them and sayd / ²⁰
'Huon, ¹⁰of god be thou curssyd,¹⁰ where are they *that*
wyll do the any yll? why haste *thou* broken my
commaundement?' / 'a,¹¹ syr,' quod Huon, 'I shall
shewe you y^e trouthe / we were syttyng ryght now in ²⁴
y^e¹² medow, & dyd ete of that ye gaue vs / I belyue
I tooke to mych drynke out of the cuppe that ye gaue
me / the vertu of the whiche we well assayed / than
I thought to assay¹³ also the vertu of y^e ryche horne / to ²⁸
the entent that yf I shulde haue any nede / *that* I
myght be sure therof / now I know for trouthe that all
is trew *that* ye haue shewyd me / wherfore, syr, in y^e
honour of god I requyre you to pardon my trespas / ³²
¹⁴syr, here is my sword, stryke of my hede at your

¹ Fol. xxi. col 1.

² about.

³⁻³ Alas, my friends.

⁴ at.

⁵ them.

⁶ and.

⁷ alas.

⁸ are.

⁹ all.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted.

¹¹ Alas.

¹² this.

¹³ trye.

¹⁴ else.

- pleasour / for I knowe well without your ayde I shall
 neuer come to acheue myne enterpryse' / 'Huon,' quod
 Oberon, 'the bounte and grete trouthe that is in the
 4 constreynyth me to gyue the pardon / but beware fro
 hense forth be not so hardy¹ to breke my commaunde-
 ment.' 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke you' / 'well,'
 quod Oberon, 'I knowe surely that thou hast as yet
 8 moche to suffer / for ²thou must passe by a cyte namyd
 Tormont, wherin there is a tyrant callyd Macayr, &
 yet he is thyne owne vncle / brother to thy father,
 Duke Seuin / whan he was in fraunce he had thought
 12 to haue murderyd kyng Charlemayn, but his treason
 was knowyn / & he had ben slayne, and³ thy fater
 Duke Seuyne had not ben / so he was sent to y^e holy
 sepulcure to do his penaunce for the yll *that* he had
 16 done / & so after warde there he reuynsyd⁴ the feythe
 of our lord god / and tooke on⁵ hym the paynyns law /
 y^e whiche he hath kept euer syns so sore⁶ / *that* yf he
 here any man speke of our lord god, he wyl persuaunt
 20 him to the dethe / &⁷ what promys *that* he makyth, he
 kepyth none / therfore I aduyse *thee* trust not on
 hym / for surely he wyll put *thee* to dethe yf he may /
 & thou canst not skape yf *thou* go by that cyte /
 24 therfore I counsell the take not *that* way yf thou
 be wyse' / 'syr,' quod Huon / 'of your courtesay, loue,
 & good consell I thanke you / but what so euer fortune
 fal to me, I wyl go to mine vncle / & if he be suche one
 28 as ye say / I shall make hym to dye an yll dethe ;
 yf nede be I shall sowne my horne, & I am sure at my
 nede ye wyll ayde me' / 'of *that* ye may be sure,'
 quod Oberon / 'but of one thyng I defende⁸ the, be
 32 not so hardy to sowne the horne without thou be
 hurte, for yf thou do the contrary I shall so marter
thee that thy body shall not endure it' / 'syr,' quod

Oberon forgives
him.

Huon has much
to suffer yet.
He has to pass
by Tormont,
where lives the
tyrant Macaire.
He was brother
to Duke Sevin,

but has now
become a pagan.

If Huon go
near his city
he will surely
meet his death.

Huon asserts that
he will confront
his uncle.

Oberon bids
Huon obey his
commands in the
future.

¹ as. ² Fol. xxi. col. 2. ³ if. ⁴ renounced.

⁵ vpon. ⁶ strongly. ⁷ looke. ⁸ forbid.

Oberon bids fare-
well, and weeps
for love of Huon,

who will suffer
much misfortune

through his own
folly.

Huon, 'be assuryd your commaundement I wyl not breke' / than Huon toke leue of kyng Oberon, who was sory whan Huon departyd / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I haue meruayll why ye wepe; I pray you shewe me y^e 4 cause why ye do it' / 'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'the grete loue *that* I haue in¹ *thee* causyth me to do it, for as yet herafter *thou* shalt suffer so myche yll & traueyll / *that* no humayn tounge can tell it' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 8 'ye shewe me many thynges not gretely to my profyte' / 'sure,' quod Oberon, 'and yet thou shalt suffer more than I haue ²spoken of, and all by thyne owne foly.'

¶ How Huon aryued at Tormont, and found 12
a man at the gate who brought him to
lodge to the *prouostes* house in the towne.

Ca. xxvii.

Huon and his
knights arrive at
Tormont.



Huon salutes a
man at the gate in
the name of God.

After *that* Oberon had shewed huon 16
parte of *that* shuld fall to him, & was
departed, Huon & his company then
mounted on ther horses, & so rode
fourth so longe tyll they cam to y^e 20
cytye of tormount. gerames, who had
ben theyr before, when he saw y^e cytye he sayd to huon,
'a,³ *syr*, we be yll aryued here⁴ / behold here we be in
y^e way to suffre muche troble.' 'syr,' quod Huon, 'be 24
not dysmayd, for by y^e grace of god we shall ryght
well skape / for who *that* god wyll ayde no man can
hurt.' then they entred into y^e cytye, &⁵ as they cam to
y^e gate they met a man with a bow in his hand, who 28
had bene a sportinge with out y^e cytye / huon ryd
formest & salutid him in y^e name of god.⁶ 'frende,
what cal ye this cytye?' / y^e man stode styll & had
meruel what men they were *that* spake of god. he 32

¹ to. ² Fol. xxi. back, col. 1.

⁶ and.

³ Alas.

⁶ saying.

⁴ here omitted.

- behelde them & sayd, 'syr, y^e god in whose name ¹ye
 haue salutyd me kepe & defend thou frome in-
 combraunce / how be it I desyre you, in as myche as ye
 4 loue your lyues, speke softly *that* ye be not herd.
 for yf y^e lord of this citie know *that* ye be crysten men
 he wyll sle you all / syres, ye may truste me / for I am
 crystened, but I dare not be knowen therof / I haue
 8 such fere of y^e duke.' 'frende,' quod Huon, 'I pray
 thou shew me who is lorde of this cytye, & what ys his
 name' / 'syr,' quod he, 'he ys a false tyrant. when
 he was crystened he was named Macaire, but he hath
 12 renounsed god, & he ys so ferse & prowde *that* as now
 he hath² nothyng so moche as they³ *that* beleue in
 Ihesu cryst; but, *syr*, I pray you shewe me whether
 ye wyll go.' 'frende,' quod Huon, 'I wolde gladly go
 16 to y^e red see, & from thens to Babylone / I wold tary
 this daye in this cytye, for I & my company are sore
 wery.' 'syr,' quod he, '&⁴ ye wyll beleue me ye
 shall not entre in to this cytye to lodge / for yf y^e
 20 duke know⁵ it none could saue your lyues / therefore yf
 it be your pleasure I shall lede you a nother waye
 besyde y^e towne.' 'syr,' quod gerames, 'for goddes
 sake beleue hym *that* counseleth you so truly' / 'know
 24 for trouthe,' quod huon, 'I wyll not do thus. I see
 well it is almost nyght, the sonne goth low / therefore I
 wyll lodge this nyght here in this towne, what so euer
 fall;⁶ for a good towne wolde⁷ neuer be forsaken.'
 28 'syr,' quod y^e straunge man, 'sen⁸ it is so, for the loue
 of god I shall brynge you to a lodgyng where as ye
 shall be well & honestly lodgyd in a good mannes
 house that bileueth in god, named Gonder; he is
 32 prowost of the cytye, & well beloued with the duke.'
 'frende,' quod huon, 'god rewarde thou.' soo this man
 wente on before⁹ through the towne tyl he cam at y^e

The man—himself
a Christian—
warns Huon
against mention-
ing the name of
God in that land.

Macaire, who has
renounced the
Christian faith, is
lord of the city.

Huon is advised
by the stranger to
depart straight-
way.

but he refuses.

The stranger
promises to bring
him to a safe
lodging.

The knights
advance,

¹ Fol. xxi. back, col. 2.

² so in text.

³ them.

⁴ if.

⁵ knewe.

⁶ befall.

⁷ should.

⁸ seeing.

⁹ before omitted.

and see the provost at his gate. Huon salutes him in the name of God.

The provost repeats the first stranger's warning,

but offers Huon and his company shelter in his house.

They alight,

and tables are set before them.

After they have feasted Huon bids Gerames have proclamation made that all who will may sup freely at the provost's house that night.

prouostis house, whome they founde syttyng at his gate. Huon, that was a fayre speker, saluted hym in the name of god and ¹of the vyrgyn mary.¹ the prouost rose vp and beheld Huon & his company, &² ⁴ had³ meruill What they Were, sen⁴ they saluted hym in y^e name of god; then ⁵he sayd, 'syr, ye be Welcome, but a goddes name I desyre you speke softly that ye be not herde / for yf y^e duke of this cytye knew thou,⁶ ⁸ ye shuld vtterly be lost; but yf it please thou⁷ to tary this nyght here in my house / for y^e loue of god / all that I haue in my house shall be yours to do ther with at your pleasure. I abandon all to you / and, syr, ¹² I thanke god I haue⁸ in my house that, &⁹ yf ye hyde here this too yere, ye shall not nede to bye eny thyng without' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'of this frayre proffer I thanke you;' and soo he & his company alyghted, and ¹⁶ there were seruauntes ynow to take ther horses and to set them vp. then the host toke Huon & Gerames and y^e other and brought them to chambres to dresse. then¹⁰ / they¹¹ they came in to the hall, where as they ²⁰ founde the tables set and couered, and soo sate downe & were rychely seruyd with dyuers metys. when they had done & were rysen, Huon callyd Gerames & sayd, 'syr, go in hast in to the towne & get a cryer / & ²⁴ make¹² to be cryed in euery merket place & strete, that who so euer wolde¹³ cum & suppe at the prouostes house, as well noble as vn noble men, women & chyl dren, ryche & poure, and all maner of people, ²⁸ of what estate or degre¹⁴ they be of,¹⁵ shulde¹⁶ come merely & frely, and nothyng pay, nother for mete nor drynke, wherof they shuld haue as they wysshyd' / and also he commaunded gerames that all the mete that he ³² could get in the towne, he shuld by it & pay redy

¹⁻¹ omitted. ² he. ³ great. ⁴ seeing.

⁵ Fol. xxii. col. 1. ⁶ this. ⁷ you. ⁸ that.

⁹ & omitted. ¹⁰ them. ¹¹ then. ¹² cause. ¹³ will.

¹⁴ so ever. ¹⁵ of omitted. ¹⁶ shall.

- money for y^e same. 'syr,' quod Gerames, 'your pleasure shalbe done.' 'syr,' quod the host, 'ye know well all that ys in my house I haue abandoned to you /
- 4 therefore, syr, ye shall not nede to seke for any thing farther; take of my goodes at your plesure.' 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke you. I haue money ynough to furnyssahe¹ that we² nede of³ / & also, syr, I haue a
- 8 cuppe of greate vertu; for yf all y^e people that be within this cytye were here present, they shulde haue drynke ynough by reason of my cuppe, y^e which was made³ in 'the Fayry'⁴ / when the host herde Huon he
- 12 began to smyle, & beleuyd that those wordes had bene spoken⁵ in iapery⁶ / then Huon, not well aduysed, toke the horne of Iuorey from his necke & toke it to his host to kepe, sayenge,⁶ 'host, I take you this to
- 16 kepe / for it is a precyous thyng, therefore kepe it surely / that I may haue it agayne when I demaund it.' 'syr,' quod he, 'I shall surely kepe it, & when it please you it shall be redy,' & so toke y^e horne & layed it vp in a
- 20 coffer / but after fell suche an owre that Huon wolde haue had it rather then all the good in the worlde, as ye shall here more here after.

His host will not allow Huon to buy food for the supper, and offers his own stores;

but Huon says his cup will supply all that is needful.

Huon gives the provost his horn to keep for him.

- ¶ How Huon gaue a supper to all the pore
- 24 men of the cytye, and how the duke was vncke to Huon, and how the duke had Huon in to his Castell. Capitulo .xxviii.

- 7 Hus when Gerames had this com-
- 28 maundement of Huon, he went in to the cyte / and made to be cryed in dyuers places as he was commaundid to do. when this crye was made there was no begger, vacabonde, nor rybault



Gerames does Huon's bidding.

¹ all. ² we and of omitted. ³ Fol. xxii. col. 2.

⁴ Fayry Land. ⁵ but in text. ⁶ mine.

⁷ Fol. xxii. back, col. 1.

Four thousand
poor men come to
the provost's
house.
Gerames buys
such food as is
required.

Huon's cup
provides sufficient
wine.

Macaire's steward
comes into the
town to buy food
for his master's
supper,

but all has been
sold to Gerames.

The Duke is told
of Huon's supper.

In anger Macaire
swears he will
visit the provost's
house.

iogeler, mynstrell, olde nor yonge / but by grete flockys
they came all to the prouostes house / in numbres moo
then .CCCC. & Gerames bought vp bred, mete,
flesshe, & other vyteles, all that he could fynde in the 4
cytye, & payed for it / thus the supper was dressayd, &
euery man set at the tables. Huon serued them with
his cuppe in his hande, & made euery man to drynke
of that he put out of his cuppe into other pottes, & yet 8
euer the cuppe was full / When y^e people had well
eten & drounken the good wyne and were well chafed
in ther braynes, sum began to synge & some to slepe at
the table, & sum bet¹ ther fystes on the bourdes that 12
it was meruell to se y^e lyfe that they led, ²wher of
Huon had grete ioie / the same tyme the dukes
stewarde cam in to y^e towne to by hys maysters
supper / but he coude nother fynde bred nor flesshe, 16
nor no other vytelles, wherof he was sore dyspleasyd /
& then he demaundyd the cause why he found no
vytelles as he was accustomed to do / 'syr,' quod the
bochers & bakerys, 'in y^e house of Gonder the prouost 20
is lodged a yonge man who hath made to be cryed in
all the cytye, that all beggers & rybauldes shulde com
to supp at his lodgyng / & he hath bought vp all y^e
vytelles that he culde gete in the towne.' than the 24
paynem in greate dyspyte went to the palayes to the
duke, and sayd / 'syr, I can gete nothyng in y^e towne
for your supper; ther is a yonge man lodged in the
prouostes house that hath bought vp all the vytelles to 28
gyue a supper to all the beggers, vacabondes, & rybaudes
that can be found in y^e towne.' When the duke
vnderstode that he was sore dyspleasyd, & sware by
mahunde that he wolde goo see that supper / then he 32
commaunded all his men to be redy in harnes to goo
with hym / & as he was goynge out of his palayes
a traytour who had stolen priuely out of the prouostes

¹ did beat.

² Fol. xxii. back, col. 2.

- house, where as he had ben at supper with other / he¹
 sayd to the duke, 'syr, know for trouthe ther is in your prouostes house a knyght who hath gyuen a
 4 supper to all people that wolde cum thether, & soo ther is no begger, no rybaulde, nor other *that* woll² supe, but are come thether; and, *syr*, this knyght hath a cuppe better worth then all this cytye / for yf all the
 8 people betwene est and west shulde dye for lacke of drynke / they shuld haue al ynough, for as often as ye will empty the cuppe it wylbe full agayne incontynent.' when the duke herd that he had greате meruell, & sayd /
 12 suche a cuppe were good for hym, & sware by mahound that he wolde haue that cuppe / 'let vs goo thether, for my wyll is to haue that cuppe. ³all those knyghtes shall lose ther horses & baggage; ⁴I wyll leue them
 16 nothings.' so⁵ he went fourthe with .xxx. knyghtes, & restyd not tyll he came to the prouostes house & founde the gates open. when y⁶ prouost perseyued him he cam to Huon, ⁶sayd, 'a,' *syr*, ye haue done yll;
 20 here is come the duke in grete dyspleasure. yf god haue not pytye of *thou*⁸ I can not se how ye can escape without dethe.' '*syr*,' quod Huon, 'dysmaye ye not, for I shall speke so fayre *that* he shall be content.'
 24 then Huon with a mery chere cam to y⁶ duke & sayd, '*syr*, ye be welcom.' 'beware,' quod the duke, 'cum not nere me / for no crysten man may com in to my cytye without my lycence, wherfore I wyll thou
 28 knowest that ye shall all lose your hedes, and all *that* ye brought hether' / '*syr*,' quod Huon, 'now⁹ ye haue slayne vs ye shal wyn therby but lytell; ¹⁰it were grete wrong for you so to do.' 'I shall tell the,' quod y⁶
 32 duke, 'why I wyll so do; *that* is bycause ye be crysten men, therfor *thou* shalte be the fyrst / shew by¹¹ thy

A traitor comes to tell him of the marvels of Huon's cup.

Macaire resolves to obtain it from him.

The prouost sees the Duke approach.

Huon welcomes him.

Macaire answers that he will slay him and his knights,

because they are Christians.

¹ he omitted.

² would.

³ and.

⁴ Fol. xxiii. col. 1.

⁵ so omitted.

⁶ and.

⁷ alas.

⁸ you.

⁹ when.

¹⁰ and.

¹¹ me on.

Huon tells
Macaire that he
has brought the
poor men together
that they may
pray for him
hereafter

and invites the
Duke and his
escort to eat and
drink.

He apparently
conciliates him,
and Macaire
consents to sup.

Huon serves him
with fitting
honour.

He offers the
Duke his cup
filled with wine,
but it grows
empty when he
touches it.

Huon angers
Macaire by telling
him that this is
proof that he has
sinned.

faythe why haste thou assembled all this company here
to supper' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I haue done it by
cause I am goynge to y^e red see / & bycause these
pore men wyll pray to god for me *that* I may sauely 4
returne / syr, this is the cause that I haue made them
to suppe with me' / 'a,'¹ quod the duke, 'grete foly
hast *thou* spoken / for *thou* shalte neuer see fayre daye,
ye shall all lose your hedes' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'leue 8
all this; I pray you & your company syt downe & ete
& drynke at your pleasure, & I shall serue you as well
as I can; & then, syr, yf I haue done eny wronge,
I wyll make you a mendys in suche wyse *that* ye shall 12
be contente, for yf ye do me eny hurt it shall be to you
but a smale conquest. syr, me thynke yf ye wyll do
noblye ye shulde sumwhat forbere vs, for as I haue
harde say ye were ones crystenyd.' then the duke 16
sayd to Huon, 'thou hast sayd well; I am content to
suppe, for as yet I haue not supped.' then the duke
commaundyng euery man to be dysarmyd & to syt
downe at the tabyll / the whiche they dyd / than 20
Huon and Gerames seruyd them, and they were well
seruyd at that supper / ² then Huon tooke his cuppe and
came to y^e Duke, & sayd, 'syr, se you not here this
cuppe, the whiche is voyde and empty?' 'I se well.' 24
quod the duke, 'there is no thyng therin.' than Huon
made the sygne of the crosse ouer the cuppe, and
incontynent it was full of wyne / he toke y^e cuppe to
the duke, who had grete meruayll therof, and as sone 28
as the cuppe was in his handes it was voyde agayne.
'what!' quod the duke, '*thou* hast enchanted me.'
'syr,' quod Huon, 'I am none enchanter / but it is
for the synne that ye be in / set it downe, for ye are 32
not worthy to holde it; ye were borne in an yll³ hour' /
'how art thou so hardy,' quod the duke, 'to speke thus
to me? / I repute the for a proude fole / thou knowyst

¹ Well.

² Fol. xxiii. col. 2.

³ euill.

- well it lyeth in my power to dystroy the / there is no man dare say the contrary ; yet I pray the tell me thyn name, & where thou were borne, and wether thou goest, 4 & of what kynne thou art of.' 'syr,' quod Huon, 'for any thyng that shall¹ fall to me I wyll not hyde my name nor kinrede / ²syr, knowe for trouthe I was borne at Burdeux vpon Geron, and am sonne to duko seuyn 8 who ys deed .vii. yere passyd.' when y^e duke herd how huon was his nepheu, he sayd, 'a,³ the son of my brother / nepheu, why haste thou taken in this cyte eny other lodginge but myne? / shew me whether thou 12 wylte goo' / 'syr,' quod huon, 'I am goyng to Babylon to y^e admirall Gaudys, to do to hym a message fro kyng Charlemayne of fraunce / by cause I slew his sonne there.' 'he shewed his vncle all his ad- 16 uenture / & how the kyng had taken awaye his londe, nor shulde not⁵ haue it agayne tyll he had done his message to the admyrall. 'fayre nephew,' quod y^e duke, 'in lyke wyse I was hanysshed the realme of 20 Fraunce, & syns I haue renyed⁶ y^e faythe of Jhesu cryst, & syns I maryed here in this cuntrye a grete lady / by whome I haue grete landes to gouerne, wherof I am lord. 'nepheu, I wyll⁸ ye shall go & lodge with me in 24 my castell, and to morow ye shall haue of my barons to condute you tyll ye come too babylone' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke you ; syn it is your pleasure I wyll goo with you to your palayes.' then Gerames preuely sayd 28 to hym / 'syr, yf ye goo thether ye may hap⁹ repent your self.' 'it may wel be,' quod Gonder the prouost. then huon commaunded to trusse all ther gere & to make redy ther horses / & toke with hym his cuppe / 32 but he lefte styll his horne with the prouost. thus huon went with his vncle to his castell, & lay there all nyght / the nexte mornynge Huon cam to his vncle to
- Huon tells his name and parentage.
- The Duke recognises his nephew.
- Huon declares his mission.
- Macaire invites him to his castle.
- Gerames advises Huon to stay with the provost,
- but Huon goes with his uncle that night,

¹ may. ² therefore. ³ a omitted. ⁴ so. ⁵ he.
⁶ denied. ⁷ Fol. xxlii. back, col. 1. ⁸ that. ⁹ perhaps.

and he is induced
next day
to delay his
departure.

take his leue / 'fayre nepheu,' quod the duke, 'I requyre
you tary tyll my barons come *that* shall condute you in
your iourney.' 'syr,' quod huon, 'syn¹ it please you I
am content to abyde' / then² they sat³ downe to dynere. ⁴

¶ How the duke thought to haue murtherd
Huon, his owne nepheu, whyles he sat at
the table. Capitulo .xxix.⁴



Hen this traytor duke saw his nepheu ⁸
sit at y^e table, he called to him a
knight borne in fraunce callyd Geffrey,
who came out of fraunce with y^e duke,
& had in lyke wyse renyed⁵ y^e law of ¹²

Macaire plots the
death of his
nephew,

cryst, & he was secret with y^e duke / then y^e duke
priuely sayde to him, 'frend, goo & arme .c. or .vi.
score paynems, & cause them to cum hether / let them
sle my nepheu & all *that* are cum with him, for if one ¹⁶
skape ye shal lese my fauer' / 'syr,' quod Geffrey,
'your wyll shalbe done' / then Geffrey went into a
chambre / where as ther was .cc. harnes⁶ hangynge;
when he cam there⁷ he sayd to⁸ him self, 'alaa, good ²⁰
lord, this velayne traytour wolde slee y^e sonne of his
brother / who when I was in Fraunce dyd me ones a
greate curtesye, for I had bene deed & slayne if duke
seuyn his father ⁹ had not socouryd me / it is reason for ²⁴
that he dyd¹⁰ to me to rendre agayne sum rewards to
y^e¹¹ sonne / god confounde me yf he haue any yll for
me / but I shall rather cause the false duke to bye
derely y^e treason *that* he wolde do to his newew' / y^e ²⁸
same season there was in y^e castell a¹² .vii. score prisoners
of¹³ Frenchmen who were taken vpon y^e see, & the
duke kept them in prison to y^e entent to put them to

and he bids his
officer Geoffrey,
a knight from
France,
arm many pagans
to kill Huon.
But Geoffrey
recalls Duke
Sevin's kindness
to himself,

and resolves to
protect Huon.

In the castle
prison are seven
score Frenchmen
taken upon the
sea.

¹ seeing. ² then omitted. ³ them.
⁴ Chap. xxviii. *misprinted in orig.* ⁵ denied.
⁶ armours. ⁷ thether. ⁸ within. ⁹ Fol. xxiii. back, col. 2.
¹⁰ then. ¹¹ his. ¹² about. ¹³ all.

dethe; he was so cruell agaynst all crysten men / but
 god, who neuer forgettyth his frendes,¹ socouryd them /
 this Geffrey went to the presoners² / & sayd to the
 4 prysoners, 'syr,³ yf ye wyll saue your lyues, com out &
 folow me' / than y^e prisoners incontynent issuyd out
 of y^e pryson & folowyd Geffrey / & he brought them in
 to the chambre wher as all the harnes hangyd; he
 8 causyd them all to be armyd / & sayde, 'syr, yf ye
 haue corage & wyll to issue hense, it is tyme now ye
 shewe your vertu' / 'syr,' *quod* they, 'to dye in the
 quarell we shall do your commaundement / to com out
 12 of boundage in to fredom' / whan Geffrey hard them
 he was ryght ioyouse, & sayd, 'syr, knowe surely *that*
 there is here in this palayes at dyner / y^e son of duke
 Seuin of Bourdeux, & he is neuw to y^e duke lord of
 16 this hous / who was ones crystenyd, & hath renyed⁴ y^e
 feythe of oure lord god ⁵*Jhesu* Cryst,⁵ & he hathe
 commaundyd me to cause .vii. score paynems to be
 armyd to com & to sle his neuw & all his company.'
 20 thus whan they were all armyd & swordes by there
 sydes, they folowyd Geffrey to the palayes / & whan
 they enteryd / Huon sayd to y^e duke his vncl / 'syr,
 these men in hernes *that* enteryd in to this hall, be
 24 they suche as ye haue commaundyd to com hether to
 condute me in my iourney!' 'a,⁶ Huon,' *quod* y^e duke /
 'it is other wyse than *thou* thynkest / thinke surely to
 dye, there is no remedy / thou shalt neuer se fayre day
 28 more' / than he sayde, 'syr, steppe forthe, loke that no
 crysten man skape you, but let them all be slayne.'

Geoffrey arms the
prisoners,

and tells them of
Huon's visit to
the traitorous
Macaire.

They approach
Macaire and
Huon,

and the Duke,
mistaking them
for his pagan
soldiers, bids his
nephew prepare
to die.

7¶ How by the ayde of Geffrey & of the
 prisoners Huon was socouryd, and slewe
 32 all the paynmys, and the duke fiede / and
 after besegyde the castell. Ca. .xxx.

¹ seruants. ² Prison. ³ sirs. ⁴ denyed.
⁵⁻⁵ omitted. ⁶ No. ⁷ Fol. xxiii. col. 1.

Huon makes
ready for
resistance.



At Geoffrey's
bidding the
Frenchmen kill
all the pagans in
the palace.

Huon turns upon
his uncle, who
flees,

and leaping from
a window, runs
from the castle.

The Frenchmen
close the gates
and raise the
drawbridges.

The Duke collects
more than ten
thousand men to
attack the castle.

Han Huon sawe y^e malyse of his vncl
 & his false treason he was sore
 abasshyd / & rose vp sodenly & set
 his helme on his heed, & toke his 4
 sword in his hande / than Geffrey cam
 in and cryed, 'saynt Denys, ye noble frenchemen, take
 hede *that* no paynym scape alyue, but slee them all
 with sorowe' / than¹ the frenchemen drewe out there 8
 swordys & fought with the paynmys on all partes, so
that within a short tyme they were all slayne / & whan
 the duke sawe how they were no paynmys *that* slew his
 men / he was in grete fere of his lyfe / & so fledde away 12
 in to a secrete chambre / whan Huon perceyuyd that
 they were frenchemen *that* ²socouryd hym, he per-
 ceuyd³ the Duke with his sworde in his hande all
 bloody with the blode of the paynmys that he had 16
 slayne / whan the traytour⁴ Duke sawe that his newew
 so folowyd hym, he fledde fro chambre to ⁵chambre tyll
 he came to a window openyng vpon the garden syde /
 & so lept out there at and ran away, wherof Huon and 20
 Geffray and the other frenchemen were ryght sorowfull.
 than they cloyd the gates and lyft vp the brygges, to
 the entent that they shulde not be taken within /
 than they came in to y^e halle where as one toke 24
 queyntance of an other, where of they had gret ioy /
 but yf god had not socouryd them ther ioy had ben
 tornyd to sorowe / for y^e Duke who was skapyd / whan
 he cam in to the towne / he made a crye that as many 28
 as were able to bere harnes⁶ shulde come to hym / so
 that he and all that he coude make came with hym
 before the palayes, ⁷more than .x. M. persons / and
 they all sware the deth of the crysten men within the 32
 palayes / whan the Duke sawe ⁸he had suche⁹ nombre

¹ than omitted. ² had thus. ³ pursued. ⁴ trayterous.
⁵ Fol. xxliiii. col. 2. ⁶ armour. ⁷ being.
⁸ that. ⁹ a.

he was ioyfull / ¹than he commaundyd his engyns to
 be reysyd vp & ladders on euery parte / & ther with
 pykes & mattokes they brake downe a corner toure /
 4 and the crysten men within defendyd them ²valyauntly /
 But there defence shulde ³lytyll auaylyd them, and ⁴
 our lorde god had not ⁵socoured them / whan Huon
 knew the daunger that they were in he was sore
 8 dyspleysyd, and sayde, 'a, good lord, I ought to be sore
 anoyed ⁶whan I se that we be thus kept in by myne
 vncle / I fere me we shall newer se more dayes' / than
 Gerames sayd, 'syr, for the loue of god blowe now your
 12 horne' / 'syr,' ⁷quod Huon, 'it is not in my power to
 do it / for y^e prouoste Gonder hath it in kepyng' / 'ha,
 Huon,' quod Gerames, 'in an ylloure we were aqueyntyd
 with you / for now by your folly and pryde we are in
 16 the way of destructyon' / thus as they were deusyng /
 Gonder the prouost cam to the Duke, and sayde, 'syr,
 I haue grete merueyll that ye wyll thus dysstroy your
 owne palayes, grete folly ye do therin / syr,' ⁸I wolde
 20 counsell you ⁹leue this assault, ¹⁰& lete there be a pease
 made betwene you and your neuw on the condycion to
 let hym and his company go sauely away' / 'prouost,'
 quod the Duke, 'I praye the go & do the beste *that*
 24 *thou* kanst. I wyll do as *thou* doest counsell me' /
 than y^e prouost cam to y^e palayes & sayde to Huon /
 'syr, for goddes sake speke with ¹¹me' / 'what art *thou*?'
 quod Huon / 'I am your host y^e prouoste / and I
 28 requyre you, in as moche as ye loue your lyues, kepe
 well this palayes' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'of ¹²your good
 counsell I thanke you / & I desyre you, for y^e loue *that*
 ye bere me, & in *that* we wolde helpe to saue my lyfe /
 32 and ¹³to delyuer me agayne y^e horne of Iuorey *that*
 I toke you to kepe / for *without that* I can not scape

The Frenchmen
make a gallant
resistance,
but the chances
are against them.

Huon remembers
how he gave his
horn to the
provost,
and therefore
cannot call on
Oberon for aid.

The provost urges
Macaire to make
peace with Huon,

and the Duke,
accepting his
counsel, sends
him to negotiate
with his nephew.

On his arrival
before the castle
Huon begs him to
restore the horn,

¹ and. ² themselves. ³ had. ⁴ if. ⁵ mightily.

⁶ agreed. ⁷ Alas. ⁸ rather. ⁹ to.

¹⁰ Fol. xxiii. back, col. 1. ¹¹ to. ¹² for. ¹³ as.

- slewe downe the paynyns that it was meruayll to se
 the blode ron downe the stretes lyke a ryuer / kynge
 Oberon made it to be cryed that as many as wolde
 4 receyue baptyme theyr lyues shulde be sauyd / so that
 therby there were many *that* were crystenyd / than
 kyng Oberon came to the palayes / whan Huon saw
 hym he went and thankyd hym of his socour at that
 8 tyme of nede / 'frende,' quod Oberon, 'as longe as ye
 beleue and do my¹ commaundementes I shall neuer fayle
 to socoure you in all your affayres' / thus all that were
 in the towne and wolde not beleue on² god were slayne /
 12 than the Duke was taken and brought to the palayes to³
 Huon / whan he sawe his vncl taken he was ioyfull,
 and than the Duke sayde / 'fayre nephew, I requyre
 you haue pyte of me' / 'a, vntrew traytour,' quod
 16 Huon / 'thou shalt neuer departe hense alyue, I shall
 neuer respyght thy dethe' / than with his sworde he
 strake of his vncl hede / than he made his body to be
 hangyd ouer the walles of the towne / that his ylnes
 20 myght alwayes be had in memory, and to be an ensample
 to all other / thus that countre was delueryd fro that
 traytoure.

Oberon and his
men slay all the
pagans who
refuse to be
baptised.

The Duke is
delivered into
Huon's hands,

who straightway
kills him.



- ¶ How kynge Oberon defendyd⁴ Huon /
- 24 that he shulde not go by the toure of the
 gyaunt / to the whiche Huon wolde not
 accomde, but went thether / wherby he was
 in grete daunger of dethe / and of the
- 28 damesell that he founde there who was his
 owne cosyn borne in fraunce.

Capitulo .xxxii.

¹ Fol. xxiii. col. 2.

² in.

³ vnto.

⁴ forbod.

Oberon takes
leave of Huon,

and foretells
misfortune which
his own folly will
bring upon him.

The fairy bids
him avoid the
tower of
Dunother.

For its entrance
is kept by two
men of brass,
always
brandishing iron
flails;

within dwells the
giant Angolafer,
whom none can
resist.



1 E haue well² herd how kyng Oberon
cam and socouryd Huon, & whan all
was done than he sayde to³ Huon, 'my
dere frende, I wyll take my leue of 4
the / for I shall neuer se the agayne
tyll⁴ thou hast sufferyd as moche payne & yll and
pouerte and dyseese that it well be herde to declare it,
and all through thyne owne foly' / whan Huon herde 8
that all⁵ a frayde &⁶ sayde / 'syr, me thynke ye say
grete wronge, for in all thynges to my power I wyll
obserue your commaundement' / 'frende,' quod Oberon,
'sene⁷ thou wylt do so, remembre than thy promes / and 12
I charge the, on⁸ payne of thy lyfe and lesynge for euer
my loue / that thou be not so hardy⁹ to take the way to
the toure of Dunother / the whiche is a meruelous grete
toure standynge on the see syde / Iulius Cesar causyd 16
it to be made / and there in I was longe¹⁰ noryssyd ;
thou neuer sawest so fayr a toure nor better garnysshyd
with chambers and glase windouse / and with in
hangyd with ryche ¹¹tapestrey / at the entre of the gate 20
there are .ii. men of brasse, eche of them holdynge in
there handys a flayll of Iren, wher with without sesse
daye and nyght they bete by such a mesure / that
whan the one stryketh with his flayll the other is lyft 24
vp redy to stryke / and they bete¹² so quykely¹³ / that
a swallow flyyng¹⁴ can not passe by vnslayn / and with in
this toure there is a Gyaunt namyd Angolafer ; he toke
fro me y¹⁵ toure and a ¹⁴wyght harnes¹⁴ / of suche vertu 28
that who so euer hath it on his body / can not be hurt
nor wery / nor he can not be drownyd in no water nor
burnyd with fyre / therefore, Huon, my frende, I charge
the go not *that* way as myche as 'thou feeryst my 32
dyspleysour / for agaynst that Gyaunt *thou* canst make

¹ Fol. xxiii. back, col. 1. ² all. ³ vnto. ⁴ vntill.

⁵ being.

⁶ he.

⁷ seeing.

⁸ vpon.

⁹ as.

¹⁰ time.

¹¹ Fol. xxiii. back, col. 2.

¹² amite.

¹³ suddainly.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ stronge armour.

no resyistence' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'knowe for trougt
the day that I departyd out of fraunce I toke on¹ me /
that any aduenture that ²I myght here² of, though it
4 were neuer so perelous / that I shulde³ neuer eschew it
for any fere of deth / and,⁴ syr, I had rather dye than
to for sake to fyght with that Gyaunt / there is no man
shall let me / &, syr, I promyse you or⁵ I retourne
8 agayne to conquere your sayd ⁶wyght hernes⁶ / it shall
do me good seruyce here after; it is a thyng not to
be forsaken; and yf I nede of your ayed I shall blowe
my horne, and ye wyll come and socoure me' / 'Huon,'
12 quod Oberon / 'by the lorde that sauyd me, yf thou
brekest the horne in the blowynge thou shalt haue noo
socoure nor ayed of me' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'ye may
do your pleasure & I shall do myne' / than Oberon
16 departyd without more spekyng / and Huon abode in
y^e Cyte, y^e whiche he gaue to Geffrey and to the
prouoste his hoste, and all the lond that his vncle
helde / than he made hym redy, and toke gold and
20 syluer plente, and tooke his leue of Geffrey & of his
hoste, and of all other / & so he and his company
⁷departyd / and so rode ouer hylles & dales nyght and
day a certen spase without fyndynge of any aduenture
24 worthy to be had in memory / at last he came nere to
the see syde where as the toure of y^e Gyaunt was;
whan Huon saw it he sayde to⁸ his company, 'Syr,
yonder I se a toure / the whiche was defendyd⁹ me by
28 Oberon / but as god helpe me / or it be nyght I wyll se
what ys within it / what so euer come therof' / than
Gerames behelde the toure and began to wepe,¹⁰ & sayd,
'a, Huon, he is a fole *that* agreeth to y^e counsell of a
32 chylde. syr, for godes sake beware that ye breke not
the commaundement of kynge Oberon, for &¹¹ ye do

Huon entreates
permission to
approach the
tower and fight
with the giant;

but Oberon
refuses it,
and angers Huon.

Huon leaves
Tormont,

and after a long
journey sees the
tower of the giant
by the seashore.

Huon declares he
will enter it.

His companions
deploure his folly.

¹ vpon. ²⁻³ might be heard. ³ would. ⁴ therefore *added*.

⁵ ere. ⁶⁻⁸ stronge armour. ⁷ Fol. xxv. col. 1. ⁸ vnto.

⁹ forbidden.

¹⁰ sorow.

¹¹ if.

But the knight
replies that he has
come to seek
adventures.

Huon takes leave
of his company,

and alone on foot,
carrying his cup
and horn,

he reaches the
castle of
Dunother.

• He seeks to avoid
the two men of
brass with their
flails of iron,

and sees a golden
basin tied to a
marble pillar.

Thrice he strikes
it with his sword,
and the sound of
the blows reaches
Sebylle, a damsel
imprisoned in the
fortress.

grete yll is lyke to come to¹ you' / 'syr,' quod Huon,
'yf al the men now lyuyng shulde defend² me to go
thether, I wolde not obey them / for ye knowe well I
departyd out of Fraunce for none other thyng but to 4
serche the straunge³ aduentures. 'I demaunde no thyng
elles but to fynd aduentures / therfore speke no more to
the contrary / for or⁵ I slepe I wyll fyght with the
Gyaunt / for though he be more harder then Iren, 8
'I shall sle hym or he me, and you Gerames, and all the
other / abyde you here in this medow tyll⁷ I retourne
agayne.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, all⁸ wepyng / 'it sore
dyspleasyth me that it wyl be no better, therefore I 12
recommaunde you to¹ the sauegard of god' / thus Huon
departyd and left his company / petuosly⁹ complaynyng/
Huon armyd hym¹⁰ and so tooke his way / and kyst all
hys men one after another / & toke with hym his horne 16
and cuppe / so al alone an fote he went forth, and
restyd not tyll⁷ he came to the gate of the castell of
Dunoster. than¹¹ he saw .ii. men of brasse that without
seasyng bet with there flaylles / he behelde theym well, 20
and thought it was in a maner impossyble to enter
without deth / ¹²than he had greate meruayll, and sayde
to hym selfe¹² / howe kynge Oberon had shewyd hym
¹³the trouthe, and thought without y^e ayde of the grace 24
of god it were impossyble to enter / than¹⁴ he behelde
all about yf there were any other entre¹⁵ / at last he saw
nere to a pyller of marbell a basyn of gold fast tyed
with a cheyne / than he aprochyd nere ther to and 28
drew out his sworde, wher with he strake thre grete
strokes on the basyn / so that the sounde ther of myght
well be harde in to the castell / within the toure there
was a damesell called Sebylle / whan she harde the 32

¹ vnto. ² forbid. ³ strangest. ⁴ and. ⁵ ere.
⁶ yet. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ in. ⁹ heauily. ¹⁰ himself. ¹¹ there.
¹²⁻¹³ Then he began to consider hereon with himselfe.
¹³ Fol. xxv. col. 2. ¹⁴ whereuppon.
¹⁵ place to enter.

Original
MS. A. 1. 1. 1.
1213

basyn sowne / she had grete meruayll¹ / than she went to
a wyndowe / and lokyd out and saw Huon that wolde
enter. than² she went bake agayne & sayde, 'a, good
4 lorde, what knyght is yonder without that wold enter? /
for yf the Gyaunt awake anone he wylbe slayne / for yf
there were a .M. knyghtes to gether they shulde³ sone
be dystroyed suerly. I haue grete desyre for⁴ to knowe
8 what he is and where he was borne / for as me semyth
he shulde be of Fraunce to / know the trouthe I wyll
go to y^e wyndow⁵ to se yf I may haue of hym any
knowlege' / than she went out of her chambre, and
12 went to a wyndow nere to the gate / and lokyd out
and sawe Huon all armyd abydyng at the gate / than
she behelde the blasure of his shyld, wherin was
purtruyed .iii. crosses gowlls⁶ / wherby she knew wel
16 he was of Fraunce. 'Alas,' quod she, 'I am but lost
yf the Gyaunt knawe that I haue ben here' / than she
retournyd agayne in hast, & went to the chambre dore
where as the Gyaunt lay and slept, and she parseyuyd
20 he was⁷ a slepe, for he rowtyd that it was meuyll to
here / than she retournyd agayne quykely to the gate;
than⁸ she⁹ openyd a wycket, out of the whiche there
issuyd suche a wynde that it causeth y^a two men with
24 there flaylles stonde styll in rest / whan she had
openyd the wyket hastely she retournyd in to her
chambre /⁸ whan Huon sawe the lytyll¹⁰ wyket open he
auaunsyd hymselfe & enteryd, for the two men with
28 theyr flaylles were in rest / than he went forth, ¹¹
thynkyng to fynd them that had openyd the wyket,
but he was sore abashed when he coude fynde no
creature / there were so many chambres that he wist
32 not wheder to goo to fynde that he sought for / thus he
serched all about /⁸ at last he sawe aboute a pylier

Sebylle sees Huon
from a window,
and fears that the
giant will slay
him.

She goes to a
window near
the gate,
and perceives
from his shield
that the stranger
is from France.

She finds that
the giant is
asleep,

and therefore
ventures to open a
wicket which
causes the men of
brass to stand at
rest, and
repairs again to
her chamber.

Huon enters
through the
wicket,

but marvels to see
no living creature
within.

¹ thereat. ² whereuppon. ³ all. ⁴ for omitted.

⁵ agayne. ⁶ of gould. ⁷ yet. ⁸ and.
⁹ she omitted. ¹⁰ Fol. xxv. back, col. 1. ¹¹ further.

Original
MS. A. 1. 1. 1.
1213

But he notices the
dead bodies of
fourteen men.
Huon desires
to return,

but finds the
wicket closed and
the men of brass
again in motion.

Sadly he walks
through the
castle,
when he hears the
voice of a damsel
weeping,
and goes to her.

He meets her,
and she tells him
of his danger.

She is, she says,
a niece to Duke
Sevin.

She had
accompanied her
father to the Holy
Sepulchre,

and on their
return they were
shipwrecked on
the coast near the
castle.

The giant had
seen them,
and had slain all
her companions,
but had spared
herself.

.xiii. men lye deed / wher of he had grete meruayll /
and sayd that he wolde retourne backe agayne. than
he went out of the hall and came to the gate, wenyng
to haue founde it open. But it was closyd by it selfe, 4
and the men agayne¹ bet with there flaylles. 'Alas,'
quod Huon, 'now I se well I can not skappe fro
hense' / than he retournyd in to the castell & harkenyd,²
and as he went serchyng aboute³ he harde the voyce of 8
a damesell peteously wepyng / he came there as she
was, & humbly salutyd her, and sayd / 'fayre damesell,
I can not tell yf ye can vnderstonde my langage or not /
know of you I wolde why⁴ ye make this grete sorow.' 12
'Syr,' quod she, 'I wepe by cause I haue of you grete
petye / for yf the Gyaunt here within, who is⁵ a slepe,
hap⁶ go to wake,⁶ ye are but deed and lost.' 'Fayre
lady,' quod Huon, 'I pray you shew me what ye be, 16
and where ye were borne.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'I am
doughter to Guynemer, who in his tyme was erle of
saynt Omers, & am nese to duke Seuyne of Burdeux' /
whan Huon harde that ryght humbly he kyssyd her, 20
and sayde / 'dame,⁷ know for trouthe⁸ ye are my nere
kynse woman / for I am sonne to duke Seuyne; I pray
you shew me what aduenture hath brought you in to
this castell.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'my father had deuocyon 24
to se the holy sepulchre / & he louyd me so well that
he wolde not leue me behynd hym / & as we were on
the see nere to the Cyte of Escalonne in Surrey, there
rose a grete tempest in⁹ the see / so that y^o wynde 28
brought vs¹⁰ nere to¹¹ this castell / and the Gyaunt beyng
in his toure, sawe vs in grete daunger of drownyng,
and that we were dryuyn in to this porte / he came
downe out of his palayes and slew my father and all 32
them that were with hym except my selfe, & so

¹ did. ² aboute. ³ carefully. ⁴ wherefore.
⁵ yet. ⁶⁻⁸ to awake. ⁷ Madame. ⁸ that.
⁹ vpon. ¹⁰ Fol. xxv. back, col. 2. ¹¹ vnto.

- brought me in to this toure, where as I haue bene this
 .vii. yere ¹and neuer harde one masse¹; & now, cosyn,
 I pray you what aduenture hath brought you hether in
 4 to this straunge countre?' 'Cosyn,' quod he, 'sen² ye
 wyll knowe of myne aduenture /-I shall shew you the
 trouthe / kynge Charlemayn hath sent me in message
 to the admyral Gaudyse in Babylon / I bere hym a
 8 message by mouthe & by letters / and as my way lay I
 am come by this toure / and I demaundyd of a paynym
 who was within this toure, and he answeryd me and
 sayd how here shulde be a grete and an orryble Gyaunt
 12 who hath done myche yll³ to them that hath passyd
 this way, and I thought to passe this way to fyght
 with hym and to⁴ dystroy hym, and to delyuer the
 countre of hym / & I haue lefte my company hereby in
 16 a valye to tary for me' / 'dere cosyn,' quod she, 'I
 haue grete meruayll that ye wolde take on you suche a
 foly / for yf ye were .v.C. men to gether well armyd, ye
 durst not all abyde hym yf he were armyd with his
 20 armure / for none can endure agaynst hym / therefore,
 cosyn, I counsell you to retourne backe agayne or he do
 wake, and I shall open you the wyket so *that* ye shall
 passe out without⁵ daunger.'

He had kept her
captive for seven
years.


Huon telle
Sebylle how he is
on his way to
Babylon,

but will now fight
and slay the
giant.

His cousin warns
him that five
hundred men
could not conquer
her cruel master,

and bide him
return whence he
came.

- 24 ¶ How the damesell, cosyn to Huon, shewed
 hym the chambre where as the Gyaunt
 slept / and how he went and wakyd hym /
 and of the good armure that the Gyaunt
 28 delyueryd to Huon. Capitulo .xxxiii.

- 6  Han Huon had well vnderstonde y⁶
 32 damesell, he sayd, 'cosyn, know for
 trouthe, or⁷ I departe hense I wyll se
 what man he is / it shall neuer be
 sayd to my reproche in y⁶ courte of

Huon begs
permission to see
the giant.

¹⁻¹ in great distresse and miserie.

² seeing.

³ euill.

⁴ to omitted.

⁵ any.

⁶ Fol. xxvi. col. 1.

⁷ ere.

any prynce / that for fere of a¹ myscreaunt I shulde be
of so faynt a courage that I durst not abyd hym /
certainly I had rather dye than such a faulte shuld
come to me.' 'A, cousyn,' quod she, 'then I se 4
wel both you and I are dystroyed / but sen² it ys
thus, I shall shew you the chambre where as he
slepeth / and whan ye haue sene hym yet³ ye may
retourne / fyrst go in to this chambre *that y^e se here* 8
before you, wherin ye shall fynde bred and wyne
and other vytayll / & in the nexte ye shall fynde
clothes of sylke and many ryche iuelles / than in the
thyrd chambre ye shall fynde the .iiii. goddes of y^e 12
paynyns, they be all of fyne massye gold ; and in the
fourth ye shall fynde the Gyaunt lyeynge a slepe on a
ryche bed ; than, syr, yf ye ⁴beleue me, I wolde counsel
you to stryke of his hede slepynge / for yf he awake ye 16
can not skape without deth.' 'Dame,'⁵ quod Huon,
'and god wyll it shall neuer be ⁶layde to my reproche /
that I shulde stryke any man *with out defyaunce.*'⁷
Than Huon departyd fro the lady, his sword⁸ in his 20
hande and⁹ helme on his hede, and his shyld aboute
his neke, and so enteryd in to the fyrst chambre, & so³
in to the secounde & thyrd, where as he saw the .iiii.
goddes. When he had wel regardyd them he gaue 24
eche of them a stroke with his sworde / & than he
enteryd in to y^e chambre where as the Gyaunt lay
slepynge / Huon ¹⁰regardyd hym myche¹⁰ / and the bed
that he lay on, the whiche was so ryche / that y^e vlew 28
therof coud not be prysyd / y^e curteyns, couerynge / &
pelous were of suche ryches that it was grete beaute to
beholde them. Also the chambre was hangyd with
ryche clothes ¹¹and the flowre coueryd with carpettes / 32
whan Huon had well regardyd all this, & well adnysyd¹²

Sebylle directs
him to the giant's
chamber,

and advyses him
to kill the
monster while
asleep.

Huon declares
he will not be
guilty of such
treachery.

Huon finds
the giant lying
on a richly
furnished bed.

¹ any. ² seeing. ³ then. ⁴⁻⁴ were of my mind.

⁵ Ladie. ⁶⁻⁶ said to my disgrace. ⁷ his knowledge.

⁸ being. ⁹ his. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ noted him aduisedly.

¹¹ Fol. xxvi. col. 2.

¹² considered of.

the Gyaunt, who was .xvii. fote of lengthe, & his body
 furnisshyd therafter, & al his other membres; but a
 more fouler and hydeous creature was neuer sene / with
 4 a grete hede, &¹ grete eeres, & a comesyd nose / and
 eyen brynnyge² lyke a candell. 'A, good lorde,' quod
 Huon / 'I wolde kyng Charlemyne were here to se vs
 two fyght / for I am sure than or³ he departyd my
 8 peace shulde be made with hym. ⁴A, swete vyrgyn
 mary,⁴ I humbly requyre the to be ⁵medyatrix to thy
 swete sonne / to be⁵ my socoure agaynst this ennemye /
 for yf it be not his⁶ pleasure agaynst hym I can not⁷
 12 endure.' Than Huon ferslye auansyd forth & made y^e
 sygne of the crosse / castyng in his mynde what he
 myght do / for he thought that⁸ yf he slew hym slepyng
 it shulde be a grete reproche to hym, & shulde⁹ be sayd
 16 that he had slayne a man deed / and than¹⁰ he sayd to
 hym selfe, 'shame haue I yf I touche hym or I haue
 defyed hym' / than Huon cryed out alowde & sayd,
 'aryse, thou hethen hounde, or¹¹ I shall stryke of thy
 20 hede' / whan the Gyaunt hard Huon speke / he awoke
 fersly, & behelde Huon, & so¹² rose vp so quykely *that*
 in the rysyng he brast¹³ the bedstede that he lay on¹⁴ /
 than he sayd to Huon / 'frende, they that sent the
 24 hether louyd the but lytyll nor doughtyd not me.' And
 whan Huon harde the Gyaunt speke frenche he had
 grete meruayll / and sayd, 'I am come hether to se
 thee / & it may be so that I haue done foly'¹⁵ / than
 28 the Gyaunt sayd / 'thou sayest trouthe / for yf I were
 armyd as thou art .v C. men suche as thou art coude
 not endure¹⁶ / but that ye¹⁷ shulde all dye. But thou
 seest I am nakyd, without sworde or wepyn, yet for all
 32 that I dought the not' / Than Huon thought in hym

He was seventeen
feet long and of
hideous aspect.

Huon appeals
to the Virgin for
aid,

and then shouts
to the giant to
arise,

who awakes in
wrath, and
addresses Huon
in French.

Naked as he is,
he will slay the
knight.

¹ and omitted. ² burning. ³ ere. ⁴⁻⁴ Lord god.
⁵⁻⁵ omitted. ⁶ thy good. ⁷ no while. ⁸ that omitted.
⁹ it would. ¹⁰ whereupon. ¹¹ else. ¹² so omitted.
¹³ brake. ¹⁴ vpon. ¹⁵ it unadvisedly.
¹⁶ me. ¹⁷ they.

selfe *that* it shulde¹ be² grete shame to hym to assayle
 a man without armure or wepyn / ³thⁿ⁴ he sayd, 'go
 and arme the, or incontynent I shall slee the' / 'frende,'
 quod the Gyaunt, 'this that thou sayest procedeth of a 4
 good courage and of courtesye.' Than he armyd hym
 and tooke in his hande a greate fauchon, & Huon was
 withdrawn in to the palayes abydyng for the Gyaunt /
 who taryed not longe, but came to Huon / and sayde, 8
 'what art thou ? / beholde me here redy to dystroye the
 without thou make good defence / yet I desyre the tell
 me what thou art, to thentent that I may, when I haue
 slayne *thee*, tell how I haue slayne suche⁵ one that by 12
 his foly cam to assayll me in myne owne palays / greate
 pryde it was in *thee* that thou woldest not stryke me or⁶
 I was armyd,⁷ who so euer thou art thou semyst son to a
 noble man. I pray the shew me whether thou woldest 16
 go, and what mouyd the to come hether, to thentent
 that I myght knowe the trouthe of thyn enterpryse,
 that whan I haue slayne the I may make myne auaunt
 to my men that I haue slayne suche a man / that 20
 thought scorne and dysdayne to stryke me or⁶ I was
 armyd.' 'Paynym,' quod Huon / 'thou art in a grete
 foly whan thou⁸ reputyst me but⁹ deed. But sen¹⁰
 thou wylt¹¹ knowe y^e trouthe / I ¹²shewe to the I ¹²am 24
 a poore knyght / fro whom kyng Charlemayne hath
 taken his¹² londes and banyshyd me out of the realme
 of Fraunce / and hath sent me¹⁴ to do a message to the
 Admyrall Gaudys at Babylon / & my name is Huon, 28
 sonne to duke Seuyn of Burdeux / now I haue shewed
 all y^e trouthe of myne enterpryse / & now I pray the
 tell me where thou wert borne, and who engenderyd
 the, to thentent that whan I haue slayne the I may 32
 make myn auaunt in kyng Charles courte and before all

Huon courteously
asks the giant to
arm for fight

The monster rises
and comes to
Huon armed.

He asks him who
he is,

and is somewhat
mored by Huon's
gentle behaviour.

Huon tells his
story,

and inquires
the name of his
adversary.

¹ would. ² a. ³ Fol. xxvi. back, col. 1. ⁴ wherefore.
⁵ a. ⁶ ere. ⁷ but. ⁸ so rashly. ⁹ for.
¹⁰ seeing. ¹¹ wouldst. ¹²⁻¹³ omitted.
¹³ my. ¹⁴ for.

- my frendes that I haue slayne such a greate meruelous¹
 Gyaunt as thou art.' Than the Gyaunt sayd, 'if thou
 slee me thou mayest well make thyn anaunt that² thou
 4 hast slayne Galaffer³ the Gyaunt, who hath .xvii. The giant says he
 bretherne, of whome I am the yongest. Also thou is called Galafer,
 mayest say that vnto y^e drye tree and to the red see / and all the land
 there is no man but is trybutayr to me / I haue about is tributary
 8 chasyd the admiral Gaudis, ⁴whether as thou woldest to him.
 go,⁴ and haue taken fro hym by puyssaunce dyuers of He has robbed
 his Ctytes / and he doth me yerely seruage by the the Admiral
 seruyce⁵ of a ryng of gold to by his hede with all. Gaudysee of many
 12 Also I toke fro Oberon⁶ this puyssaunt toure, that for and Oberon of the
 all his enchauntyng and fayrye coude not resyst me / tower in which he
 and also I tooke fro hym a ryche harnes⁷; thou neuer now liues,
 hardest of suche an nother, for it hath suche vertue that and of a suit of
 16 who so euer can put it on hym⁸ / can neuer be wery nor rich armour,
 dyscomfytyd. But there is therin⁹ another¹⁰ vertue / which renders its
 for he that must were that harnes must be without spot wearer, if he and
 of deedly synne, and also his mother must be without his parents have
 20 carnall copulasyon with any man except with her¹¹ never sinned,
 husbonde / I beleue there can not be found any man invulnerable.
 that may were this harnes.⁷ Also it is of suche vertue
 that who so euer hath it on his body can not be greuyd
 24 nother with fyre nor water. By mahound I haue
 prouyd it / and bycause I haue founde such courtesye
 in the that thou gauest me leue to arme me / I¹² gyue He permits Huon,
 the leue to assaye yf thou canst put on that harnes.⁷ because of his
 28 ¹³Than y^e Gyaunt went to a coffer and tooke out attempt to put
 the harnes,⁷ and came to Huon and sayd / 'lo,¹⁴ here it on.
 is the good harnes,⁷ I gyue the leue to assaye to put
 it on thy body.' Than Huon tooke the harnes⁷ and

¹ maruaylous greate. ² Fol. xxvi. back, col. 2.³ Angolofer. ⁴ to whome thou saiest thou goest.⁵ tender. ⁶ the Fayrie King. ⁷ armour. ⁸ omitted.⁹ in it. ¹⁰ especiall. ¹¹ owne. ¹² will.¹³ in regard I know that neither thou nor any knight else
can be able to doe it. ¹⁴ see.

Huon finds he is
able to wear the
armour.

The giant begs
him to return it
again,

but Huon refuses.

Galafre is
discomfited,
and bids Huon
depart.
He promises him
also a golden ring,

which can alone
give him a safe
entry to the
Admiral's palace
at Babylon;

went backe a lytell / and dyd¹ of his owne armure /
and tooke ²the sayd harnes² and incontinent dyd
it on his body / than hastily he dyd¹ on his
helme, and tooke hys shelde and his³ sworde in his 4
hande / and deuotely thanked our lorde god of his⁴
grace. Than the Gyaunt sayd / 'by mahounde / I had
lytell thought thou hadest ben suche a man / that
harnes⁵ becomyth the⁶ well ; now⁷ I haue quyrt the thy⁸ 8
courtesye that thou shewydst me / therefore I pray the
put of y^e harnes,⁵ and delyuer it me agayne' / ⁹'holde
thy tounge,' quod Huon ; 'god confounde the, it is nede
for me to haue suche armure⁹ / knowe for trouthe I 12
wyll not render yt agayne for .xiiii. of the best cytyes
betwene thys and Parys' / 'frende,' quod the Gyaunt,
'sen¹⁰ thou wylt not render me agayne the armure, I am
content to let thee departe quyte¹¹ without¹² hurte or 16
domage / and also I wyll gyue the my rynge of golde,
the whiche the admyrall Gaudys gaue me / for I knowe
well it shal¹³ stonde the in good stede yf thou thynkest
to furnyshe thy message / for whan thou comyst to the 20
gate of his palays, and say how thou art a messenger
sent fro kinge Charles / thou shalt fynde .iiii. gates, and
at euery gate .iiii. porters / so that at the fyrst gate, yf
it be knowen thou be a frenche man, one of thy handes 24
shalbe cut of / and at the seconde gate thy other
hande / and at the thyrde gate one of thy fete / and at
y^e fourth the other fote / and than shalt thou be
brought before the admyrall, and there thy hede stryken 28
of / and therefore, to scape these parelles and to
furnysshe thy message, and to thentent that thou
mayest surely retourne / gyue me agayne my harnes,⁵

¹ put. ²⁻³ that belonging to the Gyant.

³ his omitted. ⁴ this great. ⁵ armour. ⁶ exceeding.

⁷ Fol. xxvii. col. 1. ⁸ thy omitted.

⁹⁻⁹ 'Not so, sir, by your leaue,' answered Huon ; 'this
armure is meeter for me than such a Helhound as thou art,
therefore.'

¹⁰ seeing.

¹¹ hence.


¹² any.

¹³ will.

and I shal gyue the my rynge of golde / the whiche
 whan thou shewyst it thou shalt be reseuyd with
 grete honour at euery gate, and than thou mayest goo
 4 and retourne surely in¹ the palays at thy pleasure, and
 no man to let the / for yf thou haddest slayne .v. C.
 men there shalbe none so hardy² to touche the nor to
 do the any yll yf thou hast this rynge vpon³ the / for
 8 whan I haue nede of men or mony I can not lacke yf
 I sende this ryng for a token / therfore I pray the let
 me haue agayne my harnes.⁴

but before he give
 it him he once
 more begs Huon
 to take off the
 armour.

¶ How Huon slew the grete Gyaunt / and
 12 how he called Gerames & his company to
 hym, & of y^e ioy *that* they made for the
 deth of ⁵the Gyaunt. Ca. xxxiiii.

16  Han Huon vnderstode y^e paynym he
 sayd, 'A, thou fel & false deseyuer,
 know for trouthe yf all y^e prechers
 betwene y^e Est & the west preched
 to me a hole yere, & *that* thou woldest

Huon reproaches
 the giant with
 treachery,
 and challenges
 him.

20 gyue me al that thou hast, & thy rynge ther with, I wolde
 not render agayne the good harnes⁴ *that* is now on my
 body / fyrst I shall⁶ sle the, & than as for thy rynge *that*
 thou praysest so⁷ sore, than⁷ I wyl⁸ haue it, whether thou
 24 wylt or not' / whan y^e Gyaunt had well harde Huon,
 & sawe *that* he⁹ in no wyse coude gette agayne his
 harnes,⁴ he was than sorowfull / and also¹⁰ he sawe how
 Huon reprouyd hym / therwith he was so sore dys-
 28 pleasyd *that* his eyen semyd like .ii. candelles byrn-
 ynge¹¹ / than he yet demaundyd of Huon yf he wold
 do none other wyse. 'no, trewly,' quod Huon, 'though
 thou be greate & stronge / I haue no fere of y^e, sen¹²
 32 I haue on this good harnes,⁴ therfore in the name of

The giant grows
 angry.

¹ to. ² as. ³ about. ⁴ armour. ⁵ Fol. xxvii. col. 2.

⁶ omitted. ⁷⁻⁷ much. ⁸ likewise. ⁹ he *after* wyse.

¹⁰ because. ¹¹ burning candelis. ¹² seeing.

and the fight
begins.

Galafré's first
stroke misses its
aim, and his
weapon is fixed
fast in a pillar.

While he tries
to release it,
Huon strikes off
his hands.

The giant cries
aloud and flees
before the knight.

Sebylle, roused
from her chamber
by the shouting,

meets Galafré
running, and
flings a staff
between his legs,
so that he falls.

Huon comes up
with him

and strikes off
his head,

which is so
heavy that he
cannot lift it up.

god & of his deuyne puissaunce I defye *the* / ' & I
the, *quod*¹ Gyaunt / ' for al ²thy harnes² *thou* canst not
endure astaynust me' / than y^e Gyaunt aprochyd to
Huon & lyft vp his fauchon, thynkinge to haue stryken 4
Huon³ / but he fayled ; ⁴y^e stroke glent, & the fauchon
lyght vpon a pyller & enteryd in to it more than .ii.
fote / than Huon, who was quyeke & lyght, behelde⁵ y^e
meruelous stroke, quyeckly he⁶ stept forth with his 8
good sword in his handes, regardyng how the Gyaunt
had his fauchon stycking fast in the pyller / he strake
y^e Gyaunt on both y^e armes nere to his handes in such
wyse *that* he strake of both his handes, so *that* they 12
with y^e fauchon fell downe to the erth / whan y^e
Gyaunt felt hyn. selfe so sore hurte, for⁷ payne therof
he gaue a meruelous crye, so horryble as though all y^e
toure had fallen to y^e erth, werof y^e damesell Sebyll, 16
beyuge in her chambre, was sore abasshyd / she went
out of her chambre & founde a staffe by the way. She
toke it vp in her handes, & came to the palays where
as she harde y^e ⁸crye, & met y^e Gyaunt fleyng away 20
to saue hysselfe / but y^e damesell well adusyde whan
she sawe *that* he fled / she caste y^e staffe betwene his
leges, so *that* therby he fell to y^e erth / & Huon, who
came after hym with his sworde in his hande / he hastyd 24
hym, & gaue y^e Gyaunt many a grete stroke / & the
Gyaunt cryed out so hye *that* it was ⁹grete meruayle⁹ to
here hym / than Huon lyft vp his sworde & gaue hym
suche a stroke in the necke *that* his hede flew to the 28
erth ; than Huon wpyyd his sworde and put it vp in¹⁰
the sheth ; than¹¹ he cam to y^e hede, thynkyng to haue
taken it vp ¹¹to haue set it on the heyght of y^e
toure / but the hede was so grete & heuy *that* he 32
coude not remoue it nor tourne his¹² body ; than

¹ the. ²⁻³ the armour. ³ him. ⁴ for.
⁵ beholding. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ with. ⁸ Fol. xxvii. back, col. 1.
⁹⁻⁹ very terrible. ¹⁰ to. ¹¹ and. ¹² the.

he smyled & sayd, 'A, good lorde, I thanke y° of
 thy grace ¹to haue¹ gyuen me y° puyssaunce to sle such
 a creature; wold to god *that* this body & hede were
 4 now in the palays of Parys before Charlemayne,
 kinge of fraunce, so *that* he knewe *that* I haue slayn
 hym' / than Huon went to a wyndow & lokyd out &
 saw where his company were / than he sayd to them, ^a2
 8 hye, 'syrs, come vp heder; ye may do it surely, for this
 palays is wonne / and y° Gyaunt slayne' / whan Gerames
 &³ Garyn & the other harde *that* they were ioyfull &
 thanked our lorde god / than they cam to y° gate / &
 12 sebyll, y° damesell, went thyder & openyd y° wycket,
 wherby the enchauntement faylled / than they enteryd
 & foolowyd y° damesell, who brought them in to y°
 palais to Huon. 'whan they saw hym they all wept for
 16 ioy / & enbrasyd & kyssyd hym, & demaundyd yf
 he had any hurt / 'syrs,' quod Huon, 'I thanke god I
 fele no hurt;' & than he brought them there⁵ as y°
 gyaunt lay deed / whan they saw hym they had
 20 meruayle how he coude be slayne by Huon; they were
 afraied to se hym lye deed / than Gerames demaundyd
 of Huon what was the damesell *that* was there / than⁴
 Huon shewyd how she was his cosyn, & shewyd them
 24 all y° maner how she cam theder, wherof they had
 greate ioy & enbrasyd her / than they all vnarmyd
 them⁶ & went to supper, & ete & dranke at there
 7 pleasure / but there ioy enduryd not longe, as ye shall
 28 here⁸ after.

From a window
Huon calls to his
company.

Sebylle opens
the wicket for
them to enter.

Huon tells his
friends how he is
unhurt

and they sup
together merrily.

¶ How Huon departyd fro the castell of
 the Gyaunt, & toke leue of his company &
 went alone a fote to y° see syde, where as he
 32 founde Malabron of *that*⁹ fayre, on whom
 he mountyd to passe the see. Ca. xxxv.

¹⁻¹ that thou hast. ² on. ³ & omitted. ⁴ and. ⁵ where.
⁶ selues. ⁷ Fol. xxvii. back, col. 2. ⁸ heare. ⁹ the.



Huon bids his company remain with the damsel in the castle while he proceeds to Babylon. If he comes not back in fifteen days they are all to return to France.

They declare they will tarry for him a whole year.

Huon takes leave of them, and goes to the seashore.

E haue hard here before how Huon conquerd y^e Gyaunt, the which was grete ioy to al his company / than the next day Huon called ¹al his company¹ 4 & said, 'syrs, ye know well y^e enterpryse that I haue taken on me to do touchinge y^e admirall Gaudys / therfore it is conuenient that as shortly as I can to do my message that I am chargyd 8 by kinge Charles to do to y^e admirall Gaudys, wherfore I desyre you al to kepe good and trew company with this noble damesell / & also I requyre you to tary me here .xv. dayes, & than yf I retourne not go 12 you al in to fraunce, & take this noble damesel with you, & salute fro me kinge Charlemayn & all the peres of fraunce, & shew them the hard aduentures that I haue had, & how I am gone to performe hys message' / 16 whan his company vnderstode that he wolde departe they were sorowfull, & sayd / 'syr, ye desyre vs to tary you here a .xv. dayes / knowe for trouthe we shal tary here fore you an hole yere.' 'syrs,' quod he, 'I 20 thanke you' / than he made hym redy to departe, & armyd hym, & tooke his cuppe & horne, & also y^e Gyauntes ringe, the whiche he dyd² put aboute his arme / & than he kyst his cosyn & al y^e other / and 24 they all made gret lamentasyon for his departyng / than they went vp in to y^e palais & lokyd out at y^e wyndowes after Huon as long as they myght se hym / Huon went forth tyll he cam to the se syde, y^e whiche 28 was not farre fro y^e castel, & there was a lytell hauen where as al wayes³ lay sum maner of shyppe or wessell to passe ouer y^e see / & whan Huon cam thether ⁴he had grete meruayle, & sayd,⁴ 'A, good 32

¹⁻¹ them all together. ² did.

³ was wont to.

⁴⁻⁴ though nowe at this instant there was none at all. Finding no means for passage, he said.

lorde, what shal I do *that* I can fynd here no bote
nor¹ vessell to passe in? / alas, in an yll owre I slewe
²Charlot, wherby I am³ in daunger; howbeit I dyd it in
4 'my⁴ defence: grete wronge⁵ kinge Charles hathe done
to banyshe me out of myne owne cowntre' / grete⁶ com-
pleyntes made Huon there, beyng alone, & began sore
to wepe / & ⁷sodenly on his ryght hande he saw a grete
8 beest come swymmyng towards hym / lyke a beer /
Huon behelde hym & made on his hed⁸ a sygne of y^e
crosse / & drew out his sword to defende hym selfe,⁹
thynkyng y^e beest wolde haue assayled hym / but he
12 dyd not / but went a lytell of fro Huon, & shoke hym
selfe in such wyse *that* his skyn fell of, and than he
was as fayre a man & as well fourmyd as coude be
seen / than Huon had grete fere & meruayle / whan he
16 saw *that* this beest was become a man,¹⁰ he aprochyd
nere to hym, and demaundyd what he was, & whether he
were an humaine creature or elles an yll speryt *that* was
come theder to tempt hym / & sayd, 'ryght nowe *thou*
20 dydest swym in y^e see, & trauesyd y^e grete waues in
gyse of a meruelous beest; I charge *thee* in y^e name of
god¹¹ do me no hurt / and⁷ shew me what *thou* art / ¹²I
beleue *thou* art of kyng Oberons company' / 'Huon,'
24 quod he, 'dysmay *thou* not, I knowe the ryght well;
thou art sonne to ¹³y^e noble¹⁸ duke seuyn of Burdeux /
noble¹⁴ kyng Oberon hathe sent me to *thee* / ones
¹⁵I¹⁵ brake his commaundement, wherfore he hath con-
28 dempynd me to be this .xxx. yere lyke a best in y^e
see.' 'frend,' quod huon, 'by y^e lorde *that* fourmyd me
I wyll trust *thee* tyll I be passyd y^e red see' / 'Huon,'
quod Mallabron, 'knowe for trouth / I am sent hether
32 for none¹⁶ other thyng¹⁷ / but to bere the wheder as¹⁸
thou wylt / therfore make y^e redye / & recommaunde

He sees no vessel
to take him across
the sea,

and laments his
hard fate,

when he sees an
animal like a bear
swimming
towards him,

whose skin falls
off and reveals a
handsome man.

Huon is stricken
with wonder, and
asks him who
he is.

The man replies
that Oberon has
sent him, and
that because of
his sin he has
been condemned
to be for thirty
years a beast of
the sea.

He is to bear
Huon whither
he will.

¹ or. ² Fol. xxviii. col. 1. ³ thus still. ⁴⁻⁴ mine owne.

⁵ therefore. ⁶ These and the like. ⁷ but. ⁸ himselfe.

⁹ as. ¹⁰ yet. ¹¹ thou. ¹² for. ¹³⁻¹³ omitted.

¹⁴ Royall. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ it happened me to. ¹⁶ no. ¹⁷ cause.

His name is
Mallabron.

thy selfe to y^e saue garde of oure lorde Ihesu Cryst, &
than let me alone' / than Mallabron enteryd agayne in
to y^e beestys skyn / & said to huon / 'sir, mount on¹
my backe.'

4

¶ How Huon passyd y^e see vpon Mallabron,
who bare hym to Babylon / & how Huon
cam to y^e fyrst gate, & so to y^e .ii.

Ca. .xxxvi. 8

He enters the sea
and assumes
again an animal's
form.



Huon leaps on his
back and travels
swiftly up the
Nile.

At length he
reaches land.

Mallabron says
that to serve him
he will have to
remain a sea-
monster for ten
years longer.

Han Huon saw y^e beest enter agayne in
to his skyn, & *that* he taryed for² /
he made y^e signe of the ³crosse. And
prayed god to saue & condute hym, & 12
so lept vp on hym ; & y^e beest enteryd
in to y^e see, & swamme as fast as though a byrd had
flowyn, so *that with* in a shorte spase he trauessyd y^e
grete ryuer of Nile, the whiche commyth fro paradyce, 16
the⁴ whiche is a daungerous ryuer for the grete⁵ multy-
tude of serpentes & cocodrylles *that* be ther in / how
be it there were none *that* dyd hym any trouble / than
whan they cam to lond, Huon was joyfull / than⁴ 20
Mallabron sayd / 'ryght derely shall I abyge the tyme
that thou wert borne, or *that* euer I knewe the ; for
thentent to do the pleasure I shal endure yet .x. yere
lyke a beest in the see, & .xxx. yere I haue⁶ so all 24
redy, so *that*⁷ is in al .xl.⁸ I haue grete pyte of *thee* /
for there is no man borne of a woman *that* knoweth y^e
yll & pouerte *that* shall fall here after to *thee* / & I shall
suffer myche for the loue *that* I haue to *thee* ; howbe it 28
I shal take it in pasyence / yonder thou mayst se y^e
cyte whether *thou* woldest go, morouer, *thou* knowyst
what hath ben commaundyd *thee* / & what *thou* hast to
do, & yet what so euer fall, breke not y^e commaunde- 32

¹ vpon. ² him. ³ Fol. xxviii. col. 2. ⁴ and.
⁵ omitted. ⁶ been. ⁷ my time. ⁸ yeeres.

- ment of kinge Oberon / & alwayes be trew & say y^e He warns Huon
trouthe, for as sone as *thou* makest any ly *thou* shalt to obey Oberon's
lese¹ the loue of kinge Oberon / thus god be *with* the, for command, and
4 I may no lenger tary' / thus² he went agayne *in* to the never tell a lie.
see, & Huon taryed there alone, recommaundyng hym
selfe to our lord god, & so toke the way to the cytye / Huon goes toward
& so³ enteryd *in without* let of any man : as² sone as the city of
8 he was enteryd, he met a .M. paynems goynge a hawk- Babylon,
ynge / & a nother .M. cominge homwarde / & a .M. and meets many
horses let to be new shode / & a .M. comynge fro men of the
shoyng / than he sawe a .M. men plaing at the chesse. country on their
12 & a nother .M. *that* had played & been matyd / several errands.
& a nother .M. talkinge & deusynge *with* the⁴ dame-
selles / & a nother .M. cominge fro drinking of the
admyralles wyne, & a nother .M. going thether / whan
16 huon al armyd had gone a grete spase *in* the cyte he
had grete meruayle of *that* he had seen &⁵ met⁶ so
myche⁶ people / ⁷he studyed thereon so mych *that* he The knight
forgot the gyauntes ryng on his arme / & the men *that* studies the
20 he mett had grete meruayle⁸ of hym to se hym go al strangers' aspect,
armyd a fote / ⁹he went styll forth.¹⁰ Alas, y^e¹¹ vnhappy and forgets the
Huon, *that* coulede not remembre the Gyauntes ryng giant's ring.
aboute hys arme, for lake of remembraunce therof /
24 he sufferyd after so myche trouble *that* ther is no
humayne tounge can tell it, as ye shall here¹² after. At
last he cam *in* to a grete plase before y^e fyrst gate of The first gate of
the palays, where as there stode a grete vyne tree set the palace is
28 vpon brycke pyllers of dyuers coulours, vnder y^e reached,
whiche y^e admyrall Gaudys one day *in* the weke wolde
come thether, & wold gyue audyence to al sewters.
whan Huon had regardyd al this / he cam to y^e fyrst
32 gate of y^e palays ; than¹³ he cryed to y^e porter & sayd / and Huon calls to
the porter to
open it.

¹ loose. ² So. ³ there. ⁴ omitted. ⁵ that he had.⁶⁻⁸ such multitude of. ⁷ And. ⁸ Fol. xxviii. back, col. 1.⁹ and yet.¹⁰ forward.¹¹ poore.¹² here.¹³ and there.

'frende, I pray the open the gate.' than¹ the porter sayd with a good wyll / 'yf thou be a sarazyn *thou* shalt enter.' Than Huon as vnaduysyd,² without² thinkynge on kynges Oberons commaundement, or of y^e gyautes⁴ ringe about his arme, the whiche yf he had shewyd forth he shold not haue nedid to haue made any ly.

In answer to the man, Huon says he is a Saracen, and thus gains admission.



Han huon³ harde the paynym demande whether he were a sarasyn,⁴ he sayd, 8 'ye' / than the porter sayd, 'than may ye surely enter' / so Huon passyd the fyrst brydge & gate /

When he comes to the second gate, the knight bethinks him of the lie he has told, and how he has broken Oberon's command.

and whan he came to the seconde he remembered hym 12 selfe how he had broken kynges Oberons commaundement / wher *with* he was so sorowfull at his herte *that* he wyst not what to do, and sware than *that* he wolde neuer lye more / than he toke the rynges in his hande 16 and came to the secounde gate, and sayd / to the porter, 'thou vylayne, he *that* on the crosse dyed⁵ confounde the / open this gate / for I must enter' / whan y^e porter harde hym speke so fersly, he sayd / 20 'how is it that the fyrst porter was so hardy to suffer the⁶ to enter in at the fyrst gate?' 'I shall shew the,' quod Huon / 'seest not thou this rynges, the whiche is a token that I may passe and go where as me lyst?' / 24 whan the porter harde hym and saw the rynges, he knewe it well, & sayd, 'syr, ye be welcome / how fayreth y^e lord⁷ that ye come fro?' Huon, who wolde not lye, passid the brydge and gaue no answer, & so 28 cam to y^e thyrd gate / ⁸the porter came to hym, and Huon shewyd hym the rynges / than y^e porter lette downe the brydge and openyd the gate, and with greaute reuerence salutyd Huon and sufferyd hym to passe / 32 whan Huon was thus passyd the thre br[y]dges, than he

To the second porter he shows the giant's ring,

and is at once admitted,

and to the keeper of the third gate he does the same, and passes on.


¹ And. ²⁻³ and forgetting himselfe, and not once.
³ hee had. ⁴ or no. ⁵ died *after* that. ⁶ omitted.
⁷ Fol. xxviii. back, col. 2. ⁸ where.

remembred how he had made a lye at the fyrst bridge /
 and sayd to hymselfe, 'Alas! what shall become of
 me, sen¹ I haue so lyghtely broken my promys to hym
 4 that hathe done so myche for me? / alas! I forgat y°
 ring that was aboute myne arme. how be it, I trust
 that Oberon wyll not be dyspleasyd for it, sen¹ I dyd it
 not wylfully, but that I forgat it / I trust he wyll take
 8 no more regarde to this dede then he dyd whan I blew
 the horne without any cause' / thus Huon passyd the
 thre gates of the palys.

Huon fears
Oberon's wrath.

¶ How Huon passyd y° fourth gate, & how
 12 he cam in to the garden, where as was y°
 founteyne, & of *that*² he dyd there.

Ca. .xxxvii.

16  Han Huon saw³ he was⁴ passyd the .iii.
 gates, he passyd⁵ y° fourth gate with
 y° ryng in his hande / for he mette
 with no man but *that*⁶ dyd hym
 honour whan they saw y° ryng / than
 20 he sayd to y° fourth porter, 'thou vylayne porter, ⁷god
 curse thee,⁷ open the gate' / when y° porter harde hym
 he had grete meruayll / & sayd, 'what art thou *that*
 art armyd & spekest so fersly to me? Lay away thyne
 24 armure, & than shew me what thou art, & whether
 thou wylt go / for, armyd as thou art, it is not possyble
 for thee⁸ to enter / shew me by thy fayth how hast
 thou passyd y° .iii. other brydges' / than Huon sayd,
 28 'holde thy peace, paynym. I am a messenger sent fro
 noble kynge Charlemayne / & whether thou wylt or
 not, I wyl passe this way & go to y° palays to y°
 admyrall Gaudys / there is nother thou nor none
 32 other can⁹ let me. beholde this token *that* I shew
 thee.' the paynym knew it anone, and lete down

Huon reaches the
fourth gate.

He tells how he
has come from
Charlemagne,

¹ seeing. ² which. ³ that. ⁴ had. ⁵ went on to.
⁶ still. ⁷⁻⁷ I charge thee forthwith. ⁸ omitted. ⁹ shall.

and at the sight
of the ring the
porter opens
the gate.

The man says
that the Admiral
will receive Huon
right royally
when he sees
that token.

Huon goes
onwards,

reproaching
himself with the
lie he told at the
first gate.

He enters the
Admiral's garden.

In its midst was
a fountain which

cured the sick

and made the old
young again.

¹the bryge, and openyd the gate, and kneled doune
& kyssyd & enbrassyd Huons² legges / desyrynge
hym of³ pardon in that he had causyd hym to tary so
long / 'paynym,' quod Huon, 'good day mayst thou ⁴
haue.' 'Syr,' quod the porter, 'ye may go to the
admyrall, who wyll make you good chere & grete
honour, nor⁴ there is no thyng *that* ye can desyre but
it shalbe grauntyd to⁵ you / ye, &⁶ it be his all onely ⁸
doughter, for loue of y^e lorde fro whom ye brynge this
rynge to⁴ a token; and, syr, I requyre you how doth
the lord Angalaffer? comyth he hether or not?'
'porter,' quod Huon, 'yf he come hether, all y^e deuyles ¹²
of hell must brynge hym hether;' & therwith he passeth
forth without any mo wordes / but he sayd to hym
selfe, 'a, good lorde Ihesu Cryst, helpe & ayde me in all
my besynes / I was temptyd with an yll⁷ spryte whan ¹⁶
I made a⁸ lee at y^e fyrst gate / I dyd it by lyghtnes of
courage and⁴ lake of reinembraunce, wherof I am now⁹
ryght sorye' / Huon thus beyng in dyspleasure with
hym selfe for the lye *that* he¹⁰ made, went forth tyll ²⁰
he came to the palays, and enteryd in to a fayre garden
wherin the admyrall tooke often tymys his pastaunce,¹¹
for there coude no tree nor freute nor flower be wysched
for but ther they myght be found, both in somer & ²⁴
wynter / & in the myddes of this garden there was a
fayre founteyne commynge out of y^e ryuer Nile *that*
commyth from paradyce, the whiche founteyne as *than*
was of such vertue / *that* yf any sycke man dyd drynke ²⁸
therof, or wasshyd his handes & face,¹² incontynent¹³
shulde be hole / & also yf a man had bene of grete age
he shulde retourne agayne to the age of .xxx. yere /
and ³² ¹⁴a woman¹⁴ to become as freshe & lusty as a mayde
of .xv. yere / this founteyne had *that* vertue¹⁵ y^e spase

¹ Fol. xxix. col. 1. ² his. ³ of him *after* pardon. ⁴ for.

⁵ vnto. ⁶ if. ⁷ euill. ⁸ the. ⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ had.

¹¹ pastime. ¹² therin. ¹³ he. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ old women. ¹⁵ by.

- of .lx. yere / but .x. yere after *that* Huon had ben
there *that*¹ was dystroyed and broken by y^e Egypsyence,
who made warre to² the admyrall *that* was as than in
4 Babylon. ³And whan Huon had wasshyd his handes Huon washes his
hands and drinks
of the fountain,
& face in y^e founteyne, & dronke of y^e water / he
behelde the palays, & thought it meruellously fayre /
& whan he had well regardyd it, he saw a lytell besyde
8 the founteyne a grete serpent, who kept the founteyne,
to the entent *that* none shulde be so hardy to drynke
nor⁴ touche the founteyne / for yf a traytore or any man
that hath falsyd his fayth dyd. touche it he coude not
12 scape without deth / but whan the serpent saw Huon,
he inclynyd hymselfe without makynge of semblant to
do hym any yll / than⁵ Huon sat downe by the foun-
teyne & began ⁶peteously to wepe,⁶ & sayd, 'a, good
16 lorde, without thy socoure it is impossyble for me to
departe hense alyue. A, noble kynge Oberon, forsake
me not now in this nede / for the trespas *that* I haue
done ought to be forgyuen me, sen⁷ I dyd it necligenly
20 for lake of remembraunce / certainly I wyll knowe yf
for so small a cause ye wyll leue me / wherfore, what
so euer fall, I shall proue & assay to know y^e trouthe' /
than he toke his horne & blewe it so fersly / *that* kynge
24 Oberon harde it, beynge in his forest / & whan he hard
it he sayd / 'A, good lorde,' ⁸quod he,⁵ 'I here the false
knyght blow his horne, who settyth so lytell by me /
for at the fyrst gate *that* he passyd⁸ he made a false
28 lye / by y^e lorde *that* formyd me, yf he blowe tyll y^e
waynes in his neke ⁹brest a⁹ sonder, he shall not be
socouryd for me / nor for no¹⁰ maner of myschyfe *that*
may fall to hym.' Than Huon, beynge in y^e garden,
32 blew so sore¹¹ / *that* y^e admyrall, who was set at his
dynner, rose fro y^e borde *with* all his lordes / & al

which is kept by
a serpent that
destroys all false
men.

But it does not
touch the knight.

Huon prays to
Oberon for help,

and blows his
horn.
The fairy hears it,
and declares he
will not succour
him because he
has lied.

The Admiral and
his attendants
hear the blast

¹ it. ² on. ³ Fol. xxix. col. 2. ⁴ or.
⁵ omitted. ⁶⁻⁸ greeouslye to lament. ⁷ seeing.
⁸ by. ⁹⁻⁹ burst in. ¹⁰ any. ¹¹ lowde.

while at dinner
within the palace,
and begin to
dance and sing.


The Admiral
asserts that some
enchanter has
found his way
into the garden,
and bids his
servants find him
and bring him
into his presence.

Meanwhile Huon,
perceiving Oberon
will not listen to
him, bitterly
grieves over his
desertion.

other ladyes & dameselles, knyghtes & squyers / boyes
& squylions of y^e kechyn / & all other came in to y^e
palays to y^e admyral, & began to daunse & synge &
made grete ioy. the sorer¹ *that* Huon blew his horne, 4
y^e more they daunsyd & sange. And whan Huon left
blowyng, than y^e admyrall called his barons & com-
maundyd them to be armyd / and sayd, ² 'syrs, go in
to this gardyne, for suerly there is sum enchaunter / 8
therefore take hede that he skape not, and brynge hym
alyue to me, for I wyll know of hym the cause why he
hath done this dede / for yf *that* he eskafe he shall³ do
vs more yll' / whan Huon had blowyn a longe spase 12
and saw no body come to hym, he was sore abasshyd.⁴
than he began to wepe,⁵ and sayd, 'A, good lorde god,
now I se well myn ende aprocheth, when kynge
Oberon fayleth me, in whom I haue all my trust in lyfe 16
and deth. A, dere lady mother, & brother Gerardyn, I
shall neuer se you more. A, noble kynge Charle-
mayne, grete wrong ye haue done to me thus to
banysh me with out deserte / for that / *that* I dyd, 20
was in my defence / god forgyue it you. A, kynge
Oberon, well *thou* mayest be reputyd for an vnkynde
creature, thus to leue me for on smal faulte. certainly
yf thou be a noble man I hope *thou* wylt pardon me / 24
at leste I put all to god, & to hym I submytte me⁶ &
to the blyssyd vyrgyn mary his mother.⁶ And what so
euer fall, I wyll enter in to the palayes and do my
message that kynge Charlemayn hath commaundyd me 28
to do' / so he made hym redye and departyd fro the
founteyne / thynkynge he shulde fynde the admyrall
at dynere at that owre.⁷

¹ more.² Fol. xxix. back, col. 1.⁵ lament.⁶⁻⁶ omitted³ will.⁴ and.⁷ time.

¶ How Huon came in to the palayes and dyd
his message to the admyrall / & how he
slew many paynyms / and¹ after² taken
4 and set³ in pryson. Ca. xxxviii.

8  Han Huon had ben a certen spase at
the founteyne / he departyd all armyd
& mountyd vpe the grese⁴ of the
palayes the same tyme the admyrall
had causyd .ii. of his princypall
goddess to be set in y^e myddes⁵ of the palayes, rychely
besene,⁶ & before them two grete torches byrnyng⁷ / so
12 that no sarasyn passyd by them but made to them
grete reuerence / and⁸ Huon passyd by them and wolde
not ones loke on them, nor speke to no man *that* he
mette / wherof they had⁹ grete meruayll, & sayd
16 one to another, so *that* Huon¹⁰ harde them / ¹¹one of
them sayd,¹¹ ' I beleue this man *that*¹² thus enteryd in
to y^e palayes all armyd is sum messenger sent fro sum
greate prynce to y^e admyrall ' / & than Huon sawe a
20 paynym kynge spekyng to y^e admyrall / &¹² was
newly come to y^e admyrall, by cause *that* same day y^e
admyrall Gaudys shulde haue delyueryd to hym his
doughter, y^e fayre Esclaramonde, in maryage / & Huon
24 saw wel how he was y^e gretest prynce *that* as than was
there *with* y^e admyrall / than Huon sayd to hymselfe,
' A, good lorde, yf I acqyutte my selfe trewly to kinge
Charlemayn / I must slee this paynyn kynge / I
28 thynke it be he *that* I loke for, sen¹³ he syteth so nere
to y^e admyrall / god confound me but incontynent I
¹⁴stryke of his hede / ¹⁵than let our lorde Ihesu Cryst
do *with* me at his pleasure ' / than Huon came nere to
32 y^e table / & drew out his sword, & there *with* gaue¹⁶ the

Huon at length
mounts the s'epe
leading into the
palace.

He speaks to no
man as he walks
in.

Beside the
Admiral site a
paynym king,

who has come to
woo the fair
Esclaramonde.

¹ was. ² afterward. ³ put. ⁴ degrees.

⁵ Fol. xxix. back, col. 2. ⁶ adorned. ⁷ burning.

⁸ but. ⁹ all. ¹⁰ easily. ¹¹⁻¹² omitted. ¹³ who.

¹³ seeing. ¹⁴ will. ¹⁵ and. ¹⁶ Fol. xxx. col. 1.

Huon draws his sword and strikes off the monarch's head.

The Admiral orders Huon's arrest.

He is attacked on all sides, but his armour protects him.

He shows the ring to the Admiral,

who, on seeing it, bids no man lay hand on the knight,

and tells him he may do in his palace what he will.

Huon kisses Esclaramonde thrice,

sayd kynge suche a stroke that his hede fell on the table, so that the admyrall was therewith all bloody. Than Huon with a hye voyce sayde, 'A, good lorde, what a good begynnyng is this / the rest I remyt to 4 our lorde Ihesu Cryst, whom I requyre to ayde me to performe y^e reste of myne enterpryse / in this poynt I haue nere quytte my selfe agaynst kynge Charlemayne.' Than the admyrall sayd to his barons / 'take this man 8 that hath done me this offence as to murder this kynge syttyng at my table / yf he escape, loke me neuer in the face' / than the paynims assayllyd Huon on all sydes, and cast at hym dartes & swordes to haue slayne 12 hym. But his good hernes¹ sau'd hym fro the deth / & with his sworde he slew many a fell² paynym, so that none durst aproche nere hym / whan he saw *that* he was sore oppressyd, he tooke his ryng³ of his arme 16 & cast it on the table before the admyrall, & sayd / 'syr admyrall, be ware on payne of thy lyfe of doynge to me any hurt or damage, by this token that I shew the' / whan the admyrall saw the ryng, he knew it 20 well / than he began to crye / that no man shulde be so hardy as to touche hym *that* hath slayne the paynym kynge / than⁴ euery man let Huon in rest / wher of he was ryght ioyfull / than he sayd to y^e admyrall, 'Syr, 24 I wyll fro hense forth⁵ thou do as I commaunde *thee*' / 'frende,' quod the admyrall, 'thou mayst do in my palayes what thou wylt / what soeuer thou commaunde shalbe done, no man shall say the contrary.' Than 28 Huon saw where his doughter, y^e fayre Esclaramonde, sat by her fater; than⁴ Huon went to her / & kyst her .iii. tymys before her fater, wher of⁶ the damesell was sore abasshyd; but she saw hym so fayre, & felte his 32 mouth so swete / that she thought, without she myght haue hym to her loue, she sholde dye for sorow / so *that* she chaunged couloure & blusshyd as ruddye as a

¹ armor. ² bolde. ³ from. ⁴ and. ⁵ that. ⁶ at.

- rose / ¹whan Huon had kyssyd y^e lady / than he went
to the admyrall, & sayd / 'syr admyrall, know for
trouthe² I am crystenyd / & am a messenger sent fro
4 noble kynge Charlemayne to the / by cause there is no
prynce, crysten nor hethen / but *that* obeyeth his
commaundementes, except thy selfe, therfore by me he
sendeth *thee* worde / that sen³ the dolowrous day of
8 batayll at Ronceuall,⁴ where as he lost his .ii. neuwse /
Rowlaunde & Olyuer, he neuer sens assembled so
myche people as he wyll do this next somer to come
vpon *thee*, both by water and by londe, without thou
12 wylt beleue in y^e law of Jhesu Cryst; therefore, yf thou
wylt beleue me, be cristened or⁵ this myschiefe⁶ fall
vpon the.' 'Speke no more of *that*,' quod y^e admyrall /
'for I had rather be hewen and slayne than to leue
16 my law to⁷ beleue vpon thy god.' 'Syr admyrall,'
quod Huon, 'more ouer kyng Charles commaundeth
y^e to sende hym an .M. sparhawkes, ⁸M. goshawkes,
⁸M. beeres, & a .M. wayters enchainyd together; ⁸M.
20 yonge varlettes, ⁸M. fayre dameselles / and also a
handfull of thy berde, & .iiii. of thy grete teth.' 'A,'
quod y^e admyrall / 'I se *thou* arte hardy & outragious
to demaund of me this *that* thou hast sayd. And also
24 I haue grete meruayll of thy mayster *that* he is so
foolysshe⁹ to commaunde me by *thee* to send hym my
berde & grete teth / or¹⁰ this tyme he hath sent me mo
than .xv. messengers, & hath demaundyd parte of this¹¹
28 thou spekest of / but all .xv. hath ben hangyd, &¹²
thou art come by thy folly, ¹³shalt make¹³ the .xvi. But
by reason of the ryng *that thou* berest we dare not
touch *thee*. But I pray the,¹⁴ by the fayth & law *that*
32 *thou* art of, shew me what deuell hath gyuen *thee* that
rynge' / than Huon, sore abasshyd as he that dorst not

and, addressing
the Admiral, says
that Charlemagne
has sent him,

and unless the
monarch promises
him fealty and
will be converted,
the Emperor will
make war upon
him with a
mighty host.

The Admiral
refuses to become
a Christian.

Huon tells him
all else that
Charlemagne
demands of him.

The Admiral
warns Huon that
fifteen envoys
have come to him
making the like
demand, and have
all met their
death at his
hands.

¹ Fol. xxx. col. 2.

² that.

³ since.

⁴ Roncevaux.

⁵ else.

⁶ will.

⁷ and.

⁸ a.

⁹ as.

¹⁰ before.

¹¹ that.

¹² nowe.

¹³⁻¹³ to make up.

¹⁴ therefore.

Huon tells how
he obtained the
magic ring.

The Admiral
orders his men to
seize Huon.

A fierce fight
takes place.

Huon sets his
back to an arch
in the wall and
defends himself
like a wild boar.

make a lye, for fere of kynge Oberon, sayd / 'sir,¹ for
dought of the, nor² of no³ paynem here, I wyl not
spare to shew the y^e trouth. know well⁴ *that with*
this good sworde I haue slayn y^e lord Angolaffer y^e 4
gyaunt' / whan ⁵the admyrall harde that, he sayde to
his lordes, 'Syr, loke that this ribauld⁶ skape not,
for by al the goddes that I beleue on, I shal neuer haue
ioy in my herte tyll⁷ I se hym taken.' Than paymymys 8
and sarasyns on all partes assaylled Huon / whan he
saw *that*, he recommaundyd hym selfe to our lord god ;
he⁸ thought he shulde neuer se fayre daye more / and
so with his sworde in both hys handes he defendyd 12
hym selfe nobly in sleynge and cuttynge of handes /
armes / and fete / of the sarasyns, & of maney he made
the braynes to fly abrode on the payment. Grete orroure⁹
it was to behold / for by reason of his good harnes¹⁰ 16
there was no paynym coude do hym any damage / but
they gaue hym way, nor durst aproche nere hym.
Huon beynge full of yre, as he fought, he sawe on the
one syde of the palayes an arche in the wall, & so, euer 20
styll fyghtyng, he drew thether, & set his backe to the
arche, to thentent that none shulde come behynd hym /
there he faryd lyke a wyld bore in y^e wood, & de-
fendyd hymselfe in suche wyse, *that* whom so euer he 24
towchyd *with* a full stroke, had no nede after of any
surgyon / thus along spase Huon enduryd, & had no
grete damage.¹¹ But the force of y^e paynymes was so
grete that it was not possyble for hym to susteyn 28
longe / & ¹²he waxyd so wery that his strokes flebylde /
often tymes he called apon god ¹³& on the vyrgyn
mary¹³ / & on the other parte the admyrall cryed to his
men & sayde, 'a, ye feynt hertyd knaues,¹⁴ greate shame 32
it is to you all that one man shall so longe endure

¹ not. ² or. ³ any. ⁴ then. ⁵ Fol. xxx. back, col. 1.
⁶ villaine. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ and. ⁹ terrour. ¹⁰ armour.
¹¹ harme. ¹² for. ¹³⁻¹³ omitted. ¹⁴ slaues.


agaynst you all,¹ that ye can nother take hym nor sle
 hym' / than the paynymes, whan they harde the
 admyrall so dyspraye them / they came in a grete rage
 4 all at ones vpon Huon, where as he was alone vnder
 the arche. than a paynym who was neuwe to the
 admyrall, cam vpon Huon; ²whan Huon saw hym
 aproche, he lyft vp his sworde & gaue ³the paynym ⁴on
 8 the helme⁴ suche a stroke *that* he claue his hede to the
 brest, and ther with his sworde fell out of his handes /
 and another sarasyn tooke it vp / than all the sarasins
 at ones ran vpon Huon, & tooke hym, and so⁵ tooke
 12 fro hym his horne and cuppe, and dyd⁶ of his harnes⁷ /
 whan he was vnarmyd, the sarasyns behelde hym well,
 and many sayde how they neuer saw so fayre a man
 before, affermyng that yf al frenche men were such as
 16 he is,¹ there were no kinge able to resyste them.

He slays the
Admiral's
nephew.

Huon is at length
overcome by
weariness, and is
disarmed.

¶ Of the grete compleyntes that Huon made
 beyng in pryson / and how the admyralles
 doughter cam to comforte hym / & how she
 20 departyd not well content with Huon.

Capitulo .xxxix.

24  Han Huon was dysarmyd, y^e paynims
 tooke & brought hym before the
 admyrall, who was ryght ioyfull whan
 he sawe Huon, and called his barons,
⁸and demaunded of them what dethe
 the caytyff shuld dy that had done them suche damage
 28 as to sle one of his moste puyssaunt kynges, and also
 his nepheu, besyde many other. then they all answered
 with one voyce, that he shulde be slayne all quycke⁹
 incontynent / then he stopt fourth an olde auncient

He is brought
before the
Admiral, who asks
his barons what
punishment he
should suffer.

All are in favour
of immediate
death,

¹ omitted. ² but. ³ Fol. xxx. back, col. 2.

⁴⁻⁴ after stroke. ⁵ then. ⁶ put. ⁷ armour.

⁸ Fol. xxxi. col. 1. ⁹ aliue.

except an aged
councillor, who
reminds the
Admiral that on
this day, according
to their law, none
ought to die at
their hands, and
advises that
Huon should be
respited for a
year.

The old man
asks whether
Huon ought not
to be thanked for
the death of the
giant Angolaffer
(Galafré).

Huon is led off to
prison.

He reproaches
Oberon.

admyrall of .vi. score yeres of age, and¹ was of the
admyralles preuy counsell, and² sayd, 'sir admyrall, ye
may not do thus for the loue of this good day, the
whiche is of y^e fest of saynte Iohnn / accordyng to our 4
law, ther ys none ought to dye on that day / but, syr,
respyght his lyfe for a hole yere, the which³ shalbe
the fest of your goddes: on that day ye ought to de-
lyuer .ii.⁴ Champyons to do with them your sacrefyce; 8
lett this man be one / and another shall⁵ come be
that tyme; and whiche of tho .ii. champyons be ouer
come, ye shall make your sacrefyce to your goddes
of hym; thus ye promysed your goddes to do the fyrst 12
day that ye toke on you the sygnyory of Babylone /
and, syr, yf it were not for that this man hath slayne
one of your kinges & your nephew, ye ought not to slee
hym, but rather to thanke hym / for by hym the man 16
⁶in the worlde⁶ that ye ought moste to hate is slayne,
that ⁷was the gyant⁷ Angolaffer, for⁸ now by his deth
ye are out of all seruytude and bondage, and by hym⁹
sett at lyberte' / when the Admyrall gaudis had well 20
herde the paynem, he sayd, 'sen¹⁰ it is so that ye gyue
me this counsell / and that of ryght myne aunseters
hath¹¹ acustomyd the same, I wyll not do the contrary,
but it shall be as ye haue sayd.' then was Huon led 24
with .iiii. paynems to a darke preson, & the Jayler
was commaunded to gyue hym mete & drinke suffycient /
when Huon saw how he was in preson, he was ryght
sorowfull, and began to remembre the noble duches hys 28
mother, and Gererde his brother / and sayd, 'a, Oberon,
how is it that¹² thou art soo vnkynd & outragious to
me / for so lytell¹³ ¹⁴offence to suffer me¹⁵ endure this
greate mysery; for I knowe well it is not vnknown to 32
thee that the offence that I haue done was but alonely¹⁶

¹ who. ² he. ³ and then. ⁴ .xi. ⁵ may.
⁶⁻⁸ after hate. ⁷⁻⁷ is. ⁸ and. ⁹ this man.
¹⁰ seeing. ¹¹ haue euer. ¹² omitted. ¹³ an.
¹⁴ Fol. xxxi. col. 2. ¹⁵ to. ¹⁶ only.

by forgetfulness.' Now lett vs leue spekyng of Huon,
 and speke¹ of the fayre Esclaramonde, doughter to
 the admyrall. when she saw it was nyght, & she all
 4 a lone in her bedde / she remembered the frenche
 knyght who had kyssyd her .iii. tymes in y^e presence
 of her father, and she was in greate sorow by cause he
 was sett² in presone, and sayd to her selfe, 'without he
 8 were a knyght of grete enterpryse he wolde neuer haue
 ben so hardy to haue done as he hath done this day
 in dyuers maners' / wherfore she sayd he was well
 worthy to be belouyd & socoured / then incontynent
 12 she rose & made her redy / and preuely she toke a
 torche of wax in her hand and lyghted it, & yssuyd
 out of her chaumbre as preuely as she coude: it was
 about mydnyght, and euery man was aslepe in the
 16 palayes. she went straye to the prison, and came
 at so good a tyme that she found the Jayler³ aslepe /
 then she stole awaye the keyes, and wente & openyd the
 prison dore; and⁴ when Huon saw the candel⁵ lyght
 20 & y^e dore of the prison open, he was in grete fere leest
 they wold take hym out to put hym to dethe, or to
 do hym sum⁶ dyspleasure / then⁷ he began to make
 pytyfull complayntes / the lady, who could well speke
 24 frenche, vnderstode all Huons complantes, and re-
 memberyd his name, bycause the day before she had
 harde hymselfe shew her father hys name. then she
 sayd, 'Huon, dysmay the⁸ not; I am Esclaramond,
 28 doughter to y^e Admyrall, whom, this day passed, thou
 dyd kys .iii. tymes in the presence of my father; if it
 be so that thou wylt fullfyll my wyll, I shall put to my
 payne⁹ to deluyur the out of prison / for I am so
 32 ¹⁰amorous of ¹⁰thee that euer sen ¹¹thou dedest kys me
 I haue had none other thought nor ymagynacyon but

Esclaramonde
 laments Huon's
 imprisonment,

and secretly at
 midnight goes
 towards the
 prison.

She confesses to
 Huon her love
 for him.

¹ say somewhat.

² put.

³ fast.

⁴ But.

⁵ torch.

⁶ other.

⁷ whereupon.

⁸ omitted.

⁹ endeavour.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ affectionate towards.

¹¹ since.

Huon reminds
Esclaramonde that
she is a Saracen,

and he ought
never to have
approached her.

Esclaramonde
departs in wrath,
and bids the
gaoler keep his
prisoner three
days without food
or drink.

The request is
obeyed, and Huon
fears he will die
for lack of
sustenance.

onely on the and¹ to brynge the out of y^e daunger
that thou art in.' 'Dame,'³ quod Huon, 'god rewarde
you⁴ of the⁴ greate curtesaye that ye wold do to⁵ me;
but, fayre lady Esclaramond, ye be⁶ a sarazyn, and I am⁴
crystened. trew it is, in that I dyd kys you,⁷ was by
the commaundement of kyng Charlemayne, who sent
me hether,⁸ but or⁹ elles I had rather to haue bene here
in perpetuall pryson / then to haue touched eny parte⁸
of your flessh¹⁰ or mouthe as long as ye be a saryzyn.'
'Huon,' quod the lady, 'sen¹¹ thou art of that mynd,
thou shalt end thy dayes here in preson myserably, nor¹²
neuer trust me, for¹³ yf I can, I shall cause y^e derely to¹²
aby the refuce¹⁴ that thou haste made me.' Then the
lady Esclaramonde departed fro the pryson and came
to the Jayler, and awoke hym, & sayed, 'frend, I charge
the on payne of thy lyfe / that to this frenche prisoner¹⁶
within thy kepynge, that¹⁵ these iii dayes and .iii.
nyghtes thou gyue hym nother mete nor drynke.'
'Dame,'³ quod the Jayler, 'your commaundemente
shall be fulfilled.' then y^e lady for dysplasure wente²⁰
agayne to her bed ryght pensyue and full of fantesyes /
& Huon was .iii. dayes & .iii. nyghtes without mete or
drynke, & on the .iiii. day he sayd, all wepynge,¹⁶ 'A,
good lorde, I see well I muste¹⁷ dye for hungre; I²⁴
humbly require the to ayde & socoure me, and graunt
me the grace that I¹⁸ consent nor do eny thyng that
shuld¹⁹ be ayenst thy pleasure, or ayenst thy holy law,
for ony trybulacyon that can cum to me' / Thus this⁹ 28
noble Huon complayned all wepynge¹⁶; ¹²there is³⁰ no
creature that had harde hym but ²¹that shuld²¹ haue
ben parte takers of his greate sorowes.

¹ how. ² Fol. xxxi. back, col. 1. ³ Madame. ⁴⁻⁴ for your.
⁵ vnto. ⁶ are. ⁷ but that. ⁸ so to doe. ⁹ omitted.
¹⁰ bodie. ¹¹ seing. ¹² and. ¹³ but. ¹⁴ refusall.
¹⁵ for. ¹⁶ sorowing. ¹⁷ heere. ¹⁸ neither.
¹⁹ shall. ²⁰ was. ²¹⁻²¹ he would.

¶ How Huon made grete complaints for the
famyne that he endured, and how the fayre
Esclaramonde came¹ to comforte hym so²
4 that Huon wolde fulfyll her desyre.

Capitulo .xxxix[a].³

4 **T**Hus, as ye haue herd before, Huon
complayned peteualy, for he had ben
8 .iii. dayes and .iii. nyghtes without
sustenance. ⁵y^e lady Esclaramonde,
who caused it, euery mornynge &
euery euenynge came⁶ to the prison to here what
12 Huon wold say, and euer she would demaunde ⁷Huon
yf he were eny other wyse aduysed to answeere her
or not, & euer she founde hym at one poynte / and⁸
at the last, when she saw *that*,⁹ then she demaundyd of
16 hym / ¹⁰yf she delyueryd hym out of preson yf¹¹ he would
then promyse her to lede her with hym into Fraunce, & to
take hyr to his wyf when he cam ther. 'yf thou wylt
promyse me this,' quod she, 'thou shalte haue mete &
20 drynke sufficyent at thy pleasure.' 'Dame,'¹² quod
Huon, 'I promyse you faythfully, ¹³though I shulde be
for euer dampned in hell,¹⁴ I shall do your pleasure,
what so euer fall¹⁴ to me therby' / 'then know for
24 trouthe,' quod the lady, ¹⁰'for the loue of the I wyll
become crystened & beleue in the law of our¹⁵ lord
Ihesu / Cryst as sone as we come in¹⁶ eny place where as
it may be.'¹⁷ Huon thanked her / ⁵then she causyd
28 hym to haue mete & drynke, wherof he was ioyfull /

Esclaramonde
visits the prison
day by day,

and promises to
set him free,
if he will take
her with him
to France,
and make her his
wife.

She is willing to
become a
Christian.

Huon thanks her,
and agrees to all
her plans.

¹ againe.² conditionally.³ The original has two chapters numbered xxxix.⁴ Fol. xxxi. back, col. 2.⁵ and.⁶ before first euery; second euery omitted.⁷ of.⁸ But. ⁹ he still continued in that minde.¹⁰ that. ¹¹ whether. ¹² Madame.¹³⁻¹⁷ that upon your forsaking Paganisme, and conuersion
to our christian faith.¹⁴ happen.¹⁵ the.¹⁶ to.¹⁷ done.

Esclarmonde tells
the gaoler to go
to her father,
and say that
Huon is dead.

The gaoler serves
Huon faithfully,
and keeps the
secret.

then¹ she callyd y^e Jayler & sayd, 'go thy way in haste
to the Admyrall my father, and shew² hym how³ the
frenche knyght is deed .iii. dayes past for⁴ feblenes and
hungre' / 'Dame,'⁵ quod the Jayler, 'I am redy to do ⁴
your commaundement,' & so he wente to the Admyrall
& sayd, 'sir, the frenche knyght that was in my
kepinge ys deed for⁶ famyn .iii. dayes past.' 'a,'⁷ quod
the Admyrall, 'I am sory therfor; but sen⁸ it wyll be⁹ 8
none other wyse I must ouer¹⁰ passe it, but I had rather
that he were alius.' & thus, as ye haue harde, Huon
was respyted¹¹ from the¹² deth / ¹³it is a *commen*¹⁴
sayeng,³ one day of respyte¹⁵ is worth ¹⁶c. yere.¹⁷ then ¹²
the Jayler returned to the preson vnto the lady, and
shewed her what he had saed to the Admyrall / 'well,
frend,' quod the lady, 'if thou wylt be secrete I shall
make *thee*¹⁸ ryche for euer as ¹⁹to ayde me in such thinges ¹⁶
as I wolde haue'²⁰ / 'Dame,'²¹ quod he, 'to dye in the
quarell I shall do you seruyse suche as ye commaunde
me, the fere of deth shall not lett me to do it.' Now
lett vs leue spekyng of Huon, who was often tymes ²⁰
vysyted *with* the Jayler, and had all thynges as he
desyred, and was well lodged at his pleasure / ¹Lett vs
now speke of Gerames & of them *that* were *with* hym
in the castell of the gyant. 24

¶ How Gerames & his company departed fro
the towre, & the damesell with them, and
cam to babylon, & of the maner that
Gerames held²² to know sum newes of 28
Huon. Capitulo .xl.

¹ and. ² tell. ³ that. ⁴ through. ⁵ Ladie. ⁶ by.
⁷ Alas. ⁸ seeing. ⁹ be *after* otherwyse.
¹⁰ ouer *after* it. ¹¹ deliuered. ¹² omitted.
¹³ for. ¹⁴ but a very true. ¹⁵ deliuerance.
¹⁶ a. ¹⁷ of endurance. ¹⁸ Fol. xxxii. col. l.
¹⁹ helping. ²⁰ thee. ²¹ Madame.
²² vsed.



4 **W**E haue herd here before how Huon
deperterd fro the towre of the Gyant,
and lefte there Gerames & all his
company, with the damesell his
cousyn. they taryed theyr .iii.
monethes, and neuer herd eny thyng of Huon, wherof
they were sorowfull / and¹ went fourthe² in a² moren-
8 ynge & came to the sees syde, to se yf they myght here
eny worde³ of ther lorde Huon; and as they lokyd in
to⁴ the see they spyed a shyppe charged with .xxx.
paynemes and grete ryches / then⁵ Gerames saw how
12 the shipp was commynge to that porte / then⁶ he sayd
to his company, 'syrs, lett vs go and se yf we can
know eny tydynges of Huon by them' / then they
went to the port, & by that tyme⁷ the maryners had
16 caste ther ancre / then Gerames demaunded of them
whense they were, & whether they wold go. 'sir,'
quod they, 'we wolde go to the Mesque to paye to
Angolafer, the grete gyant, a trybute that we are
20 bound euery yere to paye / and,⁸ syr, we desyre you to
shew vs wher we myght⁹ fynde hym' / and when
Gerames saw how⁷ thy were all alonde out of the shyp,
he sayd, 'a, ye vnhappy paynemes, ye shall neuer
24 departe hens, for he that ye demaunde for is deed /
and all ye shall bere hym good¹⁰ company.'

¶ Then Gerames sayd to his company, 'syrs, let all
these paynemes be slayne' / & then incontynent they
28 sett vpon them, so that all the paynemes were slayne,
not one that¹⁰ scaped a lyue / for the crysten men were
armyd, and the paynemes without harnes¹¹ or eny wepyn /
for other wyse they durste not cum alond for fere of
32 the gyant. then Gerames entred in to the shyp and
toke all that they founde theyr, and bare it into the

For three months
Gerames and his
company tarry
for Huon in the
giant's tower.

They go to the
sea-shore to seek
news of him,
when a ship filled
with Saracens
sails up.

The voyagers are
come to pay their
yearly tribute to
the giant,
and ask Gerames
where they may
find him.

Gerames replies
that he is dead,
and that his
questioners shall
share his fate.

All the paynims
are slain,
although they
are unarmed.

¹ They. ²⁻² one. ³ newes. ⁴ vpon.
⁵ and. ⁶ wherfore. ⁷ that. ⁸ therefore.
⁹ Fol. xxxii. col. 2. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ armour.

Gerames advises
the knights to
sail with him in
the Saracens' ship,

and seek out
Huon.

All agree to follow
his counsel.

They fit out the
ship for the
voyage,

and sail into the
high sea till they
reach Damietta.

Passing up the
Nile,
they arrive at
Babylon.

towre / & then they wente to dyner, and made grete ¹of¹
that aduenture, and after dyner Gerames sayd, 'syrs, yf
we were now in Fraunce, and ²kyng Charlemayne dyd³
demaunde of vs what is become of Huon, ye know well ⁴
ther is none of vs can tell whether he be alyue or
deed / for yf we shulde say² he is deed / & ⁴after warde
returme home, then we shulde be reputed for false men
euer after, bothe we and our chyl dren / ⁵a man may be ⁸
a presoner .xiii. or .xv. yere, and yet come home agayne
at the last safe and sounde / But, syrs, and ye wyll
beleue me, we shall do lyke trew men / we haue as
now in this port a good shyppe, well furnesshyd with ¹²
euery thyng / and we haue here gold and syluer
plenty / and we shall sone vytell our shype / and then
lett vs take the see, & neuer rest saylyng tyll⁶ we here
sum newes of our lord Huon / and yf we do thus, then ¹⁶
we do as trew men ought to do / and I desyre you all
euery man shew his aduys⁷ / then, without takyng of
any longer respyt, they answeyrd all with one voyce
that they were redy to accomple⁸she all that he had ²⁰
deuy⁸sd : then⁸ they tooke gold and syluer, and all ther
ryches, and bare it in to the shyppe, & furnysshed it
with wyne, bysket, salt flesshe, ⁹and artelery / and
when ther shyp was garnysshed, they put in theyr ²⁴
horses & ther armure / & they all .xiii. companyons
entred in to the shype, and the damsell with them. then
they wayed vp ther ancrs & hawsed vp ther sayle,
and so lefte the towre of the Gyant all voyd, and no ²⁸
man therin, & thus they sayled alonge the cost tyll⁶
they came into the hye see, and so long they sayled tyl
they came to Damiete / & there they entred into the
ryuer of Nyle / and so longe they sayled therin / that ³²
they aryued at Babylon, and came to the port, and

¹⁻¹ ioy for.

² that.

³ should.

⁴ he.

⁵ for.

⁶ vntill.

⁷ herein.

⁸ So.

⁹ Fol. xxxii. back, col. 1.

tooke out theyr horses. Gerames, that knew well the
 langage and the maner of the enterynge in to¹ y^e. .iiii.
 gates, sayd to his company / 'syr, lett vs lepe² on our
 4 horses, & let vs enter into y^e cyte to se yf we may
 here eny newes of our master Huon.' thus they rode
 fourthe & entred in to the cytye / ³then gerames sayd,
 'syr, we wyll go to the palayes, but when we come
 8 there holde you all your pease, & suffer me to speke,
 wherfore it is conuenient that ye all agre to my
 wordes, and say not the contrary' / they answeryd and
 sayd they were contente so to do / ³thus they rode
 12 togyther through the towne. 'A, good lord,' quod
 Gerames, 'I beseeche the of thy grace to graunt vs that
 we may here sum good tydynges of our mayster, Huon
 of Burdeux, for whom we be in iuberdy of dethe' / so
 16 they passyd all the .iiii. brydges and gates, by reason
that Gerames shewed fourth suche reasons *that* the
 porters were content / then they came before the greate
 hall, and theyr they alyghted, and mounted vp all
 20 .xiii., and the damsell with them; and when they were
 in the hall they saw the Admyrall gaudys syttyng on
 a ryche chayre, garmysshed with gold and presyous
 stones / and Gerames that coulede well speke the langage
 24 sarazin,⁴ cam before y^e Admyrall and sayd / 'the same
 Mahounde⁵ that causeth ⁶to grow⁶ y^e wine and y^e⁷
 corne saue and kepe ye Admyrall gaudys, whom ⁸I se
 theyr syttyng amonge his barons' / 'Frende,' quod the
 28 admyrall, 'thou art welcom. I pray the shew me what
 thou art, & whether thou wouldest go' / 'syr,' quod
 Gerames, ⁹'I shew⁹ you playnely I am come from the
 good cytye of mombraunte, and am sonne to kyng
 32 yuoryn.' when the Admyrall hard that / he rose vp on
 his fete and sayd, 'thou art welcome, the sonne of my
 brother / fayre nepheu, I pray you shew me how dothe

They disembark,
 and mounting
 their horses, ride
 through the city.

Gerames,
 although he
 knows of the
 four gates,
 promises to lead
 them to the
 palace.

He induces the
 porters to let them
 through the gates,
 and they come to
 the great hall,
 and having
 dismounted,

together enter
 the presence of
 the Admiral.

Gerames salutes
 him in the
 Saracen tongue.

He feigns himself
 to be son to king
 Ivoryn,
 and to have come
 from the city of
 Mombraunt,

whereupon the
 Admiral bids
 him welcome,

¹ all. ² mount. ³ &. ⁴ after langage. ⁵ god. ⁶⁻⁸ after corne.
⁷ omitted. ⁹ Fol. xxxii. back, col. 2. ⁹⁻⁹ to tell.

believing
Gerames to be
his nephew.

Gerames pretends
that the twelve
Frenchmen with
him have been
sent by Ivoryn

to be imprisoned
by the Admiral
his brother.

Gerames is given
command of
everything in the
Admiral's house,

and is named
his chief
chamberlain.

Gerames thus
takes charge of
his companions.

The Admiral
warns him not
to starve them,
as Huon of
Burdeaux,
a recent prisoner,
was starved to
death.

mi brother yuoryn' / 'syr,' quod Gerames, 'when I
departyd fro hym I lefte hym in good helth, and he
saluted you by me / and hath sent here to you .xii.
frenchemen by me, the which were taken vppon the 4
see as they were goynge a pylgrymage to the holy
sepulcre of god¹ in Jeruzalem / and he desyreth you to
put them in preson vnto² the day of saynt Johnz the
Baptyst, at whyche day ye must make the fest of your 8
goddess / and then to brynge them into the medow here
without, and to³ tye & bynde them to stakes, and lett
your archers shote at them, to the entent to know who
shoteth best / and⁴ this damsell that is here with me / 12
she to be put to your doughter to teche hyr to speake
perfeygthly the ⁵language of frenche' / 'fayre
nepheu,' quod the Admyrall, 'as ⁶ye haue deuysed⁶ yt
shalbe done / and I giue you powre to commaund euery 16
thyng in thys house at your pleasure, and I pray you
shew me what ys your name' / 'syr,' quod he, 'I am
callyd Jeracle' / 'well,' quod the Admyrall, 'fro hense
furthe I retayne you to be as my chefe chamberlayne, 20
and I wyll that ye haue the kaye of the preson in your
keypyng, and therin to put these caytyues⁷ and to do
with them at your pleasure. ⁸I wyll ye loue them but
a lytell⁸ / but let them haue mete & drynke suffycient 24
that they dye not for⁹ famyn / as but late¹⁰ dyed a
frencheman that was sent to me by kynge Charles of
Fraunce, who was callyd Huon of burdeaux, the whiche
was a ryght fayre yonge man.' 28

Gerames is angry
and grieved at the
Admiral's words
concerning
Huon's sad end,

¹¹ **W** Han Gerames herd that, he had before¹² neuer
¹³so grete¹³ sorowe at his herte / for¹⁴ his dyspleasure and

¹ Christ. ² vntill. ³ there. ⁴ as for.
⁵⁻⁵ french language. ⁶⁻⁶ he hathe appointed. ⁷ captiues.
⁸⁻⁸ extend vnto them what kindness you please.
⁹ with. ¹⁰ lately. ¹¹ Fol. xxxiii. col. 1.
¹² after neuer. ¹³⁻¹³ greater.
¹⁴ then (hearing of the death of Huon).

yre¹ was so gret that he hadde nere hande rynne vpon
 y^e Admyrall / and he was so angry² in his herte³ that
 he toke vp a staffe that laye by hym, & gaue eche of
 4 the frensshe men such strokes on theyr hedes that the
 blode ranne downe, but they suffred it, and durst not
 styre, they were in such fere of the Admyral / but
 then⁴ cursed Gerames for his strokes / who dyd it for
 8 the nones.⁵ And when the Admyrall saw how he had
 well beten y^e frensshemen he sayd, 'fayre nephew, it
 semyth wel by you that ye loue⁶ but lytell⁶ these crysten
 men.' 'Syr,' quod he, 'I hate these crysten men more
 12 than any men in the worlde / for, syr, all the way that
 I haue come I haue thus betten them thre tymes in
 euery day in the honor of my god Mahounde, and in the
 dyspyte of the⁷ lawe⁸ of Jesu chryste,⁸ on whome they
 16 beleue.' thus then Gerames departed fro y^e Admyral /
 & lede with them the .xii. Frenche prysoners / betynge
 them tyll he came to y^e pryson / and none of them
 durste speke one worde / but to them selfe they cursed
 20 Gerames. And as they went to y^e pryson warde¹⁰ they
 met with the lady Esclaramond / and she sayd,
 'cosyn / I am ryght ioyous of your comyng / but yf I
 durst trust in you / I wolde shewe you a secrete mater /
 24 so that ye promyse not to dyscouer me' / 'cosyn,'
 quod Gerames / 'by my faythe that I owe to my god
 Mahounde, ye maye well shewe me youre wyll &
 plesure / for¹¹ myn eyen¹² to be drawen out I shall neuer
 28 dyscouer you.' & when the damsell herd that promys /
 she sayd / 'fayre¹³ cosyn, it is a .v. monthes passed¹⁴ /
 theyr cam to my fader the Admyrall a Frensshe
 knyght with a message fro kyng Charlemayn, who
 32 called hymselfe Huon of Burdeux /¹⁵ who, when he had

but not to excite
suspicion,
he cudgels the
Frenchmen.

Esclaramonde
meets Gerames
leading his
companions to
prison.

She tells Gerames
how, although
the Admiral
believes Huon
dead, he is still
alive.

¹ anger. ² vexed. ³ mind. ⁴ they. ⁵ nonst.

⁶⁻⁶ after men. ⁷ their. ⁸⁻⁸ and God.

⁹ towards. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ if. ¹² were.

¹³ Deare. ¹⁴ since. ¹⁵ Fol. xxxiii, col. 2.

done his message / he slew a paynym kynge as he sate
at the table by my fader / & after came and kyst me
.iii. tymes¹ / & after² slew many sarazins / wherfor at
last he was taken prysoner & set³ in pryson, where as 4
he is yet / howe be it, I made my fader byleue that he
is deed for⁴ famyn ; ⁵how be it,⁵ cosyn, he is as yet
⁶on lyue,⁶ as wel serued of mete & drynke as my
fader is.' 8

Gerames fears she
has deceived him,

and says nothing
to her.

He sets the
Frenchmen in
prison.

Huon could not
see them through
the darkness of
the prison,
but he hears one
of them making
complaint of his
hard fate.

Huon knows
from their speech
that they are
Frenchmen,

When Gerames vnderstode y^e damsell Esclara-
mond / he was bothe sorowfull & angry / for
he thought the damsell dyd it to dysceyue him, & to
cause hym to shew forth the secretnes of hys mynde / 12
& by cause ⁷of *that*⁷ doute⁸ he passed forth & made no
maner of answeere to the damsell / but came to y^e
pryson, & put in the prysoners rudely ; & the damsell
returned ryght sorowfull in that she had shewed so 16
muche of her mynd to Gerames, whom she toke for her
cosyn / when Gerames had set³ the .xii. frensshemen in
pryson, he returned ryght sorowful / & Huon, beyng
in the pryson, had grete meruayle what prysoners they 20
were that were let downe in to the pryson / ⁹he could
not se them, the pryson was so derke / then he drew
nere to them to here them speke / so ¹⁰at laste one of them
began to make his complaynt, & sayd / ' a, good lorde 24
Jesu cryst, socour vs, for thou knowest wel this that we
suffre we haue not deserued it,¹¹ but it is for y^e loue of
our yong lord, Huon of Burdeux / we haue loued hym
so well *that* nowe we be loste for euer / ¹²dere lorde 28
Jesu cryst, haue pyte on our soules¹² / when Huon
herde what they sayd / then he knewe well² they were
crystened & frensshe men / ⁹then he coueyted moche to
know what they were, & so approched nere to them & 32

¹ before my Fathers face. ² that. ³ put. ⁴ with.

⁵⁻⁶ yet, deere. ⁶⁻⁸ aloue and. ⁷⁻⁷ he was in.

⁸ thereof. ⁹ for. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ omitted.

¹²⁻¹² except, deere Lord, thou haue mercie vppon vs.

sayd / 'syr, ye that be here, I pray you shewe me
 what ye be, & how ye be come hyder' / 'syr,' quod
 one of them, 'trewe it is a¹ fyue monthes passed theyr
 4 departed from vs a yong knyght, with whom ²we
 departed³ out of the realme of Fraunce / and he was
 borne in Fraunce, and sone to a noble Duke / called
 duke Seunyn of Burdeux / this knyght slewe Charlet,
 8 sone to the⁴ kynge Charlemayne, by a mysaduenture,
 wherfore he was banysshed out of y^e realme of
 Fraunce / & sent by kynge Charlemayne to doo a
 message to the Admyrall Gaudys, who⁵ is deed in
 12 pryson, as it is shewed vs / & syr, we went⁶ to seke for
 him, and are betrayed by one of our owne company.'
 &⁴ when Huon herde hym speke / he knewe hym well,
 & sayd / 'syr, be of good comforte & make good chere,
 16 for I am here,⁴ Huon, safe & in good helth, thanked
 be god & the Admyralles doughter / who is so amorous⁶
 of me that she hath sauyn my lyfe / ye shall see soone
 how she wyll come & vysyt vs.⁷ But I pray you, syrs,
 20 what is become of the⁴ old Gerames / whyther he be
 lefte behynde to kepe the toure with the damsell my
 cosyn, who I lefte in your kepyng' / 'syr,' quod
 they, 'a wors creature, ⁸more vntrue⁸ traytour was
 24 neuer borne / for he hath betrayed vs & hath beten
 & put vs in this⁴ pryson / & as for y^e damsell, she
 is with the Admyralles doughter' / when Huon par-
 ceyued that all they were of his company / he went &
 28 kyssed⁹ them, & sayd, 'syr, knowe of a surety that all
 that Gerames hath done is¹⁰ to the entent to delyuer vs
 all / ¹¹I knowe so well¹¹ the trouth of Gerames. Syrs,
 make good chere / for as soone as nyght cometh we
 32 shal be vysyted with grete ioye' / 'syr,' quod they,

and asks them
 how they came
 thither.

They tell their
 story,

and Huon reveals
 himself.

They bitterly
 complain of
 Gerames'
 apparent
 treachery,

but Huon tells
 them that
 Gerames is
 seeking by such
 devices to save
 them.

¹ that. ² Fol. xxxiii. back, col. 1. ³ came. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ and he. ⁶ enamoured. ⁷ me. ⁸⁻⁸ or more false.

⁹ embraced. ¹⁰ done.

¹¹⁻¹¹ out of prison. I doe so well know.

'surely we byleued that Gerames had forsaken the faythe of Iesu¹ Cryst &² become a sarazyn / for he hath made the Admyrall byleue that he is sone to his brother, kyng yuoryn of Montbrant.' when Huon⁴ herd that, he had grete ioye at his herte, & sayd / 'a, good lorde, the trouthe of Gerames and loue that he hath³ all wheres³ shewed to me / shall be to vs ryght profytable in y^e spyte of⁴ Oberon, who hath forsaken⁸ me for a small offence / by Gerames we shal be deluyered out of this pouerte & daunger.' Now leueth thystory⁶ to speke of Huon / & his company, beyng in pryson, & ⁷speketh of⁷ the olde Gerames, who¹² studyed⁸ for the delyueraunce of Huon & his company.

¶ How Gerames and the fayre Esclaramonde wente to the pryson to comforte Huon & the other prysoners. Cap. .xli. 16



Owe sheweth thystory⁶ when *that*⁹ Gerames was returned to the Admyrall he sayd / 'syr, y^e frensshe-men that I brought are faste in¹⁰ pryson and well beten' / 'fayre nephew,' quod the Admyral, 'they haue had but an euyl neyghboure of you.' Then Gerames wente in to his chambre and studyed how he myghte furnyssh²⁴ these¹⁰ prysoners with vytayle / & dyde so moche that he had suffyceyent / and when nyght came he went with his vytayle to the pryson / for he myght do there what he lyst, for euery man was redy to do hym²⁸ ¹¹seruyce / when he came to the pryson dore / he sent euery man away and taryed there alone / and he had not ben there longe but *that*¹² ¹²thyther came¹² the

Gerames studies how he may send food to his prisoners, and at length goes with it himself to the prison.

¹ omitted. ² was. ³⁻³ alwaies. ⁴ king.

⁵ Fol. xxxiii. back, col. 2. ⁶ the Historie.

⁷⁻⁷ returneth to. ⁸ and practised. ⁹ before when.

¹⁰ the. ¹¹ any. ¹²⁻¹² came thether *after* daughter.

Admyralles doughter / when Gerames saw her he wyst
 not what to thynke / and¹ sayde, 'fayre cosyn, I praye
 you shewe me what doo ye here at this houre' / 'dere
 4 cosyn,' quod she / 'the grete truste that I haue in
 you / hathe made me to come hyther / by cause to
 daye I dyscouered to you al my secretes, and² that I
 am in wyll to do / & that is,² that ye wolde leue the
 8 law of Mahounde & receyue the crysten fayth / & I³ to
 go⁴ in to fraunce⁵ with these prisoners, & we shal well
 fynd y^e maner how to departe, & we⁶ shall haue⁶ with
 vs all the prysoners that ye haue put in pryson.'

Esclarmonde
 meete him at
 the door,

and begs that he
 will arrange for
 the release of
 his prisoners,
 so that she and
 they may return
 to France
 together.

12 **W**hen Gerames vnderstode⁸ y^e lady he
 was⁹ ioyfull / for then he knewe well¹⁰
 she wente not aboute to dysceyue¹¹
 hym / but that she dyd it of good
 16 corage¹² & good wyll that she bare to
 Huon / how be it, he thought¹⁰ he wolde not dyscouer
 hymselfe to her vnto¹³ y^e tyme he knewe y^e trouth of
 Huon / then¹⁴ he answered fyersly¹⁵ the damsell,¹⁶ &
 20 sayde, 'O thou fals & vntrue wenche,¹⁷ how arte thou
 so hardy¹⁸ to speke or thynke thus? / surely the Admy-
 rall thy father shall knowe it as soone as he cometh
 out of his chambre, & then shalt thou be brint,¹⁹
 24 and the frensshemen hanged' / 'a,²⁰ syr,' quod she,
 'yet I pray you let me go in to the pryson with you,
 to the entent that I may se Huon ones yet or²¹ I dye /
 for the loue of whom I am content to dye; if he dye
 28 I wyl not lyue one day after / therfore let me ones
 take²² leue of him.' 'Dame,'²³ quod Gerames, 'for this
 tyme I am content that ye go with me' / then Gerames

Gerames affects
 anger at
 Esclarmonde's
 treachery against
 her father.

But she begs
 permission to pay
 one visit to Huon,

and, Gerames
 consenting,

¹ but.

²⁻³ what I am intended to doe. Therefore let me intreat you.

³ then. ⁴ with me. ⁵ together. ⁶⁻⁶ will take.

⁷ Fol. xxxiii. col. 1. ⁸ had heard. ⁹ right.

¹⁰ that. ¹¹ descrie. ¹² heart. ¹³ vntill.

¹⁴ wherefore. ¹⁵ angerly. ¹⁶ after answered.

¹⁷ maide. ¹⁸ as. ¹⁹ burned. ²⁰ alas.

²¹ before. ²² my. ²³ Well.

they enter
together.
Huon recognizes
his old friend,

and Esclarmonde
learns the truth.

Huon and his
company thank
Esclarmonde for
her assistance.

toke a torche in his handes, and opened the dore & entred / he was no soner entred but Huon knew hym, & went & embrased hym, & sayd, 'a, my true loue, blessyd be the houre that I founde you' / then they all 4 cleped & kyssed¹ him. when the lady sawe theyr maner² she was ioyfull / for then she saw well that her dede³ shold 'the surelyer be conuayed⁴ / then she cam to Huon & demaunded yf they were his sertes⁵ that 8 made so gret chere⁶ togyther. 'dame,'⁷ quod Huon / 'surely al these that be here be my men / surely⁸ ye may trust them / for there is none of them but *that* they shal do your commaundement.' 'Huon,' quod 12 the damsell, 'there comynge pleaseth me ryght wel' / then Huon sayd to his company / ⁹'syrs, I pray you make me no more chere, but to⁹ this noble lady, for by her we shal be delyuered / for¹⁰ it is she that hath 16 sauyd my lyfe' / then they all togyther¹¹ thanked her / 'syrs,' quod she, 'yf ye wyll worke by my counsell / I shal shew you how ¹²I maye ayde you to delyuer you¹³ hense / ¹⁴I wyll that ye all byleue surely how¹⁴ I do 20 fermely byleue in Iesu cryst, and at this daye there is no man that I more hate then the Admyrall Gaudys my father, by cause he beleueth not in our lorde Jesu cryst / for he hateth so the crysten men / he can not 24 abyde to here¹⁵ spekyng of theym / for he byleueth but vpon Mahounde & vpon¹⁶ his ydolles, therefore my herte can not loue hym / yf he dyde other wyse I wolde purchase to hym none yll / for all the good in the world / 28 but I shall shewe you what ye muste do / when it is the houre of mydnyght I shall brynge you all in to my

¹ embraced. ² of saluting. ³ intent.

⁴⁻⁴ be more surely compassed, &. ⁵ seruantes.

⁶ loue. ⁷ Madame. ⁸ boldly.

⁹⁻⁹ gentlemen and my deare friends, forbear this extremite of kinnesse to me and bestow it vpon

¹⁰ and. ¹¹ humbly. ¹² Fol. xxxliii. col. 2.

¹³ from. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ First let me unfainedly perswade ye that

¹⁵ any. ¹⁶ omitted.

chambre, where as I shall¹ prouyde harneys² for you all /
 and there ye shall all be armed / then I shall brynge you
 in to y^e Admyral my faders chambre / whom ye shall
 4 fynde slepyng / and then³ ye maye slee hym / and as for
 me, I shall¹ be the fyrst that shal stryke hym / and when
 he is slayne then shall we departe surely / when Huon
 4vnderstode her, he sayde / 'dame,⁵ & god wyll your
 8 fader shal not so be slayne / y^e day shal come that ye
 shall other wyse delyuere vs / we thanke you that ye
 desyre so moche our delyueraunce / ⁶I thynke it good
 that ye and Gerames departe hense / for this tyme, for
 12 it is nere hand day, to the entent that our besynes be
 not perceyued / then the lady & Gerames departed &
 closed agayne the pryson dore, & wente⁷ in to the palayes,
 & / ⁸when it was day / & also⁸ euery day Gerames
 16 & y^e lady went to vysyt y^e prysoners, & bare them
 euery thyng that was nedefull for them / Gerames
 was all wayes with the Admyrall / and dyd what he
 wold / for theyr was no paynym that durste do con-
 20 trary to his commaundement. Now leue we to speke
 of the Admyral / of Gerames, and of Huon, & of all
 them that were in the⁹ pryson / ¹⁰vnto the tyme we¹⁰
 returne to them agayne.

She promises
to lead them that
night to her own
room,
and thence will
take them to her
father's chamber
that they may
slay him while
asleep.
Huon rejects her
unfilial plan.

Every day
Esclarmonde and
Gerames visit
the prison.

24 ¶ ¹¹How the gret gyant Agrapart, eldest broder
 to Angolaffer, whom Huon slewe / as-
 sembled his people and came to Babylon
 to haue the trybute of the Admyral as his
 28 broder had / and of the batayll hande
 for¹² hande that he desyred of the Ad-
 myrall Gaudys / the whiche was agrede.¹³

Capitulo .xlii.

¹ will. ² armour. ³ there. ⁴ had. ⁵ Madame. ⁶ but.

⁷ vp. ⁸⁻⁸ as if they had not bene there at all and thus.

⁹ omitted. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ vntill such time as we may.

¹¹ Fol. xxxliii. back, col. 1. ¹² to. ¹³ vnto.

Agrapart grieves
for the death of
his brother
Angolaffer
[Galafre], whom
Huon had slain.
He was as gigantic
and hideous to
look upon as his
brother.



He gathers
together the men
of the neighbour-
ing country,

and bids them
follow him to
Babylon to obtain
from the Admiral
the land and
tribute which
belonged to his
brother.

¹ S ye haue herd¹ her before how Huon
slewe the gyant Angolaffer / the
whiche gyant had .xvii. bretherne
all elder than hym selfe / ² & anone ⁴
after *that* the deth of Angolaffer was
knownen, then when his elder brother
named Agrapart was aduertysed of the deth of his
brother, he toke therof grete sorow / he was as grete as ⁸
his brother was ² / he was .xvii. fote of length, & of ⁸
bygnes he was ⁴ thereafter / he was a fote bytwene the
browes / & his eyen more redder & brynnynge⁶ then a
broude of fyre, & y^e grystell of his nose as grete as the ¹²
mossell⁶ ⁷ of an oxe / & he had two teth yssuyng out of
his mouth more then a fote longe eche of them / ⁸ yf I
shold dyscryue his foule fygure at length,⁹ it shold¹⁰
anoye all the herers therof / ¹¹ ye may well byleue; when ¹⁶
he was in dyspleasure he had a fearfull chere¹² / for then
his two eyen semed¹⁸ .ii. brynnynge⁵ torches; when
he was surely¹⁴ aduertysed of the deth of his brother he
sent ouer all his countre *that* euery man shold come to ²⁰
hym in harneys; ¹⁵ & so they dyde / & whan they were
come, he declared to them the dethe of his brother
Angolaffer, & sayde howe it was his mynde to goo to
Babylone to the Admyrall Gaudys / and to take ²⁴
possessyon of the londes and seynoryes that were his
brothers, and also to haue the trybute that was dewe by
the Admyrall / then all his lordes sayde, 'syr, com-
maunde at youre plesure, & we shall obey it' / 'well, ²⁸
syr,' *quod* he, 'then I wyll that euery man lepe¹⁶ on

¹⁻¹ It hath beene sufficiently declared.

²⁻² who liued distant from him in diuers seuerall places.
It was no longe while after but that his elder brother named
Agrapart was aduertised of the death of his Brother which he
tooke to his hart exceeding heauile. Now you must vnderstand
that he was in all respects of as huge stature as his brother, for

³ in. ⁴ made. ⁵ burning. ⁶ nostril.

⁷ Fol. xxxiiii. back, col. 2. ⁸ but. ⁹ the full.

¹⁰ would. ¹¹ therefore. ¹² countenance to looke vpon.

¹³ like. ¹⁴ certainly. ¹⁵ armour. ¹⁶ mount.

- theyr horses / to go toward Babylone' / & so they all
 obeyed, & lept¹ on theyr horses & departed, & rod
 so long *that* they cam in to a playne / nere to the cite
 4 of Babylon; they were a² .x.M. men togyder: then³ Ten thousand
men assemble
before Babylon.
 Agrapart sayde, 'syrs, tary ye all here tyll I come
 agayne, for I wyll go all alone & speke with the
 Admyrall Gaudys' / then he armyd hym,⁴ & toke a Agrapart well-
armed enters the
city alone,
and arrives at the
palace.
 8 grete fawchon in his handes / & departed al alone / &
 so went & entred in to the cyte of Babylon / & so past
 the .iiii. gates; theyr was no paynym *that* durst say
 him nay / he rested not tyll⁵ he cam to the palays;
 12 the same tyme the Admyrall was syttyng at dyner, & He finds the
Admiral at
dinner;
 Gerames⁶ before hym syttyng;⁶ then the Gyaunt came
 to the table / and sayde, 'The same god Mahounde vnder
 whome we lyue,⁷ and causeth the wyne & corne to growe,
 16 may⁷ confounde y^e Admyrall⁸ Gaudys as an yll caytyfe
 and an vntrew⁹ traytour' / when the Admyrall¹⁰ saw
 how he was so dysprayed¹⁰ / sayd,¹¹ 'Agrapart, of¹² this
 that thou hast sayd thou lvest falsely / thus shamfully
 20 to rebuke me in myn owne court before all my lordes;
 but¹³ shew me y^e cause why¹⁴ ye do¹⁴ me this iniury' /
 'Admyrall,' quod he / 'it is by cause ther is come in to
 thy court he that hath slayne my brother / whom because he is
harbouring the
murderer of his
brother.
 24 incontynente thou oughtest to haue slayne¹⁵ hym
 quycke¹⁵ / wherfore yf it were not for myne¹⁶ honor with
 my fyst, I wolde stryke the on the nose¹⁷ / thou hast
 sett¹⁸ hym in prison without any more hurte doynge to¹⁹
 28 hym / therfor, thou traytour thefe, by Mahunde be thou
 cursed; thou art not worthy to sytt in a sete royall¹³ /
 aryse vp! it is not mete for the to syt there' / and When he has
finished speaking
he pulls the
Admiral from his
throne,
 32 chayre / that his hatt and crowne fell downe to y^e

¹ got. ² about. ³ and. ⁴ himselfe. ⁵ vntill.

⁶⁻⁸ with him. ⁷⁻⁷ omitted. ⁸ Fol. xxxv. col. 1.

⁹ false. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ heard himselfe so highly abused he.

¹¹ to. ¹² in. ¹³ therefore. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ thou doest.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ likewise. ¹⁶ owne. ¹⁷ face. ¹⁸ put. ¹⁹ vnto.

erthe. then¹ y^e Admyrall was sore abashed; then
 and seate himself there. Agraparte satt downe in his chayer, and sayd, 'thou
 false traytor, my brother is deed, therfor from hens
 fourth thou shalt be my subgett / for it appertayneth⁴
 He demands the land and tribute that was due from the Admiral to his brother,
 to me to haue the landes that my brother had, and y^e
 trybute that thou were wonte to paye to² my brother, or
 elles I shall stryke of thy hede. how be it, I wyl not
 do ayenst ryght / for yf thou wylte proue the contrary, 8
 or to³ fynde .ii. champyons to be so hardy that for thy
 loue⁴ wyl fyght with me in playne batayle, I shall fyght
 but offers to free him of all obligation if he can send into the field against him two champions who are able to overcome him.
 with them; or mo, yf thou wylte sende them to me /
 and yf it be so that I be ouercome and dyscomfyted by 12
 .ii.⁵ of them, I am content⁶ from hense fourth thou shalt
 holde thy landes franke and free without eny trybute
 payenge / and⁷ yf it be⁸ so that I conqyre them bothe /
 then thou to be my subgett, and to pay me trybute for 16
 euer, & also to pay me for a knowlege⁹ euery yere
 .iiii. drams¹⁰ of gold for¹¹ thy hed money' / 'Agraparte,'
 quod the Admyrall, 'I am content thus to do, & to sett¹²
 The Admiral accepts the challenge,
 .ii. of my men to fyght with the.' 20

¹³¶ How the Admyrall gaudys toke Huon out
 of preson and armyd hym to fyght with
 the gyaunt Agraparte. Capitulo .xliiii.

and proclaims
 that he will give
 his daughter in
 marriage to any
 man who will
 fight against
 the giant.



¶ Han the Admyrall had herde the grete²⁴
 gyant he cryed¹⁴ aloude, 'where be y^e
 two gentyll knyghtes that wyl be¹⁵ euer
 my frendes / now is the tyme come
 that all the goodness and greate gyftes 28
 that I haue gyuen among you be¹⁶ now¹⁷ rewardyd; yf
 there be ony of you that wyl fyght ayenst this gyant, I
 shall gyue hym my doughter¹⁸ Esclaramonde in maryage,

¹ whereat. ² vnto. ³ omitted. ⁴ dare or. ⁵ any.
⁶ that. ⁷ But. ⁸ fall out. ⁹ due tax. ¹⁰ Ducates.
¹¹ as. ¹² appoint. ¹³ Fol. xxxv. col. 2. ¹⁴ said.
¹⁵ for. ¹⁶ is. ¹⁷ to be. ¹⁸ Fol. xxxv. back, col. 1.

and after my dethe to haue all¹ my erytage; no man
shall ²say nay therto' / but for eny fayer wordes or
promyse that the Admyrall coulede do,³ there was no
4 paynem so hardy to do⁴ it, wher with⁵ y⁶ admyrall
made gret sorow, & began to wepe;⁶ & when the gyant
Agraparte saw him, he sayd, 'thly wepyng⁷ cannot
auayle the, for whether thou wylt or not it must
8 behoue *thee* to pay these .iiii. peses of golde yerly / for I
am sure ther is no paynem that dare fyght ayenst me.'
when ye fayre lady Esclaramond saw her father wepe it
sore greued her hert, & ⁸sayd / 'o, my father, yf I knew
12 it shuld not dysplease you, I wolde shewe you one
thing the whiche shulde brynge you out of this dought' /
'doughter,' quod he, 'I swere by Mahounde I woll not
be dyspleased what so euer thou sayest' / 'sir,' quod
16 she, 'I ⁹haue shewed you or this⁹ *that* the frencheman
that brought you the message fro kyng Charlemayne
was deed in pryson; but, syr, surely¹⁰ he is as yet
alyue. yf it plese you I shall fetche hym to you / and,
20 *sir*, without dought I ¹¹waraunt you he wyll take on
hym this bateyll ayenst the gyant, for he shewed you
how he slewe the other gyaunt Angolaffer;¹² I haue hope
by the ayde of Mahounde / in lyke wyse he shall sle
24 his brother this gyant Agraparte.' 'doughter,' quod
the Admyrall, 'it is my pleasure that ye shall fetche
the presoner to me; for yf he may¹³ dyscomfyte this
gyant, I am content that he and all his company shall
28 deperte franke and free at there pleasure' / then the
lady and Gerames wente to the preson / and toke out
Huon and all his company, & brought them before the
Admyrall. Then the Admyrall soore¹⁴ behelde Huon, &
32 had ¹⁵meruell that he was in so good case / ¹⁶his coloure

No paynim
ventures forth.

Agrapart defies
the Admiral to
find any to
conquer him.

Esclaramonde tells
her father that
Huon still lives,

and promises that
he will accept
Agrapart's
challenge.

Huon is led before
the Admiral.

¹ omitted. ² be so bold as to. ³ make. ⁴ vndertake.
⁵ whervppon. ⁶ lament. ⁷ lamenting. ⁸ she.
⁹⁻⁹ I did once delude you in telling you. ¹⁰ credite me.
¹¹ dare. ¹² therefore. ¹³ can. ¹⁴ earnestly.
¹⁵ great. ¹⁶ yet.

The Admiral
invites him to
accept the
giant's challenge.

If Huon is suc-
cessful in the
fight,
and he desires to
return to France,
he shall be freed
and led to Acre,
with presents for
Charlemagne.

But if after his
success he will
stay with the
Admiral,
he shall wed
Esclaramonde
and possess half
his realm.

was sum what pale by reason of lyenge so longe in
preson / then the Admyrall sayd, 'frende, yt semeth
by thy chere¹ that thou hast had ²a good preson'² /
'syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke your doughter therof,³ and⁴ 4
⁵I pray you shew me for what cause ye haue as now
sent for me' / 'frend,' quod the Admyrall, 'I shall
shew the / beholde yender sarasyn that is armed, who
hathe chalenged to fyght with me hand to hande 8
or ayenst two of the best men ⁶I haue / & I can fynde
none so hardy that dare fight agaynst this paynem / and
yf it be so that thou wylt take on⁷ the this enterpryse
for me / I shall⁸ delyuer the & all thy company quyte 12
to go in to thy countre at thy pleasure / and surely to
condute the to the cyte of Acre. And also to⁹ gyue the
a somer chargyd¹⁰ with gold / the whiche thou shalt
present fro me to kynge Charlemayne / & euery yere 16
fro hense forth to sende hym lyke present¹¹ for my hede
mony / and ¹²therof to make suche wrytyng¹² as his
counsell can deuysen / and¹³ yf he haue any warre I shall
sende hym two .M. men of armes payed for a¹⁴ yere¹⁵ / and 20
yf it be so that he desyre myne owne person / I shall¹⁶
passe the see with a .C.M. paynyns to serue hym ; for I
had rather to be in to¹⁰ seruitude there than to pay .iiii.
drams to this Gyaunt ; and, more ouer, yf thou wylt 24
abyde¹⁷ with me I shal gyue the my doughter Esclara-
monde in maryage / and the halfe of my realme to
mainteyne thyne estate.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I am
content this to do / so that I may haue myn owne 28
harnes¹⁸ & my ryche horne of yuorye and my cuppe,
the whiche were taken fro me whan I was taken¹⁹
prysoner.' 'Frende,' quod the admyrall, 'all shalbe

¹ lookes. ²⁻² no ill imprisonment. ³ therefore.

⁴ but. ⁶ Fol. xxxv. back, col. 2. ⁶ that. ⁷ vpon.

⁸ then. ⁹ I will. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ as.

¹²⁻¹² to make such assurance. ¹³ also. ¹⁴ whole.

¹⁵ beforehand. ¹⁶ will then. ¹⁷ heere. ¹⁸ armour.

¹⁹ yielded.

- delyueryd to the : thou shalt not lese the valew of one
 peny' / than the admyrall sent for the horne &¹ harnes² /
 and cuppe / and deliueyrd them to Huon, wher of
 4 he had grete ioy / ³whan Agraparte saw and knew
 that the admyrall had founde a champyon to fyght
 with hym, he sayd to the admyrall, ' syr, I wyll go out
 and speke with my knyghtes / and in y^e meane tyme
 8 let thy champyon be redy aparelyd / for I shall not
 tary longe / for⁴ I shall neuer haue ioy at my herte tyll
⁵I haue rased⁶ his herte out of his body.' ther with
 he deperted and wente to his men, & Huon dyd⁷ on his
 12 cote of mayle, and than he toke Gerames his horne of
 yuoray, & sayd, ' frende, I pray you kepe my horne tyll
 I retorne agayne' / then he ⁸prayed ⁹our lorde to
 forgyue hym his synnes, to socoure and to ayed hym to
 16 dyscomfayt that foull fende the Gyaunt / ¹⁰when he had
 made his prayers to god he dyd⁷ on his harnes² as
 quickly as though he had neuer ben in preson, wherby
 he knew well that god was pleasyd wth hym. ¹⁰than he
 20 sayd / ' o, noble kyng Oberon, I pray the sen¹¹ god is
 pleasyd with me, put awaye thy dyspleasure and perdon
 me / for the brekyng of thy commaundement I haue
 been sore punysshed, and I pray the be not dyspleasyd
 24 yf I spake eny hasty worde beyng in preson / ¹²famyn
 causyd me to do it / in the brekyng of thy com-
 maundement I confesse I dyd yll therin, yet 'it was
 but by neclygence and forgettyng / ¹³a, syr,¹³ what
 28 curtesey ye shewed me when ye founde me in the
 wod & gaue me your ryche horne and cuppe, by the
 whiche often tymes I haue ben succoured / therfore,
 syr, now I requyre the to perdon me all my trespasses
 32 and helpe me at my nede, for I see well without it be
 by the grace of god and your helpe ther is no thyng

The Admiral further promises to restore his cup, horn, and harness, which he does straightway.

Agrapart is anxious for the fight.

Huon arms himself, and gives into Gerames' keeping the ivory horn.

Huon prays to Oberon that he may be received again into his favour.

¹ omitted. ² armour. ³ but. ⁴ beside.

⁶ Fol. xxxvi. col. 1. ⁶ torne. ⁷ put. ⁸ went and. ⁹ to.

¹⁰ and. ¹¹ seeing. ¹² for. ¹³⁻¹³ Alas, Sir, remember but.

can saue my lyfe' / thus he besought god of perdon
 and to gyue hym grace to dystroy his enemy, who
 is¹ orryble to beholde / and whan he had made his
 oreson² ther cam a sarazyn to Huon, and sayd, 'syr, 4
 here is your owne sworde that ye loste when ye were
 taken.' 'frende,' quod huon, 'ye do ³to³ me grete
 curtesy; god gyue me grace to rewarde the' / then he
 dyd on his helme and gyrte on his sword / then⁴ the 8
 Admyrall sent hym a good horse, the best in all his
 courte, for he was not so fayre but he was ⁵of bountye⁵
 aboue all other / when Huon saw hym he was ryght
 ioyfull, and thankyd the Admyrall / as for his ryche 12
 apparell,⁶ I make no men⁷cyon therof / the sadell, harnes,
 and brydell were so ryche that the vlew ther of coude
 not be estemed; then Huon made the sygne of the
 crosse and mounted on his horse armed at all peces,⁸ 16
 and so rode out of the palayes in to a fayre medow, and
 there made a course to asay his horse / and then he
 reestyd hym before the Admyrall, who lened in a
 wyndow in his palaes, and⁹ he beheld Huon, and¹⁰ sayed 20
 to his lordes / 'syrs,¹¹ these frenchemen are to be
 doughted and feryd, for Huon is a goodly yonge man,
 and gret damage¹² it had been yf he had been slayne' /
 the Admyrall commaundyd the felde to be kept with a 24
 thousand sarazyns, to thentent that no treason shulde be
 done ¹³& then the Admyrall sayd, 'Mahound be thy
 gyde.'¹³

A Saracen restores
 his sword to him,

and a good horse
 is given him.

The Admiral
 admires Huon's
 fair appearance
 when he is
 mounted and fully
 armed.

¶ How Huon fought¹⁴ with Agrapart the 28
 gyant, and dyscomfyted hym, & delyuered
 hym to the Admyrall, who had gret ioye
 therof.

Capitulo .xliiii.

¹ was so. ² prayer. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ and.
⁵⁻⁵ in goodness. ⁶ fourniture. ⁷ Fol. xxxvi. col. 2.
⁸ points. ⁹ when. ¹⁰ he. ¹¹ Trust me. ¹² wrong.
¹³⁻¹³ or any iniurie offered to his faire seeming Champion.
¹⁴ ofught in text.

1 **W**hen Huon had made his course he cam²
 4 to the felde Where as his enmy was
 redy.³ when Agraparte saw Huon he
 sayd / 'thou *that* art of so greate
 courage as to fyght ayenst me / how

nerre akyn art thou to the admyrall, sen⁴ for y^e loue of
 hym thou wylte put thy selfe in aduenture of dethe.

Agrapart asks
 Huon what
 relationship he
 bears to the
 Admiral.

8 'Paynem,' quod Huon, 'know for trouthe⁵ I am
 nothyng a⁶ kynne to the admyrall, but I was borne
 in the realme of Fraunce / & yf thou desyre to knowe
 what I am, I saye vnto the⁵ I am he that slew thy

Huon replies that
 he is a French-
 man,
 and the slayer of
 Galafr.

12 brother.' 'for that,' quod the paynem, 'I am the
 more sorowfull / and yet agayne⁷ ioyouse, when⁷ mahond
 hath done me that grace to haue poure to reuenge his
 dethe; but yf thou wylte beleue and worshyp my god

Agrapart offers
 him peace and his
 sister in marriage
 if he will forsake
 his religion for
 that of Mahomet.

16 Mahound, & forsake thy beleue, and go with me into
 my country, I shall make the so greate a lorde that⁶
 all thy kynne⁸ was neuer none⁹ suche / & I shall gyue
 the my syster in maryage, whiche¹⁰ ys a fote gretter

20 than I am, and¹¹ as blacke as a cole' / 'paynem,' quod
 Huon, 'I care nother for thy lond, nor for thy syster,
 but all the deuylls in hell kepe them both; beware
 thou of me / for I shall neuer ioy in my herte vnto¹² the

24 tyme⁵ I haue slayne the, as I haue done thy brother. I
 defy the in y^e name of god¹³ and of the vyrgyn Mary¹³ /
 '& I the,' quod the Gyaunt, 'in the name of mahounde' /
 then they wente a sunder to take ther coursse / then³

Huon defies him
 in the name of
 God and of the
 Virgin.

28 they ran eche at other, & mett so fersly that ther speres
 brake in peces;³ y^e encounter was so rude *that* by force
 of the horses¹⁴ bothe the horses fell to the yerth, and¹⁵
 y^e championys quykely releuyd,¹⁶ and so came eche

The fight begins

32 vppon other / Agraparte toke vp his fauchyon to
 haue stryken Huon, but he stept a lytell on the one

and their horses
 fall.

¹ Fol. xxxvi. back, col. 1. ² in. ³ and. ⁴ seeing that.

⁵ that. ⁶ of. ⁷⁻⁷ ioyfull in that. ⁸ there.

⁹ any. ¹⁰ who. ¹¹ is. ¹² vntill. ¹³⁻¹³ omitted.

¹⁴ shocke. ¹⁵ but. ¹⁶ recouered.

Huon deals
Agrapart a fierce
blow on his helm.

The giant is
wounded,

and in fear for his
life yields to
Huon.

The Admiral is
pleased at Huon's
victory.

Gerames reveals
himself to the
Admiral.

syde, wherby the paynem myst his stroke / and Huon
lyfte vp his swerde, and strake the gyaunt on the helme
so meruelus ¹a stroke, that he strake of a quarter ther
of and Wounded hym sore, and the stroke descended 4
downe, & dyd cut of his ere, so that y^e clere² blode ran
downe to the ground. then Huon sayd, 'paynem,
thou art³ vnhappy; when thou cammest hether thou
myghtest haue ben contente with the dethe of thy 8
brother, and not to cum hether to haue as moch,⁴ for
thou shalt neuer see fayre day more' / when the
gyant saw hymself hurt he had grete fere, and sayd,
'cursyd be he of Mahunde *that* forgyd thy sword / I 12
had rather I had ben bounde to haue payd a greater⁵
sum of money to haue saued my lyf, then to be slayne
here / therfore I yeld me⁶ to thee; take here my sworde;
I pray the do me no hurt' / 'Paynym,' quod Huon, 16
'haue no dought sen⁷ thou doest yelde the to me ther
is non so hardy that shall do the eny dysplesure' / then
Huon toke y^e paynem by the arme, and brought hym
into y^e cytye, wher of the admyrall & all his lordes had 20
grete ioie; but the grete ⁸ioy⁸ that Esclaramund had
passed all other / when Gerames saw how the gyant
was ouer come, he came to y^e admyrall & sayd, 'sir
Admyrall, know for trouthe⁹ I am crystenyd, & I am 24
not your nephew; I cam hether but alonely¹⁰ to serche
for my lorde Huon, and the better to know the trouthe
I sayd I was sozne to yewryn of mount brake,¹¹ your
brother, therby to know the sertente what was become 28
of Huon / for I knowe¹² well he was sent to you from
kyngre Charlemayne on ¹³message.'

¶ How Agraparte the gyant cryed mercy to
the Admyrall / & how Huon desyryd the 32

¹ Fol. xxxvi. back, col. 2.

² black.

³ wert.

⁴ thyself.

⁵ great.

⁶ myself.

⁷ seeing.

⁸⁻⁹ inward content.

⁹ that.


¹⁰ only.

¹¹ Mombrance.

¹² knew.

¹³ a.

Admyrall Gaudys to leue his law and to be
crystenyd. Capitulo .xlv.

¹
⁴  Han the admyrall herde Gerames he had
grete meruayle, and sayd / 'it is herde
for any man to be ware of the craft &
suttylte that is in a frencheman.' than
the admyrall saw where Huon was
⁸ comynge vp the grese,² and brought³ with hym the
Giaunt / than⁴ the admyrall and all other⁵ cam and
met hym, and Gerames and his company with them,⁶
who were ryght ioyfull whan they saw hym come / whan
¹² Huon saw the admyrall he tooke Agrapart by y^e hand
and sayd to the admyrall, 'Syr, I delyuer hym into
your handes, that this day dyd you so grete iniurye
⁷that he⁷ drewe you out of your chayr; I delyuer
¹⁶ hym⁸ to you to do with hym at your pleasure' / whan
Agrapart saw that he knelyd downe⁸ and sayd, 'syr
admyrall / he hath mych to do that foolyshely
thynketh / I say this by my selfe / for to day whan I
²⁰ cam to you I thought my selfe the moost puyssaunt
man that reyned on the erth / and thought that ye were
not suffycient nor worthy to sersue me / but often
tymis⁹ beleuynge desseyueth hys mayster / for I thought
²⁴ that for x men I wolde not ones¹⁰ a tournyd¹⁰ my chere
to haue regardyd them / but other wyse is fallen to me /
for I am discomfytyd alonely by one man, and am
taken and brought in to your handes, therfor ye may
²⁸ do with me at your pleasure / therfore,¹¹ syr, I requyre
you haue pytye of¹² me, & pardon the outrage that I
haue done to¹³ you.' Than the admyrall answeyrd and
sayd / how he wolde pardon hym on the condycyon
³² that he shulde neuer after trespas hym, nor no¹⁴ man in

Huon delivers
Agrapart to the
Admiral.

The giant repents
of his vain
boasting before
the fight.

The Admiral
pardons him on
condition of his

¹ Fol. xxxvii. col. 1. ² steps. ³ bringing. ⁴ whereon.

⁵ his Lordes. ⁶ him. ⁷⁻⁷ euen he that. ⁸ omitted.

⁹ rash. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ turne. ¹¹ yet. ¹² on. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ any.

becoming his
man.

Agrapart does
homage to the
Admiral,

and they and the
Frenchmen dine
together.

Huon shows the
Admiral how his
cup fills with
wine when the
sign of the cross
is made above it.

It is handed to
the Admiral,
but it remains
empty while he
holds it.

his countre / and be syde *that*, to become my¹ man, and
to do me² homage before all them that³ be here³ present.
'Syr,' quod Agrapart, 'I am redy to fulfyll your plea-
sure' / ⁴than he dyd homage to the admyrall in the pre- 4
sence of all them *that* were there / than⁴ in grete ioye
they sat all downe to dyner / y^e ⁵admyrall made grete
honour to Huon / & made⁶ hym⁷ syt by hym / than
Agrapart and Gerames, and all the other frenche men.⁸ 8
As for there seruys, and many dyshes of sundry sortes
of mettes, I leue spekyng of them. Huon, who had
grete desyre to accomplyshe his enterpryse, drew out
his cuppe / the whiche Gerames had⁹ delyueryd to 12
hym with his horne of yuory / &¹⁰ sayd to y^e admyrall /
'*sir*, ye may se here this rych cuppe in my hand, y^e
which y^e se¹¹ all empty' / 'syr,' quod y^e admyrall, 'I
se wel ther is no thinge therin.'¹² 'syr,' quod Huon, 16
'I shall shew you how our law is holy and deuyne.'
than Huon made the sygne of the crosse thre tymes
ouer the cuppe / the which incontynent was full of
wyne, wher of¹³ the admyrall had grete meruayle. 'Syr,' 20
quod Huon, 'I present you this cuppe, that ye shulde¹⁴
drynke therof / ⁴than shall ye se¹⁵ the goodnes of the
wyne.' the admyrall tooke it in his hande / and
incontynent the cuppe was voyde, & y^e wyne vanysshid 24
away / than¹³ the admyrall had grete meruayle, and
sayde / 'Huon, ye haue enchauntyd me.'¹⁶ 'Syr,' quod
Huon, 'I am none enchaunter / but it is by cause ye
be full of synne. for the lawe that ye holde is of no 28
valure¹⁷ / the grete vertue that god hath put in this
cuppe, by reason of the sygne of the crosse that I
made¹⁸ ye may parseyue that my saynge is trew /

¹ his. ² him. ³⁻³ were there. ⁴ and.

⁵ Fol. xxxvii. col. 2. ⁶ caused. ⁷ to. ⁸ sat downe.

⁹ before. ¹⁰ then. ¹¹ is. ¹² Now.

¹³ whereat. ¹⁴ may. ¹⁵ tast. ¹⁶ Not so.

¹⁷ wroth. ¹⁸ whereby.

'Huon, quod the admyrall, 'ye nede ¹to haue no besynes¹ to spe to me to forsake my beleue² to take yours / but I wolde knowe of you whether ye wyll
4 abyde here with me, or elles to³ go in to Fraunce / for that I haue promyshyd you I shall fulfyll it.' 'A, sir admyrall,' quod Huon, 'I know⁴ you wyll kepe couenaut with me in that ye haue promysyd me.

8 But, syr, aboue all other matters I pray you haue pyte of your owne soule, the whiche shal be dampnyd in hell without ye leue your beleue, ⁵the whiche is ⁶nother good nor iust / for⁸ without ye do thus, I swer

Huon tries to persuade the Admiral to become Christian,

12 by ⁶my fayth that I shall ⁷cause so⁷ many men of armes that al the houses in your palays and cyte shalbe full' / whan y^e admyrall herd Huon say so he behelde his owne men and sayd, 'Syr, here ye may wel here the
16 pryde that is in this frencheman, who hath been more than halfe a yere in my pryson, and now he thretenethe to slee me by cause I wyll not take on me his law, and leue myn owne / I haue grete meruayle where he
20 shulde fynde⁸ men as he hath sayd / or ⁹to let⁹ me to slee hym at my pleasure. 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'yet I demaunde¹⁰ of you yf ye wyll do as I haue sayd.'

and threatens to overrun his city with armed men if he refuse.

'Huon,' quod the admyrall, 'beware on payn of your
24 eyen, and as myche as ye loue your lyfe, *that* ye speke no more to me of this mater, for by the fayth that I owe to mahound / yf al kyng Charlemayn's host were here assembled,¹¹ shulde not lye in there power to saue
28 your lyfe.' 'Admyrall,' quod Huon, 'I am in dought that to late ye shall¹² repent you.

The Admiral angrily protests against Huon's threat.

¶ How Huon, seyng that the admyrall wolde not forsake his beleue, blew his horne /

¹⁻¹ not to trouble yourself. ² and. ³ omitted.
⁴ well. ⁵⁻⁵ in that it is. ⁶ Fol. xxxvii. back, col. 1.
⁷⁻⁷ call hether. ⁸ such store of. ⁹⁻⁹ what lets.
¹⁰ once more. ¹¹ it. ¹² will.

wherby Oberon cam to hym / and ¹the
 admyrall² slayne and all his men / and how
 Huon and the fayre Esclaramounde were
 in perell of drownynge by reason that he ⁴
 brake the commaundement of kinge
 Oberon. Ca. xlv.



Huon blows his
 horn,

and the Admiral
 and his company
 rise and dance.

Oberon hears the
 blast,

and declares he
 will lead an army
 to Huon's aid.

With his men he
 straightway
 appears at
 Babylon,
 and slays all who
 will not become
 Christians.

Han Huon saw that y^e admyrall wolde
 not leue his law to receyue crysten- ⁸
 dome / he sette his horne to his
 mouthe / and blewe it ³by suche
 force³ that the blud brast⁴ out of his
 mouthe / so that the admyrall & all other that were ¹²
 there put the tabylles fro them and rose, and all that
 were in the ⁵palays began to synge & daunce / the same
 tyme kyng Oberon was in his wood, and herd⁶ the
 horne blowe, sayd, 'A, good lorde, I know surely that ¹⁶
 my frende Huon hathe greate nede of me / I pardon
 hym of all his trespas, for he hath ben suffycientely
 ponyshyd / ⁷I wishe my selfe with hym with an
 .C.M. men well armyd / there is not in all y^e worlde so ²⁰
 noble a man as Huon is / it is⁸ pytye that his herte is
 so lyght and mutable' / than incontynent he with all
 his company were in y^e cyte of Babylon, where as they
 began to slee all suche as wolde not beleue of⁹ Iheru ²⁴
 Cryst / ¹⁰than Oberon went to the palays with all his
 cheualrye, and euery man with his sword naked in
¹¹there handes¹¹ / when Huon saw Oberon / he embrasyd
 hym & sayd, 'I ought greatly to thank god and you ²⁸
 that ye become so far of to ayde me in all my besynes.'
 'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'as ye beleue me and worke by
 my counsell, I shall not fayle you' / than on all sydes
 they slew paynyns, men & ¹²wemen & chyl dren / except ³²

¹ how. ² was. ³⁻³ with such violence. ⁴ issued.

⁵ Fol. xxxvii. back. col. 2. ⁶ hearing. ⁷ and now.

⁸ great. ⁹ on. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹⁻¹¹ his hand. ¹² omitted.

- suche as wolde become¹ crystenyd. Oberon came to the admyrall & toke hym and delyueryd hym into the handys of Huon, who had there of greate ioy / ²than
- 4 Huon demaundyd of the admyrall what he was myndyd to do ³to³ leue y^e lawe of Mahounde and to⁴ take cryst-endome. 'Huon,' quod the admyrall, 'I had rather be hewyn al to peaces than to take your law and to⁴ for-
- 8 sake myne owne' / Oberon than sayd to Huon, 'why do ye tary to put hym to deth?' / than⁵ Huon lyft vp his sworde and strake⁶ ther with the admyrall, that his hede flewe fro hys sholders / than² Oberon sayd to
- 12 Huon, 'Now it lyeth well in thy power to be quyte with⁷ Charlemayne' / than Huon tooke y^e admyralles hede and openyd his mouthe, and tooke out hys .iiii. grete teth / and than cut of hys berde and tooke therof as
- 16 myche as pleasyd hym / than Oberon sayd, 'Now ⁸thou hast in thy handes the admyralles teth and berde / looke, as well as thou louest thy lyfe, kepe them well.' 'A, syr,' quod Huon, 'I requyre you⁹ put theym in
- 20 suche a plase that¹⁰ they may be well kept / ²so that I may haue them¹¹ in tyme of nede / for I fele my selfe that my herte is so lyght / that¹² other I shall forgete them or elles lese them' / 'of this¹³ thou sayest,' quod
- 24 Oberon, 'I thynke thou spekest wyslye / ¹⁴I do wysh them in Gerames syde in suche maner that they shall do hym no hurte' / he had no soner spoken the worde / but by the wyll of god and the power that he had in¹⁵
- 28 the fayrre / they were closyd in Gerames syde in suche wyse that no man coude se them / than he sayde to Huon / 'frende, I must go to my castell of Momure / I desyre you to do well / ye shall take with you Esclara-
- 32 monde, doughter to the admyrall. But I charge you on payne of your lyfe, and in as myche as ye fere to

Oberon gives the
Admiral into
Huon's hands.

Huon slays him
because he refuses
to be converted,

and takes out his
four great teeth,
and cuts off his
beard.

Oberon bids Huon
take good care of
these trophies,

and by his power
of enchantment
causes them to be
placed in
Gerames' side so
that none could
see them,
nor did Gerames
feel any hurt from
them.
Oberon takes
leave of Huon,
and bids him take
Esclaramonde
with him to
France,

¹ be. ² and. ³⁻³ if he would. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ whereupon. ⁶ after therewith. ⁷ king.

⁸ Fol. xxxviii. col. 1. ⁹ to. ¹⁰ where. ¹¹ again.

¹² as. ¹³ that. ¹⁴ therefore. ¹⁵ by.

but avoid all
intercourse with
her till they are
married at Rome.

Huon promises to
obey Oberon.

A beautiful ship
is made ready by
Oberon for
Huon's journey.

Oberon foretells
great misery for
Huon.

Esclaramonde is
made a Christian,
and Huon's
cousin is wedded
to a converted
Admiral,

displease me / that ye be not so hardy¹ to company
with her bodely tyll² ye be maryed together in y^e cyte
of Rome / and³ yf thou dost the contrary / thou shalt
fynde suche pouerte and mysery, that though thou⁴
haddest doble y^e myschyefe that thou hast had sens
thou camyst out of Fraunce, 'it shulde⁴ be no thyng
in regarde to⁵ that / that shall fall to the here after yf
thou breke my commaundement.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 8
'by y^e pleasure of our lord Ihesu Cryst I shall⁶ be well
ware⁶ of doynge of any thyng agaynst your pleasure.'
Then Oberon aparelyd a ryche shyppe, well garnyshyd
with chambers, and hangyd so rychely that it was 12
incredable to be her-l or sene / there was no cord / but
it was of gold and sylke / yf I shulde shew you the
beaute and ryches of this shyppe, it shulde⁷ be ouer
longe to resyte it / whan the shyppe was fournyshyd 16
with vytaylles / than he put therin his horses / than
Oberon took leue of Huon, and kyssyd and embrasyd
hym, ⁸sore wepyng⁹ / whan Huon saw hym wepe he
had greate meruayle, and sayd, 'Dere sir, for what 20
cause do you wepe?' 'Huon,' quod he, 'the thyng
that mouyth me thus to do / is by cause I haue¹⁰ of the¹⁰
grete petye / for yf thou knewest the pouerte and
mysery that thou shalt endure / there is no membre¹¹ 24
thou hast but that¹² shulde⁷ trymble for fere / for I know
for certen / that thou hast so myche to suffer / that
¹³therein is¹³ none humayne tonge can reherse it' / and
then Oberon departyd without more spekyng / whan 28
Huon saw Oberon departe he was ryght pensyue / but
his¹⁴ grete¹⁴ youthe put hym out of his sorow / and¹⁵
made his ordynaunce in the cyte, and crystenyd y^e
fayre lady Esclaramonde, and after dyd marye his 32
Cosyn Heylye¹⁶ to an admirall of the countre who was

¹ as. ² untill. ³ for. ⁴⁻⁴ yet can it. ⁵ of. ⁶⁻⁶ well beware.
⁷ would. ⁸ Fol. xxxviii. col. 2. ⁹⁻⁹ greatly lamenting.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ after pitye. ¹¹ that. ¹² it. ¹³⁻¹³ omitted.
¹⁴⁻¹⁴ sweetness of. ¹⁵ Then hee. ¹⁶ Sibilla.

newly crystenyd / and Huon gaue to theym the cyte of
 Babylon and all that longed therto. Than he made &
 ordeyned a lytell shyppe to go with his owne shyppe,
 4 to thentent to send a lond for vytaylles whan nede
 1 requyred¹ / than he and his company went in to his
 grete shyp, & so toke leue of his cosyn that was newly
 maryed, who was ryght sorowfull for his departyng.
 8 Than they lyft² vp theyr saylles / and had a good
 freshe³ wynde, and so saylled tyll they were out of the
 ryuer of Nile / & so passyd by Damiet and came in to
 the hye see and had wynde at wyll / and on a day⁴ they
 12 sat at dyner and made good chere / for by reason of his
 cup they had wyne at theyr pleasure. 'A, good lorde,'
 quod Huon, 'greatly I am bounde to thanke you⁵ /
 that I haue such a cuppe and horne and harnes⁶ / for
 16 whan so euer I wyl⁷ blowe my horne I can haue men
 ynow to come to ayde me / and also I haue the admy-
 ralles berde and grete teth / and⁸ specyally the fayre
 lady Esclaramonde, whom I loue so parfychtly⁹ that I⁹
 20 am so¹⁰ in amoures¹⁰ with her fayre body / that I can no
 lenger end¹¹ure it / how be it, the dwarfe Oberon to
 mocke me hath¹² deffendyd me in any wyse¹² that I
 sholde not touche her in no¹³ wyse. But I wyll well¹⁴
 24 that he knowe / that in this case I wyll not obey hym /
 for she is myn owne, therfore I wyll do with her at
 my pleasure.' whan Gerames herde hym, he sayd,
 'A,¹⁵ syr, what wyll ye do? Ye knowe well Oberon
 28 neuer as yet made any lye¹⁶ to you¹⁶ / but alwayes ye
 haue founde hym trew / for yf he had not been,¹⁷ both
 you and we all had ben lost or¹⁸ this tyme. And now¹⁹
 ye wolde breke his commaundement / yf ye touche this
 32 lady or²⁰ the tyme come that he hath sette you, greate

who becomes the
ruler of Babylon.

Huon and his
company pass the
river.

Huon cannot
resist his love for
Esclaramonde.

Gerames warns
Huon to
remember
Oberon's latest
command.

¹⁻¹ should require. ² set. ³ faire. ⁴ as.

⁵ kinge Oberon. ⁶ armour. ⁷ shall. ⁸ but. ⁹⁻⁹ and.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ enamoured. ¹¹ Fol. xxxviii. back, col. 1.

¹²⁻¹² forbidden me strictly. ¹³ any. ¹⁴ after that he.

¹⁵ Alas. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ omitted. ¹⁷ so. ¹⁸ before. ¹⁹ againe. ²⁰ ere.

But Huon will not
listen to him.

Gerames declares
he will leave the
ship,

and with thirteen
men enters a
little boat and
goes away.

Huon and
Esclaramonde
take their
pleasure together.

Soon after a
terrible storm
arises,

and the ship is
broken to pieces.

Huon and
Esclaramonde are
driven on to an
island.

mysfor'une shall fall therby' / 'Gerames,' quod Huon /
'for you / nor for none¹ other² I shall not leue³ / but
or⁴ I departe I wyll haue of her my pleasure; and yf
any of you be afayed, I am contente he shall departe 4
in this lytell shyppe and goo where as⁴ he lyst / and
take vytayle in to it for there⁵ prouysyon.' 'Syr,'
quod Gerames, 'sen⁶ ye wyll do none other wyse, I am
ryght sorowfull / and I wyll departe, and so wyll do⁴ 8
all oure other company.' Than Gerames departyd out
of the grete shyppe and enteryd in to y^e lytell shyppe,
and .xiii. in his company / & Huon taryed styll with
the lady. and whan he sawe that all his company 12
was departyd, he went & made redye a bed, & sayd to
the lady / 'dame,⁷ surely I must⁸ haue my pleasure of
you' / whan she herde Huon / she fell downe sore
wepyng, and humbly desyred Huon that he wolde for- 16
bere her company vnto⁹ the tyme¹⁰ they were¹¹ maryede
together / accordynge to the promyse that he had made
to kynge Oberon / 'fayre lady,' quod Huon, 'none
excuse can auayle / for it must be thus' / than he 20
tooke the lady and made her goo to bed / and there
they took together theyr pleasures / he had no sonner
accomplyshyd his wyll / but there rose suche a meruel-
ous tempest / that the wawes of ¹²the see semyd so greate 24
and hye as mounteyns / and therwith it blew and thon-
deryd and lyghtenyd that it was¹³ ferefull to beholde
the see / and the shyppe was so sore tormentyd / that
¹⁴the shyppe brast¹⁴ all to peces, so that there abode¹⁵ 28
but one pece of tymbre where apon Huon and the
lady was / and it happyd so well for them that they
were nere to an yle, and thether the wynde draue
them / & whan they sawe¹⁰ they were there aryuyd, 32

¹ any. ²⁻³ will I not forbear. ³ ere. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ his. ⁶ seeing. ⁷ Madame. ⁸ now.

⁹ vntill. ¹⁰ that. ¹¹ should be.


¹² Fol. xxxviii. back, col. 2. ¹³ very. ¹⁴⁻¹⁵ it burst.

¹⁵ remained.

and that they were on the londe, they both kneled
 downe & thankyd our lord Iesu Cryst that they
 were¹ scapyd the parell of drownynge / the other
 4 company that were in the lytell shyppe / draue at
 auenture in the see, and they cryed to oure lorde Iesu
 Cryst to saue them fro drownynge / ²they had sene well
 howe the shyppe with Huon and the lady was broken
 8 in the see, wherfore they thought surely that Huon
 and the lady was pereshyd. Now lette vs leue spek-
 ynge of³ Huon of Burdeux & of⁴ y^e fayre Esclaramonde.

The litte ship in
 which are
 Gerames and his
 company is
 greatly distressed.
 The knyghts see
 Huon's ship
 wrecked,
 and fear he and
 his Esclaramonde
 have perished.

¶ How Huon and Esclaramonde aryued in
 12 an yle all naked, & howe the pyrates of
 the see tooke Esclaramonde and left Huon
 alone, and bounde his handes and fete and
 iyen.
 Capitulo .xlvii.

16  Han Huon and Esclaramonde sawe
 howe they were dryuen a londe all
 naked, peteously wepyng they enteryd
 in to the yle, where as theyr dwelt
 20 nother man nor woman / but the
 erthe was so fayre and grene that⁵ ioy it was to se it /
 it ⁶ ⁷was happy for them that the wether was so fayre
 and hote / so⁷ they hidde them⁸ in the grene herbes,⁹
 24 to thentent they shold not be parseyued / ¹⁰the lady
 wept peteously / than¹¹ Huon sayd,¹² 'fayre⁴ lady, be
 not abasshyd / for if we dye for loue we shall not be the
 fyrst / for trystram dyed for the loue of the fayre Isoude,¹³
 28 and she for hym' / and so al wepyng they clyppyd
 and kyssyd eche other. and as they lay wrappyd in
 the grene grasse / ther arueyd .x. samazyns in a lytell

The island which
 Huon and
 Esclaramonde are
 on is without
 inhabitants.

They seek to
 comfort each
 other.

¹ so well. ² for. ³ of them, returning again to.

⁴ omitted. ⁵ great. ⁶ Fol. xxxix. col. 1.

⁷⁻⁷ it was likewise so faire & hot that. ⁸ selues.

⁹ grasse. ¹⁰ still. ¹¹ and. ¹² vnto her.

¹³ Isoluda.

A little vessel
brings
ten Saracen
pirates to the
place.

Huon hears them
coming to
where he and
Esclaramonde
lay,
and rises.

Approaching
them he begs
them for some
bread.

The pirates learn
his sad story,

and give him two
loaves,

vessell, and¹ enteryd in to the yle, ²& toke² freshe water
& other thynges that they nedyd / than they sayd eche
to other, 'lette vs goo forth in to this yle and se yf we
can fynde any aduenture' / they³ were pyrates of the 4
see, and had seruyd before the admyrall Gaudys,
father to 'the fayre⁴ Esclaramonde. Huon, who was
with his louer in the grene herbes⁵ / herd how nere to
them was people comyng / he thought to go to them to 8
se yf he myght get any mete. 'Dere louer,' quod
Huon, 'I praye you goo not hense / tyll I retourne.'
'Syr,' quod she, 'god be your gyde / but I requyre
you re⁶tourne agayne shortely' / than he departyd ⁷as 12
so⁷ naked as he was borne / and so came to them or⁸
they had dyned / ⁹he salutyd them & desyryd them
humblye for the loue of god to gyue hym sum brede /
one of them answeyrd & sayd / 'frende, thou shalt 16
haue ynough / but we praye the shew vs what aduen-
ture hath brought the hether.' 'Syr,' quod Huon,
'the tempest of the see hath brought me hether, for
the shyppe that I was in pereshyd, and all my company.' 20

WHan they herd hym they had grete petye, and
gaue hym .ii. loues of brede / Huon toke them
and departyd & thanked¹⁰ them, and⁴ went¹¹ to his
louer,¹² and gaue her parte of y⁶ brede, wherof she was¹³ 24
glade. then the pyrates that had gyuen Huon the brede
sayd one to an other, 'this man that is thus gone fro vs¹⁴
can not be but that he hath sum¹⁵ company / therfore
lette vs goo preuely¹⁶ after hym, and peraduenture we 28
shall fynde out his company, for ¹⁷we thynk¹⁷ yf he
were alone he wolde not¹⁸ haue come to vs' / 'lette vs
go and se,' quod all the other, 'and not retourne tyll
we knowe y⁶ trouthe.' than they went all together and 32

¹ who. ²⁻³ to take. ³ those men. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.
⁵ grasse. ⁶ Fol. xxxix. col. 2. ⁷⁻⁷ all as. ⁸ before.
⁹ where. ¹⁰ thanking. ¹¹ backe. ¹² Loue.
¹³ not a little. ¹⁴ surely it. ¹⁵ other. ¹⁶ presently.
¹⁷⁻¹⁷ mee thinkes. ¹⁸ so.

foolowed Huon as preuely as they coude / and whan they came nere where as he was they saw hym and the lady nere¹ by hym etynge of y^e brede that they had
 4 gyuen hym / than² they stode styll and aduysyd them to se yf they coude haue any knolege of hym or of the lady. And³ amonge them there was one *that* sayd,
 ‘Syr, neuer beleue me, but this lady is the fayre
 8 Esclaramonde, doughter to the admyrall Gaudys / and he that is with her is the same frencheman that fought w th Gallafer⁴ and slew hym / and also y^e admy⁵rall. It is happy *that* we haue founde them, and specyally
 12 that he is naked, without armure, for yf *that* he were armed, oure lyues were but short’ / whan they knew surely⁶ that it was Esclaramonde, doughter to the admyrall Gaudys / they than approchyd nere to them /
 16 and cryed alowde, and sayd, 7‘ A, dame⁷ Esclaramonde, your flyenge away auayleth you nothyng, for by you & your meanes your father hath been slayne by y^e thefe that sytteth there by you / certainly⁸ we shall brynge
 20 you to your vncke Iuorym of mombrant / who shall take of you suche correccyon that ye shalbe an en- sample to all other, and y^e lechour that is by you shalbe² flayne 9all quycke⁹’ / whan the lady sawe
 24 these paynmys, she was ryght sorowfull and sore dyscomfortyd / than she kneled downe and helde up her handes and prayed them humbly / that they wolde haue petye on y^e frencheman / and as for her owne lyfe,
 28 she dyd put it to there¹⁰ pleasures, other to slee her or to drowne her or to bryng her to her vncke. ‘And, syrs,¹¹ I swere by Mahounde that if ye wyll graunt my request / yf I can be agreed with myne vncke Iuorym /
 32 I shall do you all suche pleasurs that ye & all yours shall be ryche for euer after. And¹² lytell shall ye

but they follow him when he returns to Esclaramonde, and see the two eating the bread together.

The Saracens recognize Esclaramonde and Huon, because they had been at the Admiral's court.

They reprove Esclaramonde with the death of her father,

and threaten to take her to her uncle Ivoryn,

and to kill Huon.

Esclaramonde pleads for Huon's life,

¹ hard. ² there. ³ Now. ⁴ Agrapart.

⁶ Fol. xxxix. back, col. 1. ⁶ certainly. ⁷⁻⁷ Madame.

⁸ therefore. ⁹⁻⁹ before your face. ¹⁰ owne.

¹¹ (quoth shee.) ¹² for.

which they agree
to spare,

but they bind his
eyes, hands, and
feet,
and torture him.

Esclaramonde is
led away by the
pirates.

wynne by the deth of one poore man.' 'Dame,'¹ quod
they / 'we are well content to leue hym here; but we
shall do hym all the shame and rebuke that we can,
that he shall² remembre it³ euer after' / than they toke 4
Huon / and layd hym on the grene grasse / and than
dyd bynd⁴ his iyen / ⁵handes and fete / so that the
blode brast⁶ out at the⁷ nayles, wherby he was in suche
dystres that he sownyd thre tymes and peteously called 8
on oure lorde god to haue petye of hym and to forgyue⁸
his synnes / whan the swete Esclaramonde sawe her
louer Huon so handelyd / and that she sholde departe
fro hym / to shew the petyefull compleyntes that she 12
made it⁹ were impossyble. Also Huon made peteous
compleyntes whan his loue¹⁰ Esclaramond departyd, the
which greuyd hym more than his owne payne that he
sufferyd. Now we shall leue spekyng of hym and 16
¹¹speke of¹¹ the fayre Esclaramonde.

¶ How the fayre Esclaramonde was led a way
with the pyrates of the see / and how the
admyrall Galaffer of Ansalerne delyueryd 20
her out of there handes. Ca. .xlvi.



Huon is left alone
on the island.

Owe sheweth the hystory¹² whan
these theues had taken & bound
Huon, handes / fete & iyen / they 2
left hym aboue¹³ in the yle, & toke
the fayre Esclaramonde & brought
her in to theyr shyppe / than they gaue her a gowne
and a mantell furryd with ermyns / for they were 28
robbers of the see, and had myche good in theyr
shyppe / than they sayled forth nyght and day / at

¹ Ladie. ² may. ³ for. ⁴ blind. ⁵ and binde his.
⁶ burst. ⁷ his. ⁸ him. ⁹ Fol. xxxix. back, col. 2
¹⁰ Loue. ¹¹⁻¹¹ say what happened afterward to.
¹² how that. ¹³ alone.

- last a wynd ¹toke them whether they wolde or not /
 they aryued at the port of Anfalerne; & the same tyme
 the admyrall there was newly rysyn fro his dyner, and
 4 stode lenynge out at a windowe in his palays / and
 then ²he parseyuyd y^e shyppe *that* lay at ancre in y^e
 hauen / & saw the baners & stremers wauinge with the
 wynde / wherby ³he wel parseyuyd that y^e shyppe per-
 8 teynyd to kyng Iuoryn of Mombrant / than ⁴he with
 his lordes went downe to the hauen. Than he cryed
 out alowde / and sayd, 'Syr, what marchaundys haue
 ye brought?' / 'syr,' quod they, 'we haue brought
 12 sendalles & clothes of sylke / wherfore, sir, yf we shal
 pay any tribut or custome, we are redy to pay it at
 your pleasure' / than Galaffer, y^e admirall, sayd / 'I
 know well ynough yf ye sholde pay any trybute ye
 16 sholde not chose but ⁵to ⁵do it. But, syrs, I pray you
 tell me what damesell is *that* ⁶I se in your shyppe sore
 wepyng?' 'Syr,' quod they, 'it is a sclause, a crysten
 woman, whom we bought at Damiet.' The lady herd
 20 well how the admyral demaundyd for her, & ⁷what
 answer y^e maryners had made / than she cryed out
 alowd and sayd, 'A, syr admyrall, for y^e loue & honour
 of Mahounde I pray you haue petye on me, for I am
 24 no sclause, for ⁸I am doughter to the admyrall Gaudys
 of Babylone / who is deed & slayne by a frencheman /
 these ⁹maryners here hath taken me / & wolde carye me
 to myne vnclre, kyng Iuoryn of Mombrant / and I
 28 know surely, yf he had me, he wolde byrne me ⁵in a
 fyer.' ⁵'Fayre ladye,' quod the admyrall, 'dysmay
 you not / for ye shall abyde *with* me whether they
 wyll or not' / than he commaundyd y^e maryners to
 32 bryng y^e lady to hym / & ⁸they answeryd ¹⁰they wolde
 not so do / than y^e admirall commaundyd to take her

Esclaramonde
sails away with
the Saracens.
They arrive at the
port of Anfalerne,

and the Admiral,
seeing them from
his palace,

perceives from
their ship that
they are subjects
of King Ivoryn.

The Admiral
inquires what
merchandise the
ship carries

and who is the
damsel with
them.

They reply
falsely

but Esclara-
monde declares
her parentage.

The Admiral
promises to
release her,

¹ Fol. xl. col. 1.

⁶⁻⁸ omitted.

² when.

⁶ which.

⁹ the.

³ thereby.

⁷ likewise.

¹⁰ that.

⁴ whervvpon.

⁸ but.

and fights for her
with the pirates
whom he over-
comes.

The Admiral
falls in love with
Esclaramonde.

Esclaramonde
begs him to tarry
a while before
making her his
wife.

She prays to
Christ to give her
strength to
remain faithful to
Huon.

fro them perforce / ¹than they of the shyppe began to
make defence. But anone they were all slayne, & the
lady taken, & brought to the admyrall / and ²had grete
ioy therof / how be ³it, he was sory by cause one of them ⁴
that were in y^e shyppe skapyd away & fled to Mom-
brant / how be it, ⁴y^e admyrall caryd not gretely for
it / syn ⁵he had y^e lady, whom he brought in to his
palays / whan y^e admirall saw her so exceeding fayre / ⁸
he was taken in ⁶loue, so *that* incontynent he wolde
haue maryed her after the sarazyns lawe / wherof she
was ryght sorowfull, & sayd, 'Syr, reason it is *that* I do
your pleasure, syn ⁵ye haue ryd me out of y^e handes of ¹²
these pyrates of the see. But, syr, I requyre you for
the loue *that* ye bere me that ye wyll forbere your
pleasure at this present tyme / for, sir, I haue made a
faythfull vow & promyse / *that* for a yere & a day fro ¹⁶
hense forth I wyll not lye ⁷nor touch any man bodely ⁸/
of ⁹the whiche auow, syr, I am nowe sory ¹⁰of for y^e
loue of you / for, ¹⁰syr, I am ryght ioyfull *that* ye wolde ¹¹
me so myche honour as to haue me to your wyfe / oure ²⁰
greate god Mahounde rewarde you / and, ¹²syr, for y^e
loue of hym I pray you be content tyll ¹³myn auow
be acumplyshyd / 'fayre lady,' quod he, 'know for
trouthe / that for the honoure of my god Mahounde, & ²⁴
for the loue of you, I am content to tary this yere / ye,
& yf it were .xx. yere / than ¹⁴to be sure of your loue.'
'Syr,' quod she, 'Mahounde rewarde you' / than ¹⁵she
sayd to her selfe, 'A, dere lord god Jesu Cryst, humbly ²⁸
I requyre *thee* to gyue me *that* grace to kepe my trouth
to my louer Huon, for or ¹⁶I shall do the contrary I
shall suffer as myche payne & dolowre ¹⁷as euer woman

¹ and. ² who. ³ Fol. xl. col. 2. ⁴ notwithstanding.
⁵ seeing. ⁶ her. ⁷ with. ⁸ boldly. ⁹ for.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ euen for the loue that I beare to you, but ¹¹ will doe.
¹² now. ¹³ vntill. ¹⁴ then after loue. ¹⁵ but.
¹⁶ ere. ¹⁷ greefe.

dyd / nor ¹for fere of deth I shal neuer breke my
trouthe.¹ Now leue we to speke of her, & speke ²of
the thefe that scapyd out of the shyppe.

4 ¶ How the pyrat fled to Mombrant to Iuoryn /
& how he sent to defy the Admyrall
Galaffer of Anfalerne, and of the answer
that he had.³ Capitulo .xlix.



8 4 E haue herd here before how the fayre
Esclaramonde was rescued⁵ by the
Admyrall Gallaffer / and of the maner
that she founde to kepe her selfe trew
12 to Huon, & how one of the maryners
scapyd away and fled by londe, and at last⁶ came to the
cyte of Mombrant, where as he founde Iuoryn, to whom
he shewed all the hole mater as ye haue herde / and
16 howe his brother y^e admyral Gaudys was slayn by a
yong frenche knyght / and howe he & his company
founde the sayd knyght 'and your⁷ nece the fayre
Esclaramonde / whom we⁸ had thought to haue brought
20 to you.⁹ But¹⁰ y^e Admyrall Gallaffer hathe taken them
fro vs by force, and hath taken our shyppe and slayn
all your men that were within,¹¹ so that none scapyd but
I alonely.¹² whan kynge Iuoryn vnderstode y^e maryner
24 he sayd, 'A, syr¹³ Mahounde, how haue you sufferyd
that my brother Gaudys hathe thus peteously be
slayne / and also my nece hys doughter to consent
therto / certainly the doloure¹⁴ that I fele at my herte
28 constrayneth me rather to desyre ¹⁵the¹⁵ deth than lyfe.
And also, moreouer, to se hym that is myn owne
subget, and ¹⁵he that¹⁵ holdeth his londes of me / to
kepe my nece and thus to slee my men. Alas, I can not

News of
Esclaramonde's
fortune and of the
murder of
Gaudisse is
brought to his
brother Ivoryn,
of the city of
Mombrant.

Iuoryn is
indignant that the
Admiral, who is
his subject,
should hold his
niece
Esclaramonde.

¹⁻¹ and I will neuer breake my troth for fere of deth.

² say somewhat. ³ there. ⁴ Fol. xl. back, col. 1.

⁵ receiued. ⁶ he. ⁷ his. ⁸ they. ⁹ him.

¹⁰ quoth he. ¹¹ it. ¹² alone. ¹³ mightie.

¹⁴ greefe. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ omitted.

His lords advise
that a message
be sent to the
Admiral,
bidding him give
Esclaramonde up
to Ivoryn,
and make
reparation for the
death of his
sailors.

An envoy is sent,
and arrives at
Anfalerne.

The Admiral will
not obey Ivoryn's
command.

well saye what I sholde do therin / a lytell thyng wolde
cause me to slee myselfe.' Than in great dyspleasure
he called his lordes, & causyd the maryner to come
before them / & there he made hym to shew agayne all ⁴
the mater before them all:¹ how his brother y^e admirall
Gaudys was slayne, & also how the admyrall Gallaffer /
helde by force his nece, & how he had slayne his
men / ²whan the lordes had herd ³all this,³ they sayd ⁴8
to Ivoryn, 'Syr, our aduyce is *that* ye sholde sende
one of your secrete messengers to the admyrall Gallaffer /
& commaund hym incontynent to sende you your
nece / ⁵and to make amendes in *that* he hath slayne ¹²
your men / and that he sende you worde by wrytyng
what cause hath moued hym thus to do / and yf it be
so that pryde doth so surmont⁶ hym that he wyll not
obey your commaundementes / than by a iust quarell ¹⁶
ye may go and make warre vpon hym, and take fro hym
all hys londes *that* he holdeth of you' / whan Ivoryn
vnderstode his lordes / he sayd, 'syrs, I parseyue well
your opynyon is good' / ⁷than a messenger was ²⁰
appoyntyd and his charge gyuen hym, & so⁸ departyd,
and rode so longe *that*⁹ he came to Anfalerne, where as⁸
he founde y^e admyrall Gallaffer / whom he salutyd in
y^e name of Mahounde / & than he declared his message ²⁴
at lenght / ¹⁰whan¹⁰ Gallaffer herd his message, he sayd,
'frende, go & saye to kinge Ivoryn, *that* as for y^e
delyueraunce of his nece, I wyll not so³ do¹¹ / & as for
his men *that* be¹² slayne, it was¹³ theyr owne foly, & ²⁸
as touchynge *that* I sholde come to hym / I wyll not
come at hym / lette him do what he can / ¹⁴yf he come
& ¹⁵assayle me I shall defende as well as I can' / whan
y^e messenger herd *that* he sayd / 'sir admyrall, sen ¹⁶32

¹ both. ² which. ³⁻⁵ omitted. ⁴ thus.
⁶ Fol. xl. back, col. 2. ⁶ in. ⁷ and. ⁸ he. ⁹ till.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ but assoone as. ¹¹ it. ¹² are. ¹³ through.
¹⁴ but. ¹⁵ to. ¹⁶ seeing.

ye wyll do none other wyse / in the name of our god
 Mahound, & in y^e name of y^e ¹admyrall Gallaffer, I
 desyre you¹ / & he sendeth you worde by me *that* he

The messenger
 threatens his
 lands with fire
 and sword,

4 wyll leue you nother cyte / towne, nor castell / but he
 wyll put *them* all to flame & fyer / nor leue you one
 fote of londe / &² also yf he may take you ye shall dye
 a shamfull deth.'

and himself with
 a shameful death.

8 ¶ Whan the admyrall saw howe he was defyed /
 he was more inflamed than a byrnyng fyer

brond, & sayd to y^e messenger / 'go & say to thy lord
that I set no thinge by his thretenynge / &, yf I

The Admiral
 defies the King
 Ivoryn.

12 may know when he comyth, I shal do *hym that* honour
that I wyll not abyd tyll he enter in to my countre /
 but I shal³ mete with him before / & say vnto hym fro
 me / *that* yf I can take hym I shal sone ryd his soule
 16 out of his body.' so y^e messenger departyd / & cam
 to mombrant / 'whan Iuoryn saw hym he sayd / 'frend,
 what sayth ⁵Galaffer? wyll he sende me my nece?'

'Syr,' quod the messenger / 'he wyll not do it / he
 20 sayth he doughtyth you no thyng / and, yf ye be so
 hardy to come & assayle hym, he wyll mete with you
 before & fyght with you, & I herd hym swere *that* yf
 he may take you he wyll slee you without mercy' /

The Admiral's
 reply is reported
 to King Ivoryn.

24 whan Iuoryn herd that / he swet for anger, & was in
 that case⁶ he coude ⁷speke no⁷ worde of a longe space /
 &² whan he had sum what asswagyd his yre, he sware by
 his god Mahounde *that* he shold neuer haue ioy nor

The King is
 indignant and
 swears he will
 destroy the town
 of Anfalerne and
 slay the Admiral.

28 myrthe at his herte / tyll he had destroyed the towne
 of Anfalerne, & slayn the admyrall Galaffer / than in
 hast he sente for all his lordes / & with them concludyd
 to send for all his men of warre, & gaue them day to be
 32 with him within .xv. dayes before Mombrant / the
 whiche thyng was done / for at that day they were all

¹⁻¹ great king Iuoryn heere I defie you.
³ will. ⁴ where.

⁵ Fol. xli. col. 1.
⁷⁻⁷ not speke one.

² but.
⁶ that.

His army is
assembled.

assembled / as ye shall here¹ after. Now² leue thystory²
to speke of them & ³retourne³ to speke of kinge
Oberon.

¶ How kynge Oberon, at the request of .ii. 4
knyghtes of the fayry called Gloryant &
Mallebron the monster of the see, went
& socouryd Huon, & carryed hym out of
the yle Noysaunt. Ca. .I. 8



Oberon deplores
the misfortunes of
Huon,

and laments that
he has disobeyed
his command-
ment.

Owe ⁴sheweth thystory,⁴ that Kynge
Oberon the same tyme that Huon
was in the yle Noisaunt / was in
his wood where as he was accus- 12
tomyd ⁵moost parte for⁵ to be con-
uersaunt, by cause the place was ⁶myche delectable
& farre fro people / ⁷he sat hym down vnder a fayre
oke / than⁸ he began to wepe & compleyned / whan 16
Gloryant, a knyght of y^e fayry / saw hym / he had
grete meruayle, & demaundyd of hym why he ⁹made so
gret doloure⁹ / 'Gloryant,' quod y^e ¹⁰kinge Oberon /
'the periuryd Huon of Burdeux causeth me thus to do / 20
whom I haue¹¹ perfyghtly louyd, & yet he hath¹²
trespassyd my commaundementes / for whan ¹³I departyd
fro hym I causyd hym to haue the admyrall Gaudys at
his pleasure / & also I made hym to haue the fayre 24
Esclaramonde, y^e admyralles doughter / & also I haue
gyuen hym my ryche horne of yuory & my good cuppe /
the whiche he hath lost by his pryde & foly / &
therefore he hath ben ponyshyd, & ¹⁴lyeth all naked, 28
bounde handes & fete, & his iyen stoppyd, ¹⁵in an yle / in
y^e whiche place I shall ¹⁶suffre hym to dye¹⁷ myserably.'

¹ here. ²⁻³ leaueth the Historie. ³⁻⁵ returneth againe.

⁴⁻⁴ the history sheweth. ⁵⁻⁶ after where. ⁶ very.

⁷ there. ⁸ and. ⁹⁻⁹ lamented so much. ¹⁰ omitted.

¹¹ always. ¹² still. ¹³ Fol. xli. col. 2. ¹⁴ now he.

¹⁵ blindfolded. ¹⁶ will. ¹⁷ most.

- 'A,¹ syr,' quod Gloryant / 'for y^e honoure of our lord
 Jesu Cryst / call to your remembraunce how *that* by
 goddes own mouth Adam & Eue ²was dyffendyd² fro
 4 y^e etynge of ³fruyte *that* was in paradyce / 'the whiche'⁴
 by theyr fragylyte brake goddes commaundement; how
 be it, our lord god had grete petye of them, & therfore,
 sir, I praye you haue pyte of Huon' / than Mallebron
 8 stept forth & sayd, 'A,⁵ sir, for y^e honour & reuerence
 of our lord god I desyre you to graunt me this one
 tyme *that* I may go & ayde hym' / whan Oberon saw
 how he was sore⁶ desyryd of Gloryant & Mallebron, he
 12 was sore dyspleasyd; 'he answeyrd & ⁷sayd / 'Malle-
 bron, it pleaseth me ⁸well *that* this caytyue Huon, who
 endureth⁸ myche payne, be vysytyd by *thee*, ⁹for y^e
 which⁹ I condempne *thee* to be .xxviii. yeres a monster
 16 in y^e see, beside .xxx. yere *that* thou art inioynyd to all
 redy / but ¹⁰I wyll¹¹ thou gyue hym none other counsell
 nor ayde / but alonely to bere hym out of y^e yle *that*
 he is in, & to set hym on y^e mayne londe / than let
 20 hym go whether *that*¹² he wyl, for I desyre neuer more
 to se hym. Also I wyll¹¹ thou brynge agayne to¹³ me
 my ryche horne of yuory and my ryche cuppe and my
 harnes¹⁴ / feche them theyr, as he¹⁵ lost them.' 'A,⁵
 24 sir,' quod Gloryaunt,¹⁶ 'greate payne ye put hym vnto,
 whan for so small¹⁷ offence ye are so sore displeasyd with
 Huon / & as for the harnes¹⁴ *that* ye wolde haue agayne,
 ye know well howe Huon of Burdeux dyd conquere
 28 it / he had ben lost yf it had not bene / grete yll
 ye shall do yf ye cause hym not to haue it agayne.
¹⁸But, syr, sen¹⁹ I haue lycence to brynge hym out of the
 yle, I pray you shew me in what plase is the yle where

Gloryant begs
Oberon have
mercy upon the
knight.

Malabron begs
permission to go
to his aid.

Oberon grants
Malabron's
request under
very hard
conditions.

He is to place
Huon on the
main land,

and to bring back
to Oberon his cup,
horn and armour.

¹ Not so. ²⁻³ were forbidden. ³ the. ⁴⁻⁴ yet they.
⁵ alas. ⁶ so earnestly. ⁷⁻⁷ and answering.
⁸ so. ⁹⁻⁹ therefore. ¹⁰ now. ¹¹ that.
¹² omitted. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ armour. ¹⁵ hath.
¹⁶ Malabron. ¹⁷ an. ¹⁸ Fol. xli. back, col. 1.
¹⁹ since.

The island where
Huon lies is
called Noysant.

Mallebron finds
Huon there,

and unbinds him.

Mallebron tells
him Oberon's
message.

Huon complains
of Oberon's
hardness of
heart.

as he is.' Than Gloryant sayd / 'brother Mallebrone /
this yle is nere to¹ helle, & is callyd the yle Noysant' /
'well,' quod Mallebron, 'than I commend you all to
our lorde Ihesu cryst' / and so² departyd and came to⁴
the see syde / ³whan he cam there he lept in to the see
and began to swym as fast as the byrde flyeth in the
eyer / and so aryuyd in y^e yle Noysaunt / and so came
to¹ Huon / whom he founde sore wepyng, and sayd / ⁸
'syr Huon, I pray our lorde Ihesu Cryst to socoure &
ayde *thee*.' 'A, very⁴ god,' quod Huon, 'who is it⁵ that
speketh to¹ me?' / 'Huon,' quod he, 'I am a man
who loueth the, and am called Mallebron, & am a ¹²
best of the see who hathe or⁶ this tyme borne the ouer
the salt water to Babylon.' 'A, Mallebron, dere
brother,' quod Huon, 'I requyre the vnbynd me &
brynge me out of this dolouros payne' / 'with a ryght ¹⁶
good wyll,' quod Mallebron / than he dyd vnbynde
hym and openyd his iyes / whan Huon saw that he was
ryght ioyfull / & demaundyd who sent hym thether /
'Huon,' quod he, 'know for trouthe⁵ / it was kinge ²⁰
Oberon, & where as I was condemnyd before to be a
best of the see xxx yere, nowe for thy sake I must
endure so .xxviii. yere more / yet I care not for the
payne / for y^e loue that I bere to¹ the; there is no payne ²⁴
impossyble to¹ me to bere / but I must bere⁷ agayne to¹
Oberon the ryche horne & cuppe & harnes⁸ / for so I
haue promysyd kyng Oberon to do.' 'A,' quod Huon,
'I pray to our lorde Ihesu Cryst to confounde y^e ²⁸
dwarfe who hath causyd me to endure all these paynes /
for so small an occasyon' / 'Huon,' quod Mallebron,
'ye do yll to say soo / for ye haue no soner spoken it /
but *that* kyng Oberon doth know it' / 'certainly,' quod ³²
Huon, 'I care not what he can do; he hath done me
so myche yll *that* I can neuer loue hym / but, *sir*, I

¹ vuto.

² he.

³ and.

⁴ deare.

⁵ that.

⁶ before.

⁷ carie.

⁸ armour.

- pray the tell me yf *thou* ¹wylt bere me hense, or elles
 whether that I shall ²byde here for euer' / 'frend,' quod
 Mallebron, 'I shall ³bere *thee* out of this yle & sette the
 4 on y^e mayne londe / other ayde may I not do the' ⁴ /
 than Mallebron tooke on ⁵hym agayne his bestes skyn,
 & sayd, 'sir, lepe vp apon me' / than Huon lept vp on
 his crope ⁶as naked as euer he was borne / than ⁴ /
 8 Mallebron lept in to y^e ⁷& began to swym, & came to
 the mayne londe / & sayd / 'frend Huon, more seruyce
 can I not do to ⁸*thee* at this tyme / but I recommaunde
thee to y^e kepinge of our lorde god, who sende *thee*
 12 comferte / I ⁹must go & seke for the horne / cuppe &
 harnes ¹⁰ / y^e which *thou* wert wont to haue & enioy /
 & I to ¹¹bere them to ⁸kinge Oberon, ¹²thus haue I
 promysyd to do' / & ⁹ / Huon was there all alone &
 16 naked / & ¹³peteously compleynynd, ¹⁴& sayd, 'A, good
 lorde, I requyre *thee* to ayde me / I know not where I
 am, nor whether I may go, yet yf I had clothes to
 couer my naked skyn I shuld haue sum comferte, ¹⁵&
 20 to ¹⁵go & seke sum aduenture / greatly I ought to hate y^e
 croked dwarfe Oberon, who hath brought me in ¹⁶all this
 payne / but by y^e fayth *that* I owe to ⁸god, sen ¹⁷he
 hath left me thus / from hense forth to do hym the
 24 more spyte I shall make lyes ynowe / I shall not leue for
 hym / *that* ¹⁸I recommaunde hym ⁹ / to a.C.M. deuelles' /
 whan he had ben there a certen spase all alone / he
 arose & lokyd al about hym, to se if he myght perseyue
 28 any man passe by / by ¹⁹whom he myght haue any
 socoure / ¹²he was nere famyshyd for lake of sustenance,
 how be it, he thought to departe thense to seke sum
 aduenture / he went on his way ; he went so farre *that*

Malabron swims
with Huon to the
main land,
and there leaves

him to go in
search of the
horn, cup and
armour.

Huon prays to
God to succour
him in his
helplessness,

and declares he
will avenge the
wrongs that
Oberon has done
him.

Huon journeys on

¹ Fol. xli. back, col. 2. ² must. ³ will. ⁴ and.
⁵ vpon. ⁶ backe. ⁷ Sea (*omitted* in Crawford MS.).
⁸ vnto. ⁹ now. ¹⁰ armour. ¹¹ am. ¹² for.
¹³ *omitted*. ¹⁴ complayning. ¹⁵⁻¹⁶ for then I might.
¹⁶ to. ¹⁷ seeing. ¹⁸ whom.
¹⁹ from.

In hope of some
fortunate
adventure.

he founde an aduenture / such as ye shall here / for
our lord Jhesu cryst neuer forgetteth his frendes.¹

¶ How Huon founde a minstrell, who gaue
hym clothinge & mete, & toke Huon with 4
hym as his varlette, & went to Mombrant.

Ca. .li.

He sees an old
man sitting
under an oak tree
in a fair meadow.



Han Huon had gone a grete way he
behelde on his ryght hande / and sawe 8
nere hym a lytyll wood by a fayre
medow side, and therin was stondyng
a grete oke full of leues / & there
beside was a clere founteyne, and there he saw an 12
aunsyent man with whyte heres syttyng vnder the oke /
& before hym he had a lytel cloth sprede a brode on
the grasse / & theron flessch & brede & wyne in a botell /
whan Huon saw the old man / he came to³ hym / & y^e 16
aunsyent man sayd, 'A, thou wyld man, I pray the
for y^e loue of mahounde do me no hurt / but take
mete & drynke at thy pleasure' / whan Huon saw
hym / he spyed lyeng beside hym an harp and a vyall 20
wheron he coude well play, for in all pagany there was
no mynstrell lyke him / 'frende,' quod Huon, 'thou
hast namyd me ryght / for a more vnhappy⁴ than I am
ther is none lyuyng' / 'frende,' quod y^e mynstrell, 24
'go to yonder male & open it, & take what thou lykest
best to couer thy naked skyn / than come to me & ete
at thy pleasure' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'good aduenture
is come to³ me thus to fynde you / mahounde rewarde 28
you' / 'syr,' quod the mynstrell, 'I pray the come &
ete with me, & kepe me company / for thou shalt not
fynde a more sorowfull⁴ than I am.' 'By my fayth,'
quod Huon, 'a companyon of your owne sort haue y^e 32

Food and wine
are spread out
before him.

At his side lie a
harp and a viol.

The minstrel
offers Huon
clothing and
food.

The minstrel
is a man of
sorrow,

¹ seruanτες.

² Fol. xlii. col. 1.

³ vnto.

⁴ man.

founde / for there was neuer man that hath sufferyd so
 myche pouerte as I laude¹ be to² hym *that* fourmyd
 me / but sen³ I haue founde mete to ete, blyssyd by y^e and Huon thanks
 4 owre that I haue founde you / for ye seme to be a good him for his
 man ' / than Huon went to y^e male and tooke clothes, welcome.
 & than came to² the mynstrell & sat downe, & dyd ete
 & drynke as myche as pleasyd hym / the mynstrell
 8 behelde Huon, & saw how he was a fayre yong man
 &⁴ courtneys / & than he demaundyd of hym where he
 was borne, & by what aduenture he was aryued there
 in *that* case *that* he was in / whan⁵ Huon herde how the
 12 mynstrell demaundyd of his estate / he began to study
 in hymselfe whether he shulde shewe the trouthe or
 eles to lye / than he callyd on⁶ our lord god & sayd,
 'a, good lorde, yf I shew this man the trouthe of
 16 myne aduenture I am but deed. A,⁷ Oberon, for a
 small offence thou hast left me in thys case, for⁸ yf I
 shew the trouthe of my lyfe to this man I am but deed ;
 I shall neuer trust the more / but I wyll⁸ put al my
 20 dedes⁹ in god / for the loue that I haue to my louer¹⁰
 thou hast me in hate / but sen³ it is so, as often as I
 haue nede I shall lye, nor I shall not leue it for fere of
 the / but rather do it in dyspyght of the ' / than Huon
 24 sayd to the mynstrell, 'Syr, ye haue demaundyd of
 myne estate, and as yet I haue made you none answer /
 the trouthe is, I fynde my self so wel at myn ease that
 I forgot to answer you / but I shal⁸ shew you, sen³
 28 ye wold know it / syr, of certen I am¹¹ borne of¹² the
 countre of aufryke / and fell in company with dyuers
 merchautes by the see in a shyppe, thynkyng to haue
 sayled to Damiet / but a grete mysfortune fell apon vs ;
 32 there rose suche an orryble tempest that our shyppe
 pereshyd, and all that¹³ with in it none scapyd but I, and
 He declares that
 he was born in
 Africa,
 and was
 shipwrecked on
 his way to
 Damietta.

¹ praise. ² vnto. ³ seeing. ⁴ a. ⁵ Fol. xlii. col. 2.
⁶ to. ⁷ and king. ⁸ now. ⁹ trust. ¹⁰ Loue.
¹¹ was. ¹² in. ¹³ were.

The minstrel
tells how his
name is Mouflet,

and how his
master was the
Admiral
Gaudisee,
whom a
Frenchman
basely slew.

Huon says his
name is Salater.

The minstrel
laments his
desolate
condition,

and longs to
revenge himself
on his master's
murderer.

But he invites
Salater to follow
him to the
court of King
Ivoryn, the
brother of
Gaudisee.

I thanke mahounde that I am scapide alyue, therfore I
desyre you now to shew me your aduenture as I haue
shewyd you myne' / 'frende,' quod the mynstrell,
'sen¹ ye wyll know it / know for trouthe I am namyd 4
Mouflet / I am a mynstrell, as thou seest here by myne
instrumentes / and I say to² the that fro hense to the
red see there is none so connyng in all instrumentes as
I am / and I can do many other thynges / and the 8
doloure that thou seest me make is by cause of late I
haue lost my good lorde and mayster, the admyrall
Gaudys / who was slayne myserablie by a vacabounde
of Fraunce callyd Huon / that mahounde shame hym / 12
and brenge hym to an yll deth, ³for by hym I am fallen
in to pouerte and mysery. I pray the tell me thy
name' / 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'my name is Salater.'
'Well,' quod the mynstrell, 'Salater, dysmay the not 16
for the grete pouertes that thou hast sufferyd / thou
seest what aduenture Mahounde hath sent the / thou
art nowe better arayed than thou wert / yf thou wylt
folowe my counsell thou shalt haue no nede / thou 20
arte fayre & yonge / thou oughtest not to be dys-
mayed / but I that am old and aunsyent haue cause to
be dyscomfortyd / sen¹ in myne old dayes I haue lost
my lord and mayster, the admyrall Gaudys, who dyd 24
me so mych good and profyte / I wold it pleasyd
mahounde that he that slew hym were in my power' /
whan Huon herde that he spake no worde, but cast
downe his hede. 'Salater,' quod the mynstrell, 'sen¹ 28
my lord is deed, I wyll goo to Mombrant to kynge
Iuoryn / to shewe hym the deth of his brother, the
admyrall Gaudys / and yf thou wylt abyde with me so
that thou wylt bere my fardell and harp a fote / or⁴ it be 32
halfe a yere past I waraunt⁵ thou shalt haue a horse /
for whan so euer thou shalt here me play vpon my

¹ seeing.

² vnto.

³ Fol. xlii. back, col. 1.

⁴ ere.

⁵ thee.

instrumentes / all the herers shall take therin suche
 pleasure / that they shall gyue me bothe gownes &
 mantelles, so that thou shalt haue myche a do to truss
 4 them in my male,' ¹'A,' after ¹quod Huon, 'I am
 content to serue you and to do all your commaunde-
 mentes.' Than Huon tooke the male in ²his necke &
 the harpe in his hande / and Mouflet, his mayster, bare
 8 the vyall / & thus the mayster and the seruauant went
 on there way to go to Mombrant. 'A, good lord,'
 quod Huon, 'my herte ought to be sorowfull when I
 se myselfe in this case / that now I must become a
 12 mynstrelles varlet. goddes curse haue Oberon the
 dwarfe, who hath done me all this anoyauunce.³ Alas,
 yf I had nowe my good hernes⁴ / my horne / and my
 cuppe ⁵I wold reken all the sorow that I haue enduryd
 16 at⁶ no thyng. A,⁷ whan I had .xiii. knyghtes to serue
 me, how is the⁸ chaunce now tournyd that I⁹ must serue
 a pore mynstrell.' whan Mouflet herd Huon make
 suche sorow within hymselfe he sayd / 'dere brother
 20 Salater, take good comfort / for ¹⁰or it be¹⁰ to morow at
 nyght, thou shalt se y^e good chere that shalbe made to
 me / wherof thou shalt haue parte / & of all y^e goodes
 that I can gette.' 'Mayster,' quod Huon, 'mahounde
 24 rewarde you for the goodnes that ye haue shewyd me /
 & shall do' / thus the mayster & the seruauant went
 forth to gether deuysynge. at last Huon spied be-
 hynde them comyng certen men of armes holdynge
 28 the way to Mombrant. 'Mayster,' quod Huon / 'here
 behynde vs are commynge men in armure, I know not
 yf¹¹ they wyll do vs any hurt or not.' 'Salater,' quod
 Mouflet / 'be not abashyd / we wyl abyde here &
 32 know whether they wyll go' / & with in a while the
 men of warre came to them / who were in nombre a¹²

Huon follows
Mouflet as his
servant.

Mouflet consoles
Huon,
who weeps
because of his
miserable estate.

Five hundred
soldiers meet
them on their
journey,

¹⁻¹ 'Well, Sir.' ² on.

³ trouble.

⁴ armour.

⁵ Fol. xlii. back, col. 2.

⁶ as.

⁷ But.

⁸ this.

⁹ myself.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ before.

¹¹ whether.

¹² omitted.

who are also
proceeding to
Mombrant.

They tell Huon
how they are
going to join
King Ivoryn's
army,
which he is
assembling to do
battle with the
Admiral who
holds
Esclaramonde at
Anfalarne.

.v.c. persons / the mynstrell salutyd them and sayd,
'Syr, I pray you shew me wheder ye wyll go' /
'frend,' quod one of them / 'by cause we se *that* ye be
a ientyll mynstrell I shall shewe you / we are goynge 4
to kynge Iuoryn of Mombrant / who wyll¹ go and
make ware vpon y^e admyrall Gallaffer / by cause *that*
now of late / the damesell Esclaramonde, doughter to
the admyrall Gaudys, passyd by Anfalarne / who sholde 8
haue ben brought to her vncle, kynge Iuoryn of Mom-
brant / but the admyrall Gallaffer toke her by force /
& slew all them that lede her / & hath maryed the
fayre Esclaramonde / wherof kyng Iuoryn is as sorow- 12
full as may be / & for *that* cause we be sent for by
kynge Iuoryn / who is ²in mynde² to assemble all his
power / to go & dystroy y^e admyrall Galaffer. Now I
haue shewyd you the cause of our goynge to the cyte 16
of Mombrant.'

¶ ³Howe Huon and his mayster Mouflet
aryued at Mombrant, and how Huon spake
with kynge Iuoryn. Cap. .lii. 20



Hen Huon of Burdeaux vnderstode the
paynmys how they were goynge where
as⁴ the lady Esclaramonde was / he was
surprysed,⁵ and sayde to his mayster / 24

Huon proposes to
Mouflet that they
should go to the
war.

The minstrel
refuses,

and arrives at
King Ivoryn's
court.

'syr, I requyre you let vs go to the
warre with them' / 'salater,' quod Mouflet, 'beware
what thou sayest / for there⁶ as warre is I wolde not
come there for ony thyng.' Thus they wente forthe 28
tyll⁷ they came to Mombrant / and wente straye to the
palayes, where as he⁸ founde kynge Iuoryn & all his
barons / when the mynstrell sawe hym / he saluted hym
in the name of Mahounde / and sayd, 'syr, I am ryght 32
dolorous for the newes *that* I brynge you / for, syr,

¹ needs. ²⁻³ minded. ³ Fol. xliii. col. 1. ⁴ omitted.
⁵ with ioye. ⁶ where. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ they.

your brother, my lorde & mayster, the Admyrall
 Gaudys / is pyteously slayne.' 'Mouflet,' quod
 yuoryn, 'these newes hathe ben broughte to¹ me be-
 4 fore this tyme, wherof I am sory² / & also I am sory
 for my nece, the fayre Esclaramonde / who is kept
 fro me / by y^e Admyrall Galafer / & for ony message
 that I can sende to hym / he wyll not sende her³ to
 8 me. But by the faythe that I owe to my god
 Mahounde, I shall make hym suche warre that the
 memory therof shall be had a hondred yere hereafter /
 for I shall leue hym neuer a fote of lande, but I shall
 12 brynge all in to fyre and flame / and clene dystroy hym ;
 and in the dyspyte of his teth I wyll se my nece
 Esclaramond / and yf I may gete her I shall cause her
 to be stryken all to peces, and brynne⁴ her in to ashes /
 16 for my broder is deed by a vylayne of Fraunce on⁵ whom
 she was amorous.' whan Huon herde him 'speke of his
 lady / his herte rose, and made promyse in hymselfe /
 that or⁷ the moneth were past he wolde go & se her or⁸
 20 fynde the maner⁹ to speake with her / then kyng
 yuoryn called Mouflet the mynstrell, & sayd, 'frend, I
 pray *thee* do some thyng to make me mery, for by
 reason of the dyspleasure that I haue had my ioye is
 24 lost / therfore it were better for me to take some myrth
 then to be long in sorow' / 'syr,' quod Mouflet, 'I am
 redy to do your pleasure' / then he toke his vyall &
 playde therof in suche wyse that it was grete melody
 28 to here it / for all the paynims that were there had
 grete ioye & myrth, & made grete feest¹⁰ / when Huon
 herde it he sayde, 'good lord, I requyre the that this
 grete ioy may turne to me, as to here some good newes
 32 of her whom I desyre¹¹ sore to se.' when the mynstrell
 had fynnysshed his songe / the paynims dyde of theyr

The King
 declares his
 intention of
 killing the
 Admiral and
 Esclaramonde,

whose father fell
 at the hands of
 her French lover.

King Ivoryn asks
 Mouflet to make
 him merry.

The minstrel
 plays on his viol,
 and the music so
 charms the
 Paynim hearers

¹ vnto.² much agreedued.³ backe.⁴ burne.⁵ vppon.⁶ Fol. xliii. col. 2.⁷ ere.⁸ and.⁹ meanes how.¹⁰ feasting.¹¹ so.

that they give
Mouflet many
presents of
clothing.

Ivoryn says that
Huon is too fair
to serve a
minstrel.

Mouflet tells
how he succoured
him.

Ivoryn warns
Mouflet that Huon
will rob him of
his property,
and kill him
when he is rich.

clothes / and some gaue hym ther gownes / and some
theyr mantelles / he thought hymselfe ryght wel happy
that coude gyue the mynstrell ony thyng. Huon had
ynough to do to gather togyther the clothes that were 4
gyuen hym, and he put them in to his male / wher of
Huon was ioyfull bycause he sholde haue the one halfe.
Kynge yuoryn behelde Huon, & sayd to¹ them that were
about hym / 'grete damage it is that so fayre a yonge 8
man sholde serue a mynstrel' / 'syr kyng,'² quod
Mouflet, 'be not abasshed though this yonge man do
serue me, he hathe cause so to do / for when youre
broder was dede I departed fro thens to come hyther, 12
and by the way I founde a grete oke, vnder the whiche
I sate downe to rest me, and therby was a fayre³
fountayne / fayre and clere / there I spred abroad a
towel on the grene² grasse / and set theron brede and 16
suche meate as I had, and drynke⁴ / and the same
tyme / this yonge man aryued & cam to¹ me al naked /
& prayed me for the loue of Mahound to gyue hym
some of my brede, ⁵and so I dyde, and clothed hym as 20
ye se / & I dyde so moche for hym that he promysed
to serue me and to bere my fardel and my harpe / and
more ouer, when I cam to ony passage of water he
wolde caste me in his necke as lyght as though I had 24
ben nothyng / he is so stronge, & bere me ouer' / 'a,
poore caytife,' quod kyng yuoryn, 'hast thou lyued so
long & can not perceyue why he doth it? / he abydeh
tyll⁶ thou haste gotten some ryches, and then he wyll 28
cut thy throte and cast *thee* in⁷ the ryuer, and then go
away with all thy ryches / cause hym to come & speke
with me' / 'syr,' quod Mouflet, 'he shal come to you,'
and so⁸ called Huon, and broughte hym to kynge 32
yuoryn. 'A, frende,' quod the kyng, 'I pray *thee*
shew me where *thou* were borne / for I haue pyte of the


¹ vnto.² omitted.³ greata.⁴ as I had.⁵ Fol. xliii. back, col. 1.⁶ vntill.⁷ to.⁸ he.

to se the in so low estate as to be varlet to a mynstrell /
 it were better for the to serue some prynce / or helpe
 to kepe a towne / or a castell, rather then thus to lese
 4 thy tyme / I wote not what I shold thinke therin. But
 that it semeth to be¹ / for² that thou arte of a faynte
 corage. what hathe moued the thus to do ? / thou seest
 thy mayster hath nothyng but that he geteth with his
 8 vyal ; canst thou fynde none other craftes³ to lyue by
 more honestly ? 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I can craftes
 ynow / the whiche I shall name to⁴ you yf ye wyl here
 me' / 'say on,' quod yuoryn, 'for I haue gret desyre
 12 to know what thou canste do / but of one thyng I
 aduise the: make no vaunt of ony thyng without *thou*
 canst do it in dede / for in euery thyng I wyll proue
thee.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I can mew a sparhawke /
 16 and I can chase the herte / & the wyld bore, and blowe
 the pryce, and serue the houndes of theyr ryghtes, and
 I can serue at the table before a grete prynce, and I can
 playe at chesse and tables as well as ony other can do /
 20 nor I neuer founde man coulde wyne of me yf I lyst.

The King calls
Huon and asks
him why he is
holding so mean a
post.

Huon tells the
crafts he knows.

¶ 'How kyng Iuoryn caused his doughter
 'play at the chesse with Huon, 'on the'
 condycyon that yf he were mated he shold
 24 lese his heed, & yf she were mated / Huon
 shold 'lye with her all nyght⁵ / and how
 Huon wan the game. Cap. .liiii.

28  Hen kyng yuoryn herd Huon he sayd,
 'holde the to this, for I shall proue
 whether it be true that thou sayest or
 not' / 'yet, syr,⁶ I pray you let me
 shew forther what I can do / & then

Ivoryn cannot
believe that Huon
has so many
accomplishments.

¹ mee. ² omitted.

³ meanes.

⁴ vnto.

⁵ Fol. xliii. back, col. 2.

⁶ to.

⁷⁻⁷ vpon.

⁸⁻⁸ haue her loue.

⁹ (quoth Huon).

He will make
trial of his
knowledge of
chess.
He shall play
with his
daughter.

If he win he
shall lie with her,
and if he lose
he shall surely
die.

The maiden is
summoned.

She learns how
fair Huon is.


assaye me at youre pleasure.' 'By Mahounde,' quod
the kynge, 'I am content ¹thou shewest¹ al that thou
canst do.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I can ryght wel arme
me / & set the helme on my hede / & bere a shelde & 4
spere / & rynne & galop a hors / & when it cometh to
the poynt ²ther as² strokes shold be gyuen, ye may well
sende forth a worse then I. Also, syr, I can ryght wel entre
in to ladyes chambres to embrace & to³ kys them, & to 8
do ⁴the rest yf nede were⁴ / 'frende,' quod yuoryn,
'by *that*⁵ I here by *thee* thou canst do mo thynges then
shold torne to good / but to *proue* the I shall cause
thee to be assayed at y^e playe of the chesse. I haue a 12
fayre doughter with whom I wyll thou shalt play, ⁶on
y^e⁶ condycion *that* yf she wyne⁷ thou shalt lese thy
hede / & yf *thou* canst mate her⁷ I promyse⁸ *that* thou
shalt haue her ⁹one nyght in thy bed / to do⁹ with her 16
at thy pleasure, & a .C. marke of money there *with*.
'syr,' quod Huon, 'yf it were your pleasure I wolde
be glad to forbere *that* enterpryce' / 'by Mahound,'
quod y^e kyng, 'it shall be none other wyse, com ther of 20
what wyll' / in y^e mene seson *that* this bargin was
makyng / a paynym went in to y^e ladyes chamber &
shewed her howe there was *with* the kynge her fader a
yonge man, &¹⁰ had made promyse how he shold play at 24
y^e chesse *with* her, ⁶on y^e⁶ condycion *that* yf he lese¹¹ y^e
game / ¹²he shall¹³ lese his hede / & yf he¹⁴ wyne, then
¹⁵to haue her all nyght in his bed to do his pleasure¹⁵ /
& a C. marke of money / ¹⁶& dame,¹⁶ quod he, 'I ensure 28
you he *that* shall play agaynst you is the moost³ fayrest
man *that* euer I sawe / pyte it is *that* he shold be
a verlet to a mynstrel as he is' / 'by Mahounde,' quod

¹⁻¹ that thou shalt shew. ²⁻² where. ³ omitted.
⁴⁻⁴ them any seruice. ⁵ which. ⁶⁻⁶ vpon. ⁷ then.
⁸ thee. ⁹⁻⁹ to thy wife, to repose. ¹⁰ who. ¹¹ lost.
¹² Fol. xliiii. col. 1. ¹³ should then. ¹⁴ chaunced to.
¹⁵⁻¹⁵ he to haue you to his wedded wife.
¹⁶⁻¹⁶ But, Madam.

y^e lady, 'I holde my father a fole when he thynketh
that I shold suffre a man to dye for wynnynge of
 a game at chesse.' Then yuoryn sent for his doughter
 4 by .ii. kynges, who brought her to y^e kyng her father /
 then yuoryn sayd, 'Doughter / *thou* must play at
 chesse with this yong varlet *that thou* seest here / so
that yf thou wyne ¹he shall lese his heed / & yf he
 8 wyne ¹I wyll *that* he shall ²lye with *thee* one nyght ²
 to do with *thee* at his pleasure.' 'Father,' quod y^e
 lady, 'syn ³this is your pleasure, it is reason *that* I do it
 whether I wyll or not' / then she behelde Huon, whom
 12 she saw 'ryght fayre, & sayd to her selfe, 'By
 Mahounde, for the grete beaute *that* I se in this yonge
 man, I wolde this game were at an ende, so that I were
⁴a bed with hym all nyght.'⁵

King Ivoryn tells
 her the condition
 of the game,

and at sight of
 Huon she loves
 him madly.

16  Hen the lady was come theyr places
 were made redy / then she & Huon
 sate downe, & the ⁶kynges yuoryn & all
 the ⁷barons sat downe aboute them to
 20 se them play / then Huon sayd to the
 kyng / 'sir, I requyre you / *that* you nor none other
 do speke in our game / nother for y^e one party nor for
 y^e other' / 'frende,' quod the kyng / 'haue no doute
 24 therof' / & for more suerte the kyng caused to be
 cryed ⁸thorow ⁹all y^e palays that none sholde be so
 hardy ¹⁰to speke one worde on ¹¹payn of deth / then y^e
 chesse were made redy; then ¹²Huon sayd, 'lady, what
 28 game wyl ye play at?' 'frende,' quod she, 'at y^e game
 accustomed, *that* is, to be mated in y^e corner' / then
 they both began to study for y^e fyrst draught / ther
 were paynmys *that* beheld Huon / but he cared not for
 32 ony of them / but studyed on his game, y^e whiche they
 had begon, so *that* Huon had lost parte ¹³of his pawnes,

Huon and the
 lady sit down to
 play.

Silence is
 enjoined on the
 spectators.

Huon loses some
 pawns.

¹ then. ²⁻³ be thy husband. ³ seeing. ⁴ to be.
⁵⁻⁶ his wedded wife. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ his. ⁸ proclaymed.
⁹ out. ¹⁰ as. ¹¹ vpon. ¹² and. ¹³ Fol. xliiii. col. 2.

The maiden
neglects the game
for love of Huon,

and is at length
checkmated.

Ivoryn is angry
with his
daughter.

Huon releases her
from the wager
he had made
with the King.

The maiden
reproaches her-
self because of
her love for
Huon.

wher with he chaunged colour & blusshed as rede as
a rose / the damsell perceyued him, & sayd, 'frende,
wheron do ye thynke ye are nye¹ mated / anone my
fader wyl stryke of your hede' / 'dame,'² quod he, 'as 4
yet y^e game is not done / grete shame shall your father
haue, when ye shall lye all nyghte in myn arnes, & I
beyng but a varlet³ to a pore mynstrell' / when the
barons herde Huon say so they began all to laugh. 8
And the lady who was⁴ surprysed with the loue of
Huon for⁵ y^e grete beaute *that* she sawe in hym, so⁶
that she nye forgate all her play to thynke of Huon,⁷
⁸so that⁸ she lost y^e game / wherof Huon was⁹ ioyfull / 12
& called y^e king, & sayd, 'sir, now may ye se how I can
play / for¹⁰ yf I wyll¹¹ a lytell more study¹² / I wolde¹³
mate your doughter where as I lyst / when the kyng
sawe that he sayd to his doughter / 'a ryse, cursed be 16
y^e houre that euer⁶ I gate the / for grete dyshonour
thou hast¹⁴ done to me, ¹⁵when so many grete men
thou hast mated,¹⁵ & now I se here before me¹⁶ that
a mynstrelles varlet hathe mated the' / 'sir,' quod 20
Huon, 'trouble not your self for that cause / as for the
wager *that* I sholde wyn therby, I am content to
relese it quyte; let youre doughter go in to her chambre
& sporte her with her damselles at her pleasure, & 24
I shall go & serue my mayster y^e mynstrel.' 'frende,'
quod the kyng, 'yf *thou* wylt shewe me this curteyse,
I shall gyue the a .C. marke in money' / 'sir,' quod
Huon, 'I am content with youre pleasure' / & y^e lady 28
went her way sorowfull, & sayd to her self / 'a, false
faynted hert, Mahounde confounde the / for yf I had
knowe *that* thou woldest thus a¹⁷ refused my company

¹ almost.

² Madame.

³ seruant.

⁴ so.

⁵ in regard of.

⁶ omitted.

⁷ him.

⁸⁻⁹ wherby.

⁹ right.

¹⁰ but.

¹¹ would.

¹² studie but *before* a lytell more.

¹³ could.

¹⁴ now.

¹⁵⁻¹⁶ that heretofore hast mated so many great men.


¹⁶ my face.

¹⁷ haue.

I wold haue mated the / & then thou haddest lost thy
 hed' / thus y^e mater passyd tyl y^e next daye / than kyng
 yuorin made ¹a crye¹ thorow² all the cyte that euery
 4 man sholde be armed & mounted on theyr horses, &
 that it was his mynd to set forward toward his enemyes.
 then euery man armed them & mounted on ³theyr
 horses; many helmes gletred agaynst the sonne / &
 8 many trompettes & taboures began to sowne / suche
 brute was made in the cyte that it was meruayle to
 here it.

Ivoryn orders his
 army to prepare
 for battle.

¶ How that⁴ Huon was aryued⁵ & mounted
 12 on a poore horse, and went after the army
 to anferlerne. Ca. liiii.

16  Hen Huon sawe howe he had not wher-
 with to arme him his hert mourned
 ryght sore / for gladly he wolde a⁶ gone
 forth with other yf he myght haue⁷
 any hors to ryde⁸ on / ⁹he came to kyng
 yuorin, & sayd, 'syr, I requyre you let me haue a hors
 20 & harnes¹⁰ / that I may go with you to y^e batayle / &
 then shall ye se how I can ayde you' / 'frende,' quod
 yuorin, 'I am content¹¹ ye come¹² with me' / then the
 kyng commaunded one of his chamberlaynes to delyuer
 24 him¹³ hors & harneys,¹⁰ & y^e chamberlayn sayd / 'sir,
 beware what ye do / for often tymes suche fleynge
 vacabondes are of ¹³lyght corage / yf he haue¹⁸ hors &
 harneys¹⁰ / he may as sone go to your enemyes parte as
 28 to kepe with you / sir,¹⁴ neuer trust me but he is some
 counterfeyt varlet' / when the kyng herde him¹⁵ / he
 sayd, 'it may well be / yet let him haue a good harnes¹⁰

Huon begs for a
 horse and
 armour in order
 to enter the
 battle.

The King's
 chamberlain
 doubts Huon, and
 fears he may play
 the traitor.

1-1 proclamation.

2 out.

3 Fol. xliiii. back, col. 1.

4 omitted.

5 armyd.

6 haue.

7 had.

8 haue ridden.

9 wherefore.

10 armour.

11 that.

12 goe.

13 a.

14 and.

15 say so.

Ivoryn orders
that a poor horse
be given him.

A paynim offers
Huon a rusty old
sword,

which the
knight finds to
have come from
the same forge
as Roland's
sword.

Huon thanks the
paynim for the
sword.

He is given a
lean and feeble
horse,

and the paynims
mock at him
when he
mounts it.

& helme / & shelde / & let his hors be but of a small
valew, to the entent¹ he shall not go ferre of though he
wold' / the same tyme there was a paynym that herde
the kyng graunt how Huon shold haue harneys² / he 4
went to his howse & toke out of his cofer an olde
rusty swerde, & brought it to Huon / & sayd, 'frend, I
se wel ye haue no swerde to ayde yourself with all, &
therefore I gyue you this swerde, the whiche I haue 8
long kept in my cofer' / y^e paynym dyd gyue it to
Huon in a mockery / for he thought y^e swerde but of
a small valew. Huon toke y^e swerde & drew it out of
y^e sheth, & saw letters wrytten theron in frenche / 12
seyng³ how thes swerd was forged by galans, who in his
daies forged .iii. swerdes / & the¹ same swerd was one of
the thre / ⁴one was⁴ durandell, ⁵the which Rowlande
had⁵ / ⁶the .ii. was⁶ courtayn / when Huon had rede y^e 16
letters he was ryght ioiful, & sayd to y^e paynim /
'frende, for this good swerde *that* ye haue gyuen me I
thanke you / & I promys you yf I may lyue longe
I shall rewarde you with the double valewe therof. 20
after¹ Huon hadde this swerde there was brought⁷ him a
good harneis² / helme / sheld, & spere with a rusty hed.
Huon cared lytell for it by reason of y^e gret desyre *that*
he had to come to the place where as he myght shewe 24
his strength & vertue / then ther was brought to him a
lene hors, pyllid with a long necke & a grete hede /
when Huon saw *that* hors he toke him by y^e brydell &
lept vpon him without ony fote in y^e styrop, in the 28
syght of a .M. paynims *that* were there present / &
some said it was not wel done to geue him a hors
the which coude not serue nor ayde him in tyme of
nede / when Huon was mounted on his lene feble horse / 32
he was sorowfull / for well he perceyued how they

¹ that. ² armour. ³ Fol. xliiii. back, col. 2.

⁴⁻⁴ and the second was called. ⁵⁻⁵ omitted.

⁶ and the third. ⁷ vnto.

mocked him, & sayd softly to himsele / 'a, ye fals
 paynymys, yf I may lyue a yere / I shall quyte your
 mockes' / then Huon rode forth with other / but for all
 4 that he coude do with his spurres, the hors wolde
 go / but his owne softe pace / wherof¹ dyuers paynymys
 mocked him. thus kyng yuoryn departed fro Mombrant
 with his grete army, & taryed in y^e felde for his men /
 8 & when they were all assembled togyder, then he
 departed & toke y^e way to Anfalerne / the which was² Ivoryn leads his
army to
Anfalerne,
 of / but .iiii. legges of³ / & whan they came there they
 ran before the cyte & draue away al the bestes,
 12 beofes and motons, & sent them to mombrant / then
 when y^e admyral galaffer saw kyng yuoryn before his
 cyte, & had dryuen away all the praye aboute the
 towne / he was so sorowfull that he was nere hande out
 16 of his wyt / & then he saw the fayre Esclaramonde
 before him, & sayd / 'dame,⁵ the grete loue that I haue
 set on you is this day derely bought / for by your
 occacion I se my countre destroyed & my men slayne &
 20 led in seruytude' / 'sir,' quod she, 'I am sory therof /
 it lyeth in you to amende it / syn⁶ this yll is come to
 you by me / then it is in you to render me to kyng
 yuoryn / & therby ye & your countre shall be in rest &
 24 peace' / 'fayre lady,' quod Galaffer / 'by y^e grace of
 Mahound / for ony fere that I haue of yuoryn your
 vncler I wyll not render you in to his handes tyll⁷ I haue
 had of you my pleasir' / 'sir,' quod she, 'ye may do
 28 with me as it shall please you after that the .ii. yeres
 be past for y^e accomplysshyng of myn auow.' 'dame,'⁵
 quod Galaffer / 'or I⁸ render you to your vncler yuoryn
 I shall haue neuer a foote of lande,⁹ fyrst it shall be
 32 clene dystroyed.'

and captures all
the cattle before
the city.

The Admiral is in
fear for himself
and country,
and tells
Esclaramonde she
has caused his
misery.
She asks to be
surrendered to
King Ivoryn,

but the Admiral
refuses to follow
her advice.

¹ wherat.² distant.³ omitted.⁴ Fol. xlv. col. 1.⁵ Madame.⁶ seeing.⁷ untill.⁸⁻⁹ before I will.⁹ for.

¶ Howe Huon fought with Sorbryn & slewe
hym, & wan the good horse Blanchardyn,
wheron he mounted, & wan the batayle /
& was brought with grete tryumphe to 4
Mombrant. Cap. .lv.

Sorbryn, the
Admiral's
nephew, offers to
challenge the
boldest of
Ivoryn's soldiers,



on the condition
that if he is
conquered,
Esclaramonde
shall be restored,

and if he is
victorious,
Ivoryn shall
return after
paying twice the
value of the
damage he has
already done.

Sorbryn arms
himself,
and his good
horse Blanchardin
is brought him.

Hen Sorbryn, nephew to y^e admyrall
Galaffer, herde his vnclie make suche
sorow, he sayd to him / 'fayre vnclie, 8
be not dysmayed, though yuoryn hath
taken & slayne some of your men, &
dryuen away your bestes. for eche¹ of yours, yf I
lyue, I shall render agayn to you .iiii. I shal tell you 12
how I shal² go & arme me, & yssu out & shew to
yuoryn *that*³ he² set one or .ii. of y^e moost⁴ hardyest⁵ of
all his hoost to fyght with me / &⁶ yf it be so *that* I be
ouercome / then⁷ rendre his⁸ nece Esclaramond to him 16
to do with her at his pleasir; & yf *that* I dyscomfyte
his men / then let him departe, so *that*⁹ all y^e damage
that he hath¹⁰ to you in this warre he to¹¹ render agayne
to you y^e double therof / for better it were *that* this 20
warre shold ende by .ii. ¹²men rather then so moche
people shold be dystroyed' / 'fayre nephew,' quod
Galaffer, 'I herde neuer a better worde / I am well
content yf ye wyll haue it thus' / then Sorbryn went 24
& armed him¹³ / he was a goodly knyght / for in all y^e
paynymys landes there was not his pere, nor none *that*
proched nere to his valyauntnes / when he was armed,
then blanchardin, his good hors, was brought to him / 28
y^e bounte¹⁴ of this hors exceded al other, & of beaute
ther was none lyke him / he was as whyte as snow / y^e
fresshenes of his aparyll, it was so ryche & goodly *that*

¹ one. ² will. ³ if. ⁴ omitted. ⁵ men. ⁶ that.
⁷ you to. ⁸ faire. ⁹ for. ¹⁰ done. ¹¹ will.
¹² Fol. xlv. col. 2. ¹³ himself. ¹⁴ goodness.

- I can not make no¹ mencyon therof; but² no man
coude esteme the valew of y^e ryches of y^e brydel, sadel
& harneis / then sorbrin lept vpon his hors with out
4 oni styrop / ³then he³ toke a grete spere, & so rode out He rides to King
Ivoryn and tells
him his purpose.
of y^e cyte / & when he saw kyng yuoryn a ferre of, he
cryed a loude & said / 'a, thou yuorin of mombrant, y^e
admirall Galaffer hath sent me to the, & wyl that thou
8 do arme on of ⁴y^e most⁴ valyauntest men of thy court,
& let him come agaynst me / & yf he can vanquysse
me / then he shal delyuer to thee thy nece Esclaramond /
& ⁵yf I ouercome thy man, then thou to returne to thy
12 cite & suffer thy nece⁶ styll with him / & also thou to
restore all y^e domages that thou hast done⁷ him & his in
this warre' / when yuoryn herd the paynym / he loked
about him to se yf any of his men wold take on him None of Ivoryn's
men will accept
Sorbryn's
challenge.
16 this enterpryce to fyghte with Sorbryn / but there was
no paynym that durste speke one worde / for they fered
Sorbryn for y^e fyersnes that was in him / & they said
amonge them selfe that who so euer dyd fyght agaynst
20 him were lyke myserably to fynysshe his days / y^e same
tyme that yuorin spake with Sorbryn / Huon was amonge
y^e other paynmys, & herd what sorbryn had sayd /
& also he sawe⁸ no man durst go agaynst Sorbryn / Huon hears
Sorbryn's words
24 then as wel as he myght he gate himselfe out of the prese
vpon his lene horse. ⁹he⁹ strake him with his sporres /
but for all that he coude do the horse wold nother trot nor
galop / but go styll his owne pase. y^e ¹⁰olde mynstrell
28 beheld Huon his varlet, who made hym redy to fight
agaynst the paynym / and saw that he was so yll
horsed, he ¹⁰escryed a ¹⁰hye, & sayd / 'syr kyng
yuoryn / it shal be to ¹¹you grete velany ¹²when suche a
32 horse that is no thyng worth ye haue delyuerd to ¹¹my
varlet / who goeth for your sake to fyght with Sorbryn, The minstrell
reproaches
Ivoryn with the
bad plight of his
servant's horse,
for Huon will
fight against
Sorbryn.

¹ due. ² for. ³⁻³ and. ⁴⁻⁴ thy. ⁵ but.
⁶ to remaine. ⁷ to. ⁸ that. ⁹ Fol. xlv. back, col. 1.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ cryed on. ¹¹ vnto. ¹² dishonour.

Huon tells
Sorbryn that he
is a Christian.

Sorbryn counsels
him not to accept
the challenge.

Huon, however,
will not change
his purpose,

and prepares for
the duel.

His horse will
hardly bear him,

and Sorbryn
rushes at him,

striking a heavy
blow.

But Huon
withstands its
force,

with whom none of your¹ men dare fyghte / grete synne
it is that he hath not a better horse' / then Huon sayd
to² Sorbryn, 'Sarazyn, I pray the speke with me' /
'Frende,' quod Sorbryn, 'what wylte thou with me?' / 4
'paynym,' quod Huon, 'I requyre *thee*³ proue thy
vertue agaynst me.' 'Then,' quod Sorbryn, 'tell me,
art thou a paynyme or a sarazyn?' 'Frende,' quod
Huon, 'I am nother paynym nor sarazyn / but I am 8
crystened / byleuyng in the lawe of Jesu cryste / &
thoughe thou seest me but poorely apparelled / dyspyse
me not / for I am com of a noble extracyon / wherfore
I requyre the on thy lawe that thou beleuest on, lette 12
me not go without batayle.' 'Frende,' quod Sorbryn,
'in this request thou doest gret folly / for thou desyrest
thy deth. I haue pyte of the / and therfore I counsell
the to returne backe.' 'Paynym,' quod Huon, 'I had 16
rather dye then to returne or⁴ I haue iusted with *thee*.'
then they went eche fro other to take theyr course, but
for all that euer Huon coude do, his horse wolde not
aunaunce forth / wherof Huon was sore dyspleased, and 20
sayd, 'A, very god and man / I desyre the to gyue
me y⁵ grace that I myght wyne this horse that this
paynyme doth ryde on.'⁶ When Huon saw that his
horse wolde nother⁷ forwarde nor backe warde / he set 24
his shelde agaynst his enemy / and Sorbryn came ryn-
nyng lyke the tempest, and with his spere strake in
Huons shelde such a stroke that the buckles nor any
thynges elles coude reyste the stroke / but the shelde 28
was perced through out / but the good harneys⁸ saued
Huon fro⁹ all hurtes, and he remoued no more for the
stroke then⁹ it had ben a strong walle / wherof yuorin
and all other had grete meruayle, & said one to another / 32
how they had neuer sene before so grete a stroke nor a
goodlyer reseyt therof without fallynge to the erthe.

¹ other. ² vnto. ³ to. ⁴ ere. ⁵ vppon.
⁶ go. ⁷ armour. ⁸ Fol. xlv. back, col. 2. ⁹ if.

- every man prayned gretely Huon that he helde hym
 selfe so fermely. 'By Mahounde,' quod yuoryn, 'our
 man is fyers and of gret hardynes. I wolde he were
 4 mounted nowe on¹ my hors.' And Huon, who had
 receyued the grete stroke, in grete yre cast downe his
 spere and toke his swerde with bothe his handes, &
 gaue ther with the paynym a grete stroke as he passed
 8 by hym a hie on¹ his helme / the stroke was so pusante
 that nother the helme nor coyffe of stele coude not²
 resyst the stroke / but that his heed was clouen to the
 sholdres, and so he fell downe deed in y^e felde / then
 12 Huon, who was quycke and lyght / toke the good horse
 Blanchardyn by the reyne & alyghted fro his owne
 horse, without fete in the styrop lept vp² vpon the
 paynmys horse, & lefte his owne in the felde. and
 16 when he sawe hym self on Blanchardyn / he³ dashed
 to him³ his spores to proue hym / when the horse felte
 the spores / he began to lepe & gambaud & galop as it
 had ben the thonder / ⁴the paynmys had meruayle that
 20 he had not fallen to the erthe / ⁵when he had well
 proued him and turned hym in and out / he thought he
 wolde not gyue hym for the valewe of a realme. then
 he cam to⁶ kyng yuoryn with .xx. gambaudes. 'By
 24 mahounde,' quod yuoryn, 'this varlet semeth rather
 sone to a kyng or prynce then to be a varlet to a myn-
 strell' / then he came to⁶ Huon and enbraced hym / &
 made hym grete feest⁷ / and the paynmys that were
 28 within Anferlerne with the admyrall Galaffer yssued out
 of the cyte / and whan Galaffer saw his nephew slayn,
 he rode about hym thre tymes and made a pyteous com-
⁸playnt, and sayde, 'A, ryght dere nephew, I may well
 32 complayne⁹ your youth / when I se you this¹⁰ pyteously
 slayne / certaynly yf I lyue longe your deth shall

and taking his
 own sword in
 both his hands,

cleaves Sorbryn's
 head to the
 shoulders.

Huon seizes his
 adversary's good
 horse
 Blanchardyn.

Ivoryn receives
 Huon well and
 makes for him a
 great feast.

The Admiral
 deplores the
 death of his
 nephew,

¹ vpon. ² omitted. ³⁻³ smoot him with. ⁴ and.

⁵ so.

⁶ vnto.

⁷ respecte. ⁸ Fol. xlv. col. 1.

⁹⁻⁹ by reason of.

¹⁰ thus.

derely be bought' / ¹he caused the deed body to be
 caryed in to the cyte with grete lamentacyons / ²then
 and leade his men on to battle. he & his men entred in to the batayle. there³ was
 grete slaughter made on both partes; but amonge all 4
 Huon fights with vigour, and does much havoc. other Huon dyd meruayles / he slewe and bette downe
 & tare of helmes & strake out braynes with the pomell
 of his swerd / he slewe and bette downe all that came
 within his stroke / his hye⁴ prowes was suche that no 8
 paynym durst abyde him, but fled as the shepe doth
 fro the wolues / he dyd so moche by vertue of his
 armes that within shorte space he brought all the⁵
 Through his prowess the Admiral is thoroughly worsted. enemyes to playne dyscomfytur / so that the admyrall 12
 Galaffer with moche payne fled and entred in to the
 cyte, ryght sorowfull for y^e losse that he had receyued
 that day / for the thyrd parte of his men were slayne
 in the batayl, and all by the valyauntnes of Huon, the 16
 whiche was so grete that kyng yuoryn and his barons
 stode styll to beholde his valyaunt dedes / and as Huon
 foughte he spyed out the paynym that had gyuen him
 his swerde / then he remembred the promys that he 20
 had made hym / then² he lyft vp his swerd & strake a⁶
 paynym ther with so that he claue his heed / to the
 brest & so⁷ fel downe dede / and Huon toke the
 paynyms horse & gaue the horse to hym that had 24
 Huon gives a horse to the paynim who had bestowed the sword upon him. gyuen hym the good swerde / and sayd, 'frende, take
 it⁸ in worth the gyfte of this horse for a rewarde for
 the good swerde ye gaue me' / 'syr,' quod the paynym,
 'I thanke you' / fynally,⁹ Huon dyd so moche that 28
 there was no paynym that durst abyde him / but fled
 and entred into the cyte of Anfalerne. then they
 closed their gates & lyfte vp theyr brydges / and kyng
 yuoryns men departed with the boty¹⁰ they had wonne. 32
 then with gret tryumphe Huon¹¹ was conuayed rydynge

¹ so. ² and. ³ where. ⁴ omitted. ⁵ his.
⁶ nother. ⁷ hee. ⁸ well. ⁹ In breefe. ¹⁰ that.
¹¹ Fol. xlv. col. 2.

cheke by cheke by kynge yuoryn, and so brought to Mombrant, where as they were receyued with gret ioy. and the admyral Galaffer was entred in to Anferlerne in grete sorow for Sorbryn his nephew, who was deed, & also for his men that he hadde lost in batayle / and when he was vnarmed he caused his nephew to be buried with sore wepynges and lamentacyons. Now let vs leue spekyng of them ¹tyll we returne therto agayne.¹

Huon is treated with great honour.

In deep sorrow the Admiral buries his nephew.

¶ How Huon was set² in grete honoure, and satte at the table with kynge yuoryn of Mombrant. Capitulo .lvi.

WHen yuoryn was entred into Mombrant he wente and vnarmed hym³ / his doughter came to⁴ hym to make him feest⁵ / and when he sawe his doughter / he kyssyd her and sayd, 'Dere doughter / thou wert mated in a good houre by the mynstralles varlet / for at⁶ y^e day of batayle that we haue had agaynst the admyrall Galafer, who⁷ was dyscomfyted by the only prowes of this varlet by whom thou were mated ; thankyd be my god Mahound / for by him I haue ouercome myn enmyes / & be syde that, he fought hande to hande agaynst sorbryn, nephew to the Admyrall Galaffer / & he slewe hym / but yf I maye lyue one yere, the grete seruyce that he hathe done to⁴ me shall be euen ryght well rewarded' / 'father,' quod the lady, 'ye are bounde so to do' / then kynge yuoryn went vp in to his palayes, and his doughter with him, & Huon / went to y^e lodyng where as y^e mynstrell was lodged / then⁸ he vnarmed him and went with his

Ivoryn tells his daughter of Huon's valorous deeds.

¹⁻¹ vntill wee haue occasion to returne vnto them againe.

² hadde. ³ and. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ reuerence.

⁶ in. ⁷ he. ⁸ where.

Ivoryn invites
Huon to sit at
his table with
him,

and offers him all
his valuables,

and anything
further that he
may desire.

After dinner

Mouflet plays
music before the
King.

The minstrel still
addresses Huon
as his servant,
to the amusement
of the court.

maister ¹to the palayes / ²when kynge yuoryn sawe
them, the kyng auansed forth and toke Huon by the
hande, & sayd / 'frende, ye shall go with me and syt at
my table / for I can not do you to moche honoure for 4
y^e good seruyce *that* ye haue done³ me. I habandon
to³ you all my house to do therin at your pleasure / take
all my golde and syluer & iewelless, & gyue therof at
your pleasure / I ordeyn & wyll that all that ye 8
communde shal be done; all that is here I habandon
to³ you / ye, in y^e ladys chambres take there your
pleasure as ye lyst / & when I go out ye shall go with
me.' 'syr,' quod Huon, 'of the grete honour that ye 12
haue done to me I thanke you' / then they sat downe
at the table / & when they had denyd, the kynge and
Huon satte togyder on⁴ the ryche carpettes / then
Mouflet the mynstrell apoynted⁵ his vyall, and played 16
so melodyously that the paynyms that herde him had
grete meruayle therof / for the vyall made so swete a
swonde / that it semed to be the mermaydes of the
see / kynge yuoryn & all his lordes had so gret ioye 20
that it semed to³ them that they were in the glory
of paradyce, so that there was no paynyme but *that*
gaue hym gownes & mantelles & other iewelless. the
mynstrell saw Huon syt by the kyng, &⁶ sayd / 'frende, 24
yesterday I was your mayster, & now I am⁷ your
mynstrell / I thynke now ye haue lytell care for me /
yet I praye you come to⁸ me & gather togyder these
clothes, & put them in my male as ye haue done or⁸ 28
this' / when the kynge and his lordes herd that they
began to laughe. Now let us leue spekyng of them /
& speke⁹ of y^e olde Gerames.

¹ Fol. xlii. back, col. 1. ² but. ³ vnto. ⁴ vppon.
⁵ opened. ⁶ hee. ⁷ becoma. ⁸ ere.
⁹ say somewhat.

¶ How the olde Gerames aryued at Anfa-
lerne by fortune, and the admyrall Galaffer
retayned hym to mayntayn his warre / and
4 how the fayre Esclaramonde spake with
hym. Cap. .lvii.



8 E haue herd here before y^e adventures
that hath fallen to Huon, & how y^e
olde Gerames & .xiii. with him departed
& lefte Huon by cause he wolde not
byleue them, wherby fell to hym suche

adventures as ye haue² herde, & how Gerames & his
12 companyons that were in y^e lytel shyp sayled forth in
the tempest without³ knowlege what was become of
Huon / but they thought rather he had ben deed then
alyue / and so within a moneth⁴ they were dryuen
16 by another tempest to the porte of Anfalerne / when
Gerames sawe how they were aryued there, he sayd to
his company / 'syrs, we be not aryued at a good porte /
in this cyte dwelleth a paynym kynge who byleueth
20 ⁵nother in god nor in good saynt⁵ / a more fyers
paynyme can not be founde fro hens to the rede see ;
he is called the admyrall Galaffer ; without god haue
pyte of vs I can not se but we are lyke to dye / & we
24 can not returne back' / y^e same tyme the admyrall
Galaffer was rysen fro dyner, & loked out at a wyndow
& behelde the see syde / & than he perceyued the
lytell shyp where Gerames & his company were in /
28 when he saw it he went downe with som of his men,
desyrynge to knowe what they were that ther ariued /
then he aproched to y^e shyp & said / 'syrs, what men
be you that are thus aryued at my porte ?' / 'sir,' quod
32 Gerames, 'we be frenchmen, pylgrymes, & are goyng to
offre at y^e holy sepulcre, for⁶ fortune of y^e se hath

Gerames and his
companions in
their little boat
are driven to the
port of Anfalerne.

Gerames fears
that the Admiral
will use them ill.

The Admiral
comes down from
his palace,
and meeting
the knights,
inquires whence
they have come.

Gerames tells
their misfortune.

¹ Fol. xlv. back, col. 2. ² since. ³ any. ⁴ after.
⁵⁻⁶ not in our god. ⁶ the.

The Admiral
receives them
kindly,

speaks to them of
King Ivoryn's
hostility.

Gerames promises
to fight for him
if his cause be
just.

The Admiral
tells him of
Esclaramonde's
arrival there,

and how King
Ivoryn seeks her
life,

and how he
himself has
wedded her,

brought vs hyder / & therfore, syr, yf there be ony
trybute *that* we ought to paye, we are redy to do your
pleasir' / 'syr, quod y^e admyrall, 'haue no dout
that by me or ony of min ye shal haue oni displeasur / 4
for yf ye wyll abyde *with* me ye are wel aryued' /
'sir,' quod Gerames, 'yf it may¹ please you,² shew vs
the cause why' / 'sir,'³ quod the admyrall, 'I shall shewe
you / trewe it is here nere me dwelleth kyng yuoryn of 8
Mombrant,⁵ who maketh⁶ me grete warre; he sleeth my
men & dystroyeth my countre, wherof I haue grete
sorowe in my hert' / 'sir,' quod Gerames, 'yf your
quarell be iust & ryghtfull we shall be all redy to ayde 12
you truly / for, sir, *without* your quarell be good
we wyll not abyde *with* you.' 'syr,' quod the
admyrall, 'I shall shewe you the trouth / so it was on⁶
a day I stode in a wyndowe & loked downe to y^e see 16
syde, as I dyd now when ye aryued at this porte /
& then I saw a shyp comynge & toke ancre there as ye
be now / & in the shyp there was a damsell & x
maryners / who thought to haue ledde her to⁷ kyng 20
yuoryn of Mombrant; I can not tel where they had
taken her / &⁸ she was doughter to the admyral
Gaudys / *that* Mahound take his soule / ⁹I know⁹ for
certain *that* yf kyng yuoryn myght haue the damsell / 24
he wolde a¹⁰ brent¹¹ her / by cause it hath ben shewed
him that she was the cause of the deth of her father y^e
Admyral Gaudys / who was broder to yuoryn / & so
he is vnkle to the damsell / and when I was aduertysed 28
that the .x. maryners wolde haue delyuered her in to
the handes of her vnkle yuoryn / I toke her fro them &
slew them all by cause they wold not delyuer her ¹²with
fayrnes /¹² & thus I haue wedded the damsel / & ¹³32

¹⁻¹ I would it might. ² to. ³ Why. ⁴ that.
⁵ Fol. xlvii. col. 1. ⁶ vpon. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ but.
⁹⁻⁹ and I knewe. ¹⁰ haue. ¹¹ burnt.
¹²⁻¹² to me with entreatie. ¹³ omitted.

when yuoryn herd this he made me warre / & was here
 before my cite *with* al his pusanee, & hath slayn my
 men / & led awaye all my bestes & prouysyon, & hath
 4 brent¹ & dystroyed my countre / & euery day he cometh
 & ouer ryn all y^e countre, & he hath *with* him a yong
 man / I know not of what countre he is of / &² *this* and how Sorbryn
 last day he slew a nephew of myn whom I ryght derely has been slain
 8 loued,³ who was called Sorbrin / he was sone to my by Ivoryn's
 sister / for whom I haue suche sorow at my hert *that* champion.
 it can not be apeased / & he hath led away his horse
 called Blanchardyn, the whiche is the best horse in x
 12 realmes / his lyke is not in al y^e world; wherfore
 I desyre you, as I maye deserue your *seruyse*, to abyde
 with me / & to do so moch ⁴*that* I myght haue y^e sayd
 yong man taken prisoner & the hors agayn to me
 16 restored / & yf ye can this do I shall so rewarde you
that y^e shall alwayes be ryche, & all tho⁵ in your
 company' / 'sir,' quod Gerames / 'yf he come any Gerames offers to
 more hyder, & that ye shew me him / I shall do my aid the Admiral
 20 payn⁶ to bryng him & y^e hors also to⁷ you' / 'frende,' in his war with
 quod the admyrall, 'yf ye wyl shew me this curteyse I the King.
 shal habandon all my realme to be at your pleasure &
 commaundement' / *with* these wordes the olde Gerames
 24 yssued out of y^e shyp & all his company / & entred in Gerames and his
 to y^e cyte of Anfalerne *with* the admyral Galafer⁸ / company enter
 when they came to the palayes Gerames sayd / 'sir, I the city.
 & my company requyre you to shew vs the damsell for Gerames asks to
 28 whose sake ye maynten this warre.' 'frende,' quod the see Esclaramonde.
 admyrall, 'yf ye were a yonge man I wolde not shewe
 her to⁷ you / but I se wel ye be old & auneynt /
 wherfore no yonge lady wyl set ony thyng by you' /
 32 then y^e admyral toke Gerames by y^e hande & led him
 in to the chambre where as Esclaramonde was / as sone The damsel
 as the lady saw Gerames she knew him, wherwith she recognizes the
 old man,

¹ burnt. ² but. ³ and. ⁴ Fol. xlvii. col. 2.
⁵ those. ⁶ best. ⁷ vnto.

and cries aloud.

The Admiral
inquires in vain
why Esclaramonde
is affected
at the sight of
him,

but he leaves the
two together.

Esclaramonde
asks how
Gerames came to
Anfalame.

Gerames tells her,
and inquires for
Huon.

began to chaunge coloure, & fel downe in a sowne in the
chambre, makyng a grete crye¹ / when y^e admyral
Galaffer saw *that* he was ryght sorowful, & sayd /
'fayre lady, why do ye make *this* sorow? are ye troubled 4
for² y^e syght of this olde man *that* I haue brought
hyder?' / 'nay, surely, *sir*,' quod she / 'it is for a
colyke *that* hath taken me in the ryght syde, wher by
I haue often tymes grete payn³ / but, syr, yf it were 8
your pleasir I wolde gladly speke *with* this frenche
knyght / for customably they know many thynges / &
peraenture he may shew me such thinges as shalbe for
my helth / for frenchemen are ryght subtyl⁴ in gyyung 12
of good counsell' / 'dame,'⁵ quod y^e admiral, 'it pleaseth
me well *that* ye speke *with* him secretly' / then y^e
lady called Gerames, & sayd / 'frende, I pray *thee* gyue
me some good counsel *that* I may be eased of the payne 16
that I endure' / 'dame,'⁵ quod Gerames / 'for the
honoure of you & of the ⁶admyrall *that* is here present,
I shall ayde you in suche wyse *that* ye shall be eased
of the payne *that* ye endure' / then Gerames, who was 20
subtyl, wel perceyued the mynde of the lady / then he
aproched nere to⁷ her & ⁸sat downe togyder on a couche
therby / 'Gerames,' quod the lady, 'I praye you what
aduenture hath brought you hyther?' / 'dame,'⁵ quod 24
he, 'we be come hyther by reason of tempest of the
see / but, dame,'⁹ quod he, 'I pray you what is become
of Huon?' / 'by my fayth,' quod she, 'I byleue he is
deed / for when ye departed fro vs, such a meruaylous 28
tempest rose on the see *that* all *that* were in our shyp
were perysshed, & the shyp drowned & broken in small
peces, excepte Huon & I / we saued vs on a table
of wode, wherupon we aryued in an yle *that* was nere 32
vs / & when we were on the lande, there cam to⁷ vs

¹ outcrie.

⁵ Madame.

² at.

⁶ Fol. xlvii. back, col. 1.

⁸ they.

³ annoyance.

⁹ Ladie.

⁴ discreet.

⁷ vnto.

- .x. maryners, & toke me fro thens, & left Huon there
 blyndfelde, &¹ handes & fete faste bounde, so that he
 had no power to releue himselfe; & these .x. maryners
 4 brought me hyder, & the admyral Galaffier hath slayn
 them all / therefore I thynke surely *that* Huon is
 deed; Iesu haue mercy on his ²soule² / and thus I am
 here with this admyrall, who hath assured me to wedde
 8 me / but as yet he neuer medled with me bodely / but
 I haue made him to byleue that I made a vowe to
 Mahounde, for .ii. yere to come³ no man shold haue
 parte⁴ of my body, & that is for the loue of Huon,
 12 whom I can not forgette. the admyral hath beleued
 me / ⁵for as long as I lyue I shal neuer forgete Huon, &
 shal alwayes,⁶ to dye in y^e payne,⁷ kepe me fro the
 bodely company of ony man lyunge / a, syr Gerames!
 16 yf ye myght do so moche that I might scape fro hens
 with you / ye shold do me a grete curteyse / for yf I
 myghte scape fro hens, & come in to a crysten realme, I
 wolde yelde my selfe in to some abbey of nonnes, to y^e
 20 entent *that* the resydew of my lyfe I myght pray for the
 soule of my louer ⁸Huon' / 'dame,'⁹ quod Gerames, 'be
 not dysmayed, for yf I can scape fro hens, what so euer
 come¹⁰ ther of, I shall cary you *with* me' / then the
 24 admyral came to¹¹ them & sayd / 'frende, ye hold ouer
 longe talkyng *with* the damsell / come a way! ye haue
 taryed there longe ynow' / then Gerames departed fro
 Esclaramonde, straynyng her by the hande / & the
 28 admyrall Galaffier toke Gerames by y^e arme / & brought
 him in to y^e hal to supper / & after supper they
 comoned of the feates of y^e warre. Nowe let vs leue
 spekyng of them / & ¹²speke of¹² kyng yuoryn ot
 32 mombrant, & of¹³ Huon who was *with* him.

Esclaramonde
says that she be-
lieues him dead,

but that she will
remain faithful
to him.

She desires to
enter a convent.

The Admiral calls
on Gerames to
close his
interview with
Esclaramonde.

The Admiral
receives Gerames
at dinner.

¹ his. ²⁻³ vpon him. ³ that. ⁴ vse. ⁵ and.
⁶ be ready. ⁷ to. ⁸ Fol. xlvii. back, col. 2.
⁹ Madam. ¹⁰ to me. ¹¹ vnto. ¹²⁻¹³ returne to.
¹³ noble.

¶ How kyng yuoryn cam agayne before Anfalerne, & how Gerames and Huon fought togyder, & at last they knewe eche other, & how they entred in to Anfalerne & 4 closed¹ the admyrall without. Cap. .lviii.



Huon advises
Ivoryn to attack
Anfalerne a
second time.

Mounted on
Blanchardyn,
Huon sets out.

Ivoryn's daughter
admires his
beauty from her
window.

Ow sheweth y^e story² that a³ .ii. dayes after that kyng yuoryn had made his cours before Anfalerne / 8 then Huon came to yuoryn and sayde : 'Syr, cause your men too be armed, & let vs go vysyte the Admyrall ⁴Galaffer / for a man that is in warre ought neuer to lye styll tyll he 12 hathe brought his enemy to vttraunce⁵ / for it semeth that he setteth but lytell by you when he kepeth styll your nece agaynst your wyl, ⁶& is⁶ your subiecte, &⁷ holdeth his landes of you' / 'frende,' quod yuoryn, 16 'ye say truely / I shall do by your counsell.' then he made to be cryed through the cyte, that euery man sholde make him redy to go with y^e kyng before Anfalerne / &⁸ Huon, who was desyrous to haue batayle, 20 armed him, & toke blanchardyn, his good horse, &⁸ mounted on hym without ony styrop, & toke a grete spere in his hande with a good sharpe hede / &⁹ y^e same tyme as Huon was in the palayes, yuoryns doughter 24 was lenynge in a wyndowe in her chambre, accompanied with dyuers ladyes & damselles / she behelde Huon, & she sayd / 'by Mahounde, it is ¹⁰goodly¹⁰ to behold yonder yong man syttyng on y^e hors blanchardyne / 28 ryght¹¹ well¹² becometh hym⁸ his armure / a goodlyer man can not be founde, nor a more hardy / for y^e last day he slew Sorbyn, the ¹³moost valyant¹³ knyght in all

¹ shut. ² Historie. ³ aboute. ⁴ Fol. xlviij. col. 1.
⁵ vtter ruin. ⁶⁻⁸ hee being. ⁷ one that. ⁸ omitted.
⁹ Now. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ a goodly sight. ¹¹ how. ¹² he.
¹³⁻¹³ valiantest.

- pagany, & also wan his good hors / but yet I am dys-
 pleased with him in¹ *that* when he played with me at
 the chesse / he was not so hardy, ones² to embrace nor³
 4 kysse me; yf he had, I wolde haue loued him in suche
 wyse that yf he had requyred of me 'ony thyng elles,⁴
 I wolde not a⁵ refused him / though my fader had
 sworne the contrary a C tymes' / thus the ladyes &
 8 damselles deuysed togyder of⁶ Huon, who⁷ set lytell
 therby / thus kyng yuoryn & his men yssued out of y⁸
 cyte of Mombrant, & cam in⁷ to y⁸ felde, & then rode
 forth toward Anfalerne, & at the last cam before the
 12 gates of the cyte, & there ordred them in batayle⁸ / &
 Huon, who had grete desyre too attayne to good⁷
 renowne, cam to the gate with his spere in his hande,
 & cryed a hye⁹ to them *that* were on the walles, & sayde,
 16 'where is Galaiffer your lorde? go & shew him *that* he
 come¹⁰ & iust agaynst him *that* hath slayne his nephew,
 & *that* I wyl serue him in lykwyse¹¹ if I may mete
 with him in batayle, or elles he shall delyuer to me y⁸
 20 fayre Esclaramonde' / Galaiffer was nere by, & herd
 what Huon sayd, & knew wel it was he, by reson of the
 hors blanchardyn, wherof¹² his hert¹² was ryght sorow-
 full / and sayd to Gerames / 'frende, I shall shew you
 24 here he *that* hath done me all this yll / now I shal se yf
 ye wyll kepe promys with me.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames,
 'take no care / for by y⁸ fayth *that* I owe to god / I
 shall rendre to you bothe the hors & the man / to do
 28 with them at your pleaser.' then Gerames yssued out
 clene¹³ armed, well horsed, & toke a good spere in his
 hande / he was a goodly knyght of his age, pusant of
 body, and in his tyme gretely doughted¹⁴ / & when he
 32 was on hys hors, he strecched himself in the saddle in
 suche wyse *that* his styropes stretched out a long a⁷

King Ivoryn
arrives with his
army before
Anfalerne.

Huon challenges
the Admiral to
avenge his
nephew's death.

Gerames offers to
fight the knight
in the Admiral's
behalf,

and arms himself
for fight.

¹ for. ² as once. ³ and. ⁴⁻⁴ my loue. ⁵ haue.

⁶ but. ⁷ omitted. ⁸ array. ⁹ slowd.

¹⁰ Fol. xlviii. col. 2. ¹¹ like sorte. ¹²⁻¹² he. ¹³ all.

¹⁴ redoubted.

He rides on in
front of the
Admiral's men.

Huon rushes
upon him,

and they strike
each other with
great violence.

Gerames forces
Huon to kneel
upon the ground,
and to petition for
grace.

Huon does not
recognize his old
friend,

handful or more ; he was gretly praised of the painims
that saw him / ¹then y^e admyral Galaffer commaunded
euery man to be armed, & he himself was armed rychely ;
then y^e gate was opened / & Gerames was y^e fyrst *that* ⁴
ysued out with his company / when he was without
y^e cyte, he strake y^e hors with the ²spores so *that* he was
a grete space before all his company / with his spere in
his hande & sheld about his necke, & his whyte berd ⁸
hangyng downe on his brest vnder his helme, & ³when
Huon, on y^e other part, saw Gerames coming, he spored
blanchardyn, & cam agynst Gerames / and so they met
togyder without ony worde spekyng, & strake eche ¹²
other on ther sheldes so *that* al was broken ; but their
harnes ⁴was ⁵good, so *that* they toke none yll, ⁶but theyr
spers brake to their handes, ⁷so *that* ⁷the sheuers flew vp
in to the ayre / & the strokes was so rude *that* both ¹⁶
knyghtes & horses fel to y^e erth / but ⁸then quykly ⁸
they arose, ⁹& gaue ech other grete strokes / Gerames,
who was experte in dedes of armes, toke his swe[r]de
with both his handes, and gaue Huon suche a stroke ¹⁰on ²⁰
the helme, that perforce he was fayne to set one of his
knees to the erthe / the stroke was so heuy / and yf it
had not ben by the grace of god, he had ben slayne /
Huon was so astonyed with y^e stroke that he had moche ²⁴
a do to ¹¹releue, and ¹¹sayd, 'a, good lorde, socoure me,
& ¹²gyue me grace ¹²that, or ¹³I dye, I may se y^e fayre
Esclaramonde.' these wordes he spake openly / for ¹⁴he
had thought *that* Gerames vnderstode hym not, ¹⁴for ²⁸
lytel ¹⁵he thought that it had ben Gerames that fought
with hym / then he came to Gerames with his swerde
in his hande, to ¹⁶be ¹⁶reuenged / for he neuer receyued

¹ and. ² his. ³ Nowe. ⁴ armour. ⁵ so.

⁶ hurt. ⁷⁻⁷ and. ⁸⁻⁸ omitted. ⁹ againe.

¹⁰ Fol. xlviij, back, col. 1. ¹¹⁻¹¹ recouer, but.

¹²⁻¹² graunt me. ¹³ before.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ he thought that Gerames had not vnderstood him.

¹⁵ he *before* lytel. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ haue been.

- before, suche a stroke as Gerames had gyuen hym. But Gerames vnderstode Huon by his wordes, & knewe hym / & ther with caste downe his swerde to the erth, & had suche sorowe that he coude¹ speke no² worde / when Huon sawe that, he meruayled gretely why he caste his swerde to the erth / for³ Huon then wold not touch hym / but sayd, 'paynym, what is thy mynde to do? wylt thou haue peace, or elles fyght with me?' / 'a, syr,' quod Gerames, 'come forth, & stryke of my hede / for well I haue deserued it, syn⁴ that I haue stryken you so rudely; but I knewe you not / wherof I am⁵ sorye' /
- 12 when Huon herd him speke, anone he knew well that it was Gerames, wherof he had grete ioye in his hert for fyndyng of hym. the paynims that regarded them had grete meruayle what thyng y^e two champyons
- 16 ment or thought to do / 'syr,' quod Gerames, 'it behoueth vs shortly to determyne oure besynes / for I se on all partes paynims assemble togyder to be-holde vs / I shall shew you what is best for vs .ii. to do / lepe⁶ on your horse & I shall lepe on myne / then I shall take you and lede you parforce, as my prysoner, to the cyte of Anfalerne / and there shall ye se your louer Esclaramonde, who wold⁷ haue grete ioye with your comyng,
- 24 and she wyll tell you⁸ of her⁸ newes.' 'frende,' quod Huon / 'I shall do as ye deuysel' / then they lepte on theyr horses, & Gerames cam to Huon & layd handes on him, as though he toke hym prysoner / & so led
- 28 him towarde y^e cyte of Anfalerne, & his company folowed hym / & when kynge yuoryn sawe how Gerames had lede a-way Huon as his prysoner, he began to cry, & sayd, 'on forth, ye sarazyns / how suffre you
- 32 this yonge man to be lede away as a prysoner to the cyte of Anfalerne? / I shall neuer haue ioye at my hert yf ye suffre him thus to be led awaye' / then y^e sarazyns

but Gerames knows him, and casts his sword away.

Huon inquires the reason of this conduct,

and Gerames reveals himself.

They cannot conceal their joy. The paynims wonder at their inaction.

Gerames proposes that Huon shall follow him into Anfalerne to see Esclaramonde.

The old man lays hand on him as if he were his prisoner.

Ivoryn urges his men to rescue Huon,

¹ not. ² a. ³ and. ⁴ seeing. ⁵ very. ⁶ you vp.
⁷ will. ⁸⁻⁸ other. ⁹ Fol. xlvi. back, col 2.

but Gerames
leads him before
the Admiral,
who bids him put
him in prison.

When Gerames
and Huon are
within the city,
they and their
company of
French knights
close the gates,
and, in the
absence of the
army in the
field,

kill all the old
men and the
women and the
children.
The town falls
into their hands.

Huon visits
Esclaramonde.

She welcomes
him right
joyfully.

dashed in to the prese to haue rescued Huon / & on the
other parte the Admyrall Galaffer came & met Gerames
& Huon; & then Gerames sayd to hym, 'syr, go & fyght
with your enemyes; beholde here y^e yong man that ⁴
slewe your nephew Sorbryn! I shall led him into y^e cyte,
& set hym in sure pryson;¹ then I shall shortly returne
agayne to you to fyght agaynst kynge Iuoryn' / 'frende,'
quod Galaffer, 'I requyre you so do; & as soone as you ⁸
haue set hym in pryson, returne agayne.' Gerames
departed fro the Admyrall, and wente to the cyte with
Huon and his .xiii. companyons with hym / when they
were entred in to the Cyte, they lyfted vp the brydges ¹²
and closed the gates / in the cyte there was no men of
warre;² all were in the felde with the Admyrall agaynste
³ Yuoryn; there were none but women and ⁴ chyl dren &
olde folkes / & whan *that* Gerames & Huon saw how ¹⁶
they were strong ynough for them in the cyte / they
went in to the stretes & cryed 'saynt Denys,' & slewe all
they met, as well olde men as women & chyl dren / so
that *with*in a shorte space they had clene wonne the ²⁰
towne / many paynyns fled & lept downe⁴ in to the
dykes, & brake neckes, armes, and legges / then they
went in to the palays, and there they founde the fayre
Esclaramond. and whan Huon saw her, he dyd of his ²⁴
helme / & ran & embraced her, & whan the lady ⁵ sawe
that it was Huon / the ioy that she had was so grete
that it was meruayle to se it / ther was suche ioy made⁴
at there metyng that it can not be recountyd / Huon ²⁸
and y^e lady enbrasyd and kyssyd other many tymys /
and she sayd / 'A, Huon! ye be ryght hertely welcome /
for I went⁶ I sholde neuer haue sene you.'⁷ 'Lady,'
quod Huon, 'I ought greatly to loue & to cherysshe ³²
you, & I am ryght ioyfull that it hath pleasyd ⁸ our
lorde Iesu Cryst⁸ *that* I haue nowe founde you in good

¹ and. ² for. ³ king. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ Fol. xlix. col. 1. ⁶ thought. ⁷ more. ⁸⁻⁸ God.

- helth and prosperye / for a more trewer¹ than ye be,
 there is none lyuyng² / whan all the company had
 made there salutasions one to an nother, they went to
 4 dyner, & were rychely serued / for there was greate
 plentye in y^e cyte / and the sarazyns were without the
 cyte, where as they fought and slew eche other / there
 was suche sleying on bothe partes that the feldes were
 8 coueryd with deed men and sore woundyd ; manye a
 horse ranne aboute the felde, & there maysters lyenge
 deed / these two kynges fought one agaynst the other,
 pusaunce agaynst pusaunce / ²two sarazyns that were
 12 escapid out of the cyte of Anfalerne came to the
 admyrall Galaffer, and sayd / ' A, syr, your cytye is
 loste by the frenchemen who be enteryd in to it ; there
 is nother man nor woman ³but that is³ slayne / the
 16 olde knyght that cam to you & his .xiii. companyons
 be all seruauntes to y^e yong man that slewe your
 neuwe / whan the two frenchemen fought one with
 an nother / they toke to-gether aquyntaunce, and they
 20 be all subgettes to the yonge man that was with kyng
 Iuoryn / and it is he that slew the admyrall Gaudys /
 and dyscomfytyd the Gyaunt Agrapart / we knewe
 hym well whan he enteryd in to the cytye / we wolde
 24 haue shewyd you therof / but we durst not tyll⁴ ye
 were returnyd fro the batayle. Now they be in your
 palays, ⁵where as it please⁵ them / for there is abyden⁶
 nother ⁷man / woman⁶ nor chylde⁸ / but all be slayne
 28 except a⁹ .xxx. ladyes & damselles who were with her
 that sholde be your wyfe / & they be put out of the
 cyte, ye may se them syttyng without the gate petously
 wepyng⁹ / whan the Admyrall Galaffer herd that, he
 32 was heuye and sorowfull, and sayd to his men that
 were aboute hym, ' Syrs, I praye you hastely gyue me

The Frenchmen
dine together.

Outside the city
walls the battle
rages between the
two Saracen
armies.

News is brought
the Admiral of
the capture of his
city.

and of Huon's
previous
adventures at
Babylon.

All within the
town are slain
except the ladies
in waiting on
Reclaramonde.

¹ man. ² and. ³⁻³ therein, but they are all.

⁴ vntill. ⁵⁻⁵ which pleaseth. ⁶ omitted.

⁷ Fol. xlix. col. 2. ⁸ liuing. ⁹ some.

The Admiral is
advised to submit
to King Ivoryn.

He offers his
sword to the
King,

and tells him of
his evil plight.

sum counsell what I shal do, for it is nedfull.' 'Syr,'
quod they, 'it is of necessity that ye goo to kyng
Iuoryn, and knele downe at his fote, and pray hym to
haue mercy of ¹ you / other counsell as nowe we can not ⁴
gyue you.' 'Syr,' quod Galafer, 'I shall do as ye haue
sayd' / than the Admyrall Galafer, with his sworde in
his hande, went throw the prease and cam to kyng
Iuoryn, and alyghtyd fro his horse, & knelyd downe ⁸
before ²kyng Iuoryn ² / and sayd, 'syr kyng, I yeld
to you my sworde / with the whiche, yf you please,
stryke of my hede, for well I haue dyseruyd it. But,
syr, I pray you, for y^e loue of Mahounde, haue mercy of ¹²
me / I offer to make you ³ amendes as you and your
lordes shall iuge / so that ye wyl ayde me to take the
frenchemen that be in my cytye, & hath taken a-way
my wyfe, your nece Esclaramonde / syr, the yonge man ¹⁶
that ye so well louyd, who cam but lat to your courte
with a mynstrell, is the same frencheman that slew
your brother the admyrall Gaudys / this tydynges I
haue herd by .ii. messengers that knew hym in your ²⁰
courte / & now ⁴ with hym his ⁵ .xiii. other frenchemen
whom I had reteynyd with me to maynteyn my warre,
but they be all subgetes to the yonge man / and now
all .xiii. be in my palayes, & my wyfe with them.' ²⁴



¶ Howe Iuoryn causyd Mouffet the old myn-
strell to be brought to the gybet to haue
been hangyd / & ⁶howe he was rescuwyd by
Huon. Capitulo .lix. ²⁸

¹ vpon. ²⁻² him. ³ such. ⁴ there are.
⁵ omitted. ⁶ Fol. xlix. back, col. 1.



Uoryn herde Galaffer, he¹ sayd / 'Alas!
 I was vnhappye *that* I knew not *that*²
 this yong man³ had slayne my brother :
 yf I had, it sholde derely haue ben
 bought. Therefore, syr Galaffer, cause
 your men to withdraw fro the batayle,
 and I shall withdraw myn, and I shall know of my
 8 barons what counsell they wyll gyue me.' Than both
 partes blew the retrayte / than¹ kynge Iuoryn sayd to
 his lordes, 'Syr, what counsell wyl ye geue me as
 touchyng y^e admyrall Galaffer?' / 'sir,' quod they,
 12 'geue hym agayne his londes / syn he axeth mercy /
 yf he hath done yll, he offeryth to make amendes' /
 than Iuoryn called Galaffer, & sayd, 'sir admyrall, I
 render agayne to you all your londes, & pardon you of
 16 all myn yll wyll / & besyde *that*, I shall helpe you to
 destroy the frenchemen that are in your cyte of Anfa-
 lerne' / than Galaffer knelyd downe, & thankyd kynge
 Iuoryn / for *that* courtesye *that* he shewyd him &
 20 offeryd to do / and so wolde haue kyssyd his fete / but
 Iuoryn wold not suffre hym, but lyft hym vp / Thus
 these two kynges agreed together / and sware to gether
 to haue the deth of Huon & his knyghtes / Than
 24 Huon & his company abandonyd vp the cyte of Anfa-
 lerne, by cause he had so few men to kepe it / & so
 kept y^e castell, y^e whiche was stronge ynow. standyng
 on a rocke on the see syde, it was⁴ inpreynnable so it
 28 were well vytellyd / at the corner of the castell there
 was a strong towre, & vnderneath it was the porte
 where as shyppes cam to theyr ancre / whan Iuoryn &
 Galaffer saw that the towne was gyuen vp by the
 32 frenchemen / they enteryd in to it with all theyr great
 puyssaunce / & logyd aboute in the towne / but in
 takyng of theyr lodgynges, Huon & Gerames and such

Ivoryn orders the
 battle to cease,
 and both the
 armies to retreat.

He promises to
 restore to the
 Admiral all his
 lands,
 and to aid him
 against the
 Frenchmen.

Huon and his
 knights abandon
 the city and
 retire to the
 castle.

Ivoryn and the
 Admiral enter the
 city with their
 forces.

¹ and.

² omitted.

³ that.

⁴ indeede.

Huon's men
shoot darts at the
Saracens.

The Kings erect a
gibbet before the
castle.

Iuoryn reproaches
Mouflet with
bringing Huon
to his court,

and orders him to
be hanged.

The minstrel
pleads in vain
that he knew not
who Huon might
be.

He is led to the
gallows,

and calls on
Huon to protect
him.

as ¹were with them shot out dartes & quarelles² in
suche wyse / that there was not so hardy a paynym
that durst pere before the castell. yf he dyd, he was
slayne or hurte / whan Iuoryn & Galaffer saw y^e 4
deelynge of the frenchemen / they raysyd vp a gybet
before the castell / therby to make y^e frenchemen
afrayed / ³than they toke Mouflet y^e mynstrell, & bound
his handes behynde hym so sore *that* the blode cam out 8
at the nayles / than they hangyd his vyall aboute his
necke / & than he was brought before Iuoryn, who
sayde to hym, 'A, *thou* false traytore! yll hast thou
remembred the goodness *that* my brother Gaudys hath 12
done to the / whan *that*⁴ he that slewe hym, thou hast
brought in to my court, therby to do me dyspyte. But
I shall nother ete nor drynke tyll thou hast thy dysert,
& that is, to be hangyd.' 'A, syr!' quod Mouflet, 16
'Neuer in all my lyfe I haue done or thought any
treason / nor ⁵I know⁵ not that / that I brought to your
court hym *that* slew your brother the admyrall Gaudys,
who was my lord & mayster / therefore, *sir*, grete synne 20
it were for you to put me to deth for *that* I am not
gyilty of.' 'Thou lvest, false traytour,' quod Iuoryn /
& so commaundyd a .xxx. men to lede hym to y^e
galows / & whan they were com theder, they causyd 24
the mynstrell to mount vp on y^e ladder / the frenche-
men in y^e castell had great meruayle who it sholde be
that they wold hang vp there / ³whan the minstrell was
aboue on the ladder / he tournyd hym towardes y^e 28
castell, & cryed with an hye voyce, 'A, Huon! how wyll
ye suffer me here to dye / yet remembre the goodnes
that I haue done to you / & of ⁴y^e courtesye *that* I dyd
whan ye came all naked. I gaue you than clothynge 32
& mete & drynke / & I abandonyd to you all *that* I
had / yll it hath ben employed without ye rewarde me

¹ Fol. xlix. back, col. 2.

⁴ omitted.

² quarrelled.

³ and.

⁵⁻⁵ knew.

better' / whan Huon herd y^e mynstrell, he knew well
that it was Mouflet who had been his mayster / than
 he sayd to his company / 'syrs, ¹I requyre you arme
 4 you quykely / for the paynymys here without hath
 reryd vp a gybet, wheron they wyll hange a mynstrell
 who hath done me great ²good and ²pleasure. I wolde
 be ryght sory yf he sholde haue any yll' / than
 8 Gerames and all his companyons made them redy, and
 issued out of the castell with Huon by a secret
 posterne / so that they³ were aboute y^e gybet were not
 ware of them tyll Huon & his company was amonge
 12 them. Huon ranne at hym that sholde haue hangyd
 the mynstrell, & strake hym with his spere clene throwe,
 & so⁴ fell downe deed / and than Huon tooke downe the
 mynstrell, and made hym to fly away to the posterne /
 16 and his vyall about his necke. he that had sene hym
 flye a-way coude not a⁵ kept hym selfe fro lawghynge,
 for he ranne so fast that he semyd to be no olde man /
 but rather of the age of .xxx. yere. and Huon and
 20 Gerames and his company slew and bet downe all the
 .xxx. paynymys, so that none scapyd the deth / than⁶
 kynge Iuoryn and Galaffer perseyuyd *that* there was
 myche a do aboute y^e gybet / they sayd, 'Syrs, the
 24 frenchemen are come out of the castell / go and loke that
 ye do so mych that none of *them* enter agayne' / than
 paynymys on euery parte issued out of there lodgynges,
 and ranne thether he that best myght, without kepynge
 28 of any good ordre / than Huon & Gerames, whan they
 saw them comynge / they made semblaunt⁷ to returne
 to the cyte a soft pace / & the paynymys cam after them
 cryenge and howlyng lyke dogges / and whan they
 32 aprochyd nere, Huon sodenly tournyd, & with his spere
 he mette so the fyrst that he ranne hym clene throw
 the body with his spere, so *that* he fell downe deed,

Huon hears him,
 and calls on his
 men to rescue
 him.

They suddenly
 rush upon the
 gibbet and kill
 the hangman.

Mouflet runs into
 the castle.

Ivoryn and the
 Admiral order the
 Saracens to seize
 the Frenchmen
 before they can
 re-enter their
 fortress.

Huon turns to
 defend himself,

¹ Fol. l. col. l. ²⁻² omitted. ³ that. ⁴ hee.

⁵ haue.

⁶ When.

⁷ semblance.

and with his
men slays many
of his enemies.

Then all the
Frenchmen
regain the castle,

except Garryn of
St. Omer,
who fights
valiantly until he
falls slain.

Huon laments his
loss,

and tells
Esclaramonde
of his grief,

and she consoles
him.

and Gerames and his company strake so amonge the
paynyns that y^e place ran lyke a ryuer of blode of the
deed paynyns. Huon strake with his sword with both
his ¹handes / he strake none with a full stroke / but 4
that he claue the hede to the teth / but fynally the
forse of the paynyns was so gret that at length they
coude not abyde it / than Huon, who was expert in
dedes of armes, parseuyd that it was tyme to departe / 8
he called his men to-gether and went toward the
posterne / the whiche, with muche payne, they gatte in
there at; and so they entred in all .xiii. companyons /
but yet they were so hastyd and pursewyd / that 12
Garryn of saint Omer abode without and defendyd
hym selfe valyauntly; But at last he was slayne by the
paynyns / than Huon was ryght sorowfull whan he
saw that Garin was not enteryd in to the castell, and 16
peteously compleynynd for hym, and sayd, 'A, dere
cosyne, who for the loue of me haue left your wyfe and
chyl drene and londe and syn gnoryes! I am sory of your
deth.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'leue your sorow, and 20
thynke to make good chere, and te kepe wel our fortres.
our lord god hath always aydyd you, and shall doo
throw his grace / goo we vp & make good chere / for
with this sorow we can wyn no thyng' / than whan 24
they came in to the palays, they mette with Esclara-
mond / ²whan Huon saw her, he sayd, 'my fayre louer,³
this day I haue lost one of my good frendes, wherof I
am sorowfull.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'I am sory therof / 28
but that thyng that can not be recoueryd must be left /
we be all made to dye. god shall haue mercy on his
soule' / with suche lyke wordes Esclaramonde and
Gerames apeacyd Huon / ²whan they were in the hall 32
they vnarmyd them / and went to dyner / and after⁴
mete⁵ they lokyd out at y^e wyndowes / to se the coun-

¹ Fol. l. col. 2.

² and.

³ Loue.

⁴ afterwarde.

⁵ omitted.

tenaunce of y^e painyms / than Gerames sayd to y^e mynstrell Mouflet,¹ 'frende, I pray the take thy vyall, and geue vs a songe to make his² mery' / ³the mynstrell
 4 tooke his instrument and gaue them a⁴ swet songe, the whiche was so me⁵lodyus⁶ to here that they all beleuyd
 7 they had been in paradyce / and they all made⁸ great ioy with suche a ioyfull⁹ noyse / that the paynyns¹⁰
 8 without dyd here it / & sayd amonge them selfe, 'A, these frenchemen are peple to be fearyd and doughtyd' / and they were ryght sorowfull for the men that they had lost by the prowes of¹¹ .xiiii. persons.

Mouflet delights the Frenchmen with the sound of his viol.

12 ¶ Howe the good prouost Guyer, brother to Gerames, aryued at the porte of Anfalerne.
 Capitulo .lx.

16 **W**Han that kynge Iuoryn saw & knew the grete losse that he had receyuyd, he was ryght sorowfull / ¹²than the admyrall Galaffer sayd / 'sir, for y^e honour of Mahound, be not so sore troubled / for
 20 a thyng y^e whiche ye shall well acheue & brynge to an end. ye knowe well these frenchemen are as a byrde beyng in a cage / for they can not scape nother by londe nor water, & they are without
 24 hope of any rescue. to daye they were .xiiii., and now they be but .xiii. ye are lodgyd in a good towne, & haue the felde and the see at your pleasure / it is not possyble for them to escape / they haue
 28 nother ship nor galay to flye in / ¹³syr, apeace your selfe; suffer them to wast theyr vytaylles.' by thes wordes, sum what kynge Iuoryn was apeasyd; & the frenchemen in y^e castell deuysyd togyther / & Huon

The Admirall bids Iuoryn be of good cheer.

The Frenchmen cannot long hold against their forces.

¹ my. ² Pynson, 'his,' 1601, vs. ³ then. ⁴ moet.
⁵ Fol. l. back, col. l. ⁶ for. ⁷ that. ⁸ exceeding.
⁹ cheerefull. ¹⁰ that were. ¹¹ these. ¹² and.
¹³ Therefore.

Huon fears that
the Frenchmen
will receive no
succour.

With Gerames
he goes down to
the seashore
out of sight of the
view of the
Saracens.

A ship with a red
cross on the mast
is seen coming
near to the port.

Huon approaches
it, and asks the
sailors for the
master of the
vessel.

The sailors are
afraid when they
see that they are
arrived at
Anfalern.

said to¹ Gerames, 'frende, ye se well we be here
inclosyd, & we can nother departe by londe nor by
see / nor we loke for no socoure of any man lyuynge /
& here before vs are lodgyd paynmys who hathe sworne 4
our dethes' / 'sir,' quod Gerames, 'trew it is / but I
hope in our lorde god *that* he wyll sende vs sum good
aduenture / syr,² yf it please ³you, let vs two go downe
& sport vs by the water syde nere to y^e porte tyll⁴ nyght 8
come.' 'I am content,' quod Huon / 'we may go
theder, and be not sene by the paynmys / for thether
myght come shyppe or galay with out daunger of the
towne' / thether they went; and whan it was nere 12
hande nyght, Huon lokyd in to the see & saw a shyppe
comynge thether warde / than Huon sayd to Gerames /
'frende, beholde yonder comyth a shyppe with full
sayle. they wyll aryue at this porte. they be crysten 16
men, I se wel, by the tokens that the shyppe doth
bere / for on the mast I se a rede crosse' / 'syr,'
quod Gerames, 'by all *that* I can se, the shyppe is of
fraunce / & therfore, as I haue sayd to you before, god 20
wyll sende vs sum good aduenture' / & therwith, by
fere of the tempest, the shyppe came in to the hauen,
and cast theyr ancrs. Than Huon aprochyd to the
shyppe, & demaundyd for the patrone & for the mayster 24
of them *that* were in the shyppe / than the maryners
regardyd y^e place where as they were / & they knew
clerely⁵ by the grete toure / that they were in y^e porte
of Anfalerne / wherof they had greate fere, & sayd one 28
to an nother, 'A, good lorde god, helpe vs / for we se
wel we are but deed, syn⁶ we be aryued here in this
porte / for we know well that the lorde of this place is
y^e moost cruelest paynym betwen this & the red see.' 32
Thus they compleynynd them one to another / and
Huon, who was nere them, vnderstode them well, and

¹ vnto. ² and. ³ Fol. l. back, col. 2.

⁴ vntill. ⁵ plainly. ⁶ seeing.

- sayd, 'Syr, haue ye no dought of deth, for ye are
 aryued at a good porte / I requyre you¹ shew me fro
 whence ye cam, and what ye be' / and they answeyrd
 4 and sayd, 'syr, syn² ye can speke frenche, we shall
 shewe you so that ye wyll assure our lyues.' 'Syr,'
 quod Huon, 'haue no fere of deth nor of any hurt that
 ye shal haue / for we that hath³ this place in kepinge
 8 are frenchemen / therfore shew vs hardely your ententes.'
 'Syr,' quod they, 'syn ye wold knowe what we be / we
 are all borne in the countre of Fraunce / and one of vs
 is of seynt Omers / and sum of the cyte of Parys, and
 12 of dyuers other partes of the realme of Fraunce' /
 'frendes,' quod Huon, 'I pray you shew me yf there
 be any amonge you / borne in the cyte of Burdeux.'
 'Syr,' quod one of them / 'here is one in this shyp that
 16 was borne in Burdeux, an olde, aunsyent man / I
 thynke he be of an .C. yere of age / his name is Guyer /
 and we are goynge a⁵ pylgremage, for the loue of our
 lorde Jesu Cryst, to vysyt the holy sepulchre / but
 20 fortune, by force of tempest of the see, hath causyd vs
 to aryue here, the whiche⁶ tempest hath enduryd
 these thre dayes & thre nyghtes passyd / wherby we be
 so very & so sore trauayled that we can do no more' /
 24 'frende,' quod Huon, 'I pray you shewe hym forth, that
 ye speke of' / than the patron of the shyp commaundyd
 that the olde man of Burdeux sholde com forth. than
 Guyer the prouost cam to Huon, & sayd, 'sir, beholde
 28 me here! what please⁷ it you to say to me?' / whan
 Huon sawe hym, he knew incontynent that it was
 Guyer the prouost / & sayd, 'frende, I requyre you
 shew me where ye were borne / & what hath mounyd
 32 you to come hether, seyng the grete age that ye be of,
 and to shew me what is your name.' 'Syr,' quod he,
 'I shall shew you y^e trouthe / I had a lorde whom I

Huon tells them
 how Frenchmen
 hold the castle.

They tell him
 how they too are
 Frenchmen,

and that among
 them is Guyer
 from Bordeaux,

on a pilgrimage
 to the Holy
 Sepulchre.

Huon asks to see
 Guyer,

and recognizes
 in him the
 prouost.

He inquires the
 reason of his
 journey.

¹ to. ² seeing. ³ haue. ⁴ Fol. li. col. 1.

⁵ omitted. ⁶ and this. ⁷ pleaseth.

Guyar tells how
he once served
Huon of
Bordeaux,

whom
Charlemagne
banished;

and how the
duchess, Huon's
mother, is dead;

and how Gerard,
Huon's brother,
holds all his land,
and how he rules
so tyrannically

that the barons of
the country have
sent him, the old
provost, to seek
out Huon, the
rightful heir,

lounyd enterly; he was son to duke Seuyn of Bur-
deux / & he was called Huon / & so it fell¹ *that* after
the deth of his father about a .vii. yere, kinge Charle-
mayn sent for hym to do his homage & to reseyue his 4
londe of hym / the yonge man, by y^e commaundement
of his mother,² & his brother Gerard with hym, tooke
theyr way towardes Parys / and by the way kyng
Charlemayns sonne called Charlot was lyenge in a wood 8
by the counsell of certen traytours, & there lay in a
waye to haue slayne Huon & his brother Gerarde / but
the case fell other³ wyse / for Huon slew Charlot, not
knowinge who it was; wherfore kyng Charlemayn 12
banyshyd hym⁴ the realme of Fraunce, and chargyd
hym, or⁵ he tournyd,⁶ to go to Babilone to do a message
to the admyrall Gaudys / &⁷ his brother Gerarde abode
styll at Burdeaux to kepe the herytage / & than the 16
duches his mother was so full of sorowe *that* her son
was so banyshyd without cause / *that* she tooke there⁸
such a maladye / *that* she dyed therof / a⁹ .v. yere past /
& so therby Gerarde is lorde & gouvernour of all y^e 20
londes, & he is maryed to the doughter of y^e moost
fellest¹⁰ tyraunt fro thense in to Spayne / & this Gerarde
hath lerned of hym many yll customs, & hath left all
y^e good wayes that was vsyd in y^e dayes of duke Seuyn 24
& of y^e duchess his mother / & he hath reysyd vp in all
his londe / new taylles & gables & inpossessyons,¹¹ &
chasyd & put fro hym all noble men / he dystroyeth
the burgesses and marchauntes, wedous & orphelyns / 28
there can no man shew you y^e yll *that* he hath done &
doth daylly / & he hath dysheryt me / & on a day the
barons of the countre desyryd me *that* I wolde take the
payne to go and serche, as well by londe as by water, yf 32
I myght fynde the yonge lord Huon, who is our ryght-

¹ it fell so out. ² he. ³ Fol. li. col. 2.

⁴ out of. ⁵ ere. ⁶ returned. ⁷ But.

⁸ therof. ⁹ about. ¹⁰ cruellest. ¹¹ Impositions.

full lord. it is now a¹ two yere *that* I haue serched
for hym in dyuers countrees / but I coude neuer here
one worde of hym, wherof I am ryght sorowfull / & to
4 seke hym I haue spent all my golde & syluer / how be
it, these good marchauntes hath taken me in to there
shyp for the loue of god / they thought to haue brought
me in to Fraunce / but by fortune we be here aryued at
8 this porte.'

and how he has
hitherto failed to
find him.

¶ How Huon & Gerames, & al there com-
pany, with the fayre Esclaramonde, departyd
fro the castell of Anfalerne, & ²entred in to³

12 the see.

Ca. .lxi.



Han Huon vnderstode y^o prouost

Guyer / he sayd to Gerames / 'Syr,
come forthe here / I haue founde
your brother' / than Gerames came
to his brother, & enbraced &
kyssyd hym, & ⁴all wepyng sayd,

Gerames recog-
nizes his brother
in Guyer,

'my dere frende & brother, ye be ryght hertely wel-
20 com.' 'A, brother,' quod Guyer, 'nowe I care not
whether I lyue or dye / syn⁵ I haue founde you. and
yf it were so yet that onnes or⁶ I dyed I myght se
my lorde Huon / than I cared not how sone I dyed.'

24 'A, dere brother,' quod Gerames, 'ye shall not dye so
sone, & yet ye shall se Huon, whose presence ye so
sore desyre / it is Huon to whom ye haue spoken to'
al this season' / than Huon, sore wepyng, cam & en-
28 braced Guyer, & sayd / 'my dere frend, your comyng
is a ioye to my herte, for a more trewer knyght can not
be found' / 'syr,' quod Guyer, 'do ye know me?' / 'ye,
trewlye,' quod Huon / 'and do ye know me?' / 'ye,

and shows him
how he has at
length found
Huon.

¹ about. ²⁻³ sayled thence on.

⁴ & after weeping.

⁵ seeing.

⁷ omitted.

³ Fol. li. back, col. 1.

⁶ that yet once ere.

Gerames tells his
brother his
adventures.

Huon proposes
that they and
their company
and Esclaramonde
shall embark for
France in the
ship in which
Guyer is sailing.

Huon invites the
sailors to seize all
the treasure in
the castle.

syr, 'quod Guyer, 'ye are sore¹ desyryd in Fraunce / &, brother Gerames, I desyre you to shew me where ye haue ben syn² I saw you, for it is a³ lx. yere syn² ye departyd out of Fraunce' / than Gerames shewed hym 4 all his lyfe / & shewed at length how he founde Huon / longe they were talkynge togyther, wherof they of y^e shyp were ryght ioyfull / for than they saw well they were aryued at a good porte / 'than Huon sayd to the 8 maryners, 'Syr, I pray you make this nyght no grete noyse, nor make no fyer, nor shewe no lyght / for here before the castell is lodged two admyralles / paynmys, who hath⁵ sworne that they wyll neuer goo hense 12 tyll⁶ they haue vs at theyr plesir, therfore I counsell that we may scape out of this castell / we be here, a³ .xiii. persons, & with vs a noble lady / wherfore I requyre you lette vs com in to your shyp, or 16 elles we be all lost / & fere not but ye shalbe well payed for your laboure; ye shall haue gold & syluer as myche as ye wyll desyre.' 'Syr,' quod the pa^rtrone, 'ye nede not to speke of any golde or syluer / for this 20 our shyp is yours, to do ther with at your pleasure' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke you of your courtesye / I praye you & your company come with me in⁸ the castell, and I shall charge your shyp with golde & 24 syluer, & ryche iewelless & presyus stoones / that you & al yours shal be ryche for euer / this must be done in hast, or⁹ the paynmys here without parseyue vs / for yf they perceyue vs, we shal neuer get hense, for¹⁰ in- 28 contynent they wyll sende¹¹ of theyr shyppes, & take thys shyp.' 'sir,' quod the patrone, 'we are redy to obey your commaundementes' / 'than y^e patrone & .xxiii. maryners went with Huon in to the castell / & chargyd 32 all the treasure that was within y^e castell, & other ryches that Huon & his company had taken in the

¹ greatly. ² since. ³ about. ⁴ and. ⁵ haue. ⁶ untill.
⁷ Fol. li. back, col. 2. ⁸ to. ⁹ before. ¹⁰ but. ¹¹ some.

towne / they bare all in to y^e shyp, & vytaylles suffy-
 cyent / than Huon toke Esclaramonde by y^e hande, all
 smyllynge, & sayd, 'fayre lady, one thyng I demaunde
 4 of you / be ye not dyspleasyd to leue y^e countre &
 londe where as ye were borne?' 'Syr,' quod she, 'I
 haue longe desyryd to se y^e day *that* I nowe do se¹ /
 well we may thanke our lord god Iesu Cryst,² *that*
 8 hath gyuen vs *that* grace to be sette³ out of the handes
 of y^e enemyes of y^e fayth of Cryst, wherein we ought
 to beleue' / than Huon entred in to the shyp, & y^e
 fayre Esclaramonde, & Gerames, & all the other com-
 12 pany; so they were in nombre within y^e ship a⁴.xxxiii.
 persons / & with them was Mouflet y^e mynstrell / &
 whan they were all entred in to the shyp, & y^e shyp
 chargyd with all thynges necessarye / they weyed vp
 16 theyr ances, & lyft⁵ vp theyr saylles / & so had a good
 freshe wynde / so *that* they were within a whyell far
 fro y^e londes of y^e.ii. admyralles sarazyns / they saylled
 so⁶ *that* or⁷ it was daye lyght they were passyd y^e coost
 20 of y^e Roddes / & so passid⁸ by the yle of Cret / & so,
 by the ayde of god & good wynde, they aryued at y^e
 porte of Brandys / & so aboute noone, y^e admyrall *that*
 lay at ⁹sege before y^e castell of Anfalerne had gret
 24 meruayle *that* they coude se no man sterynge within
 the castell / than a paynym sayd to Iuoryn / 'syr, know
 for trouthe, within the castell ye shal fynde no man /
 the frenchemen are¹⁰ fled; But we can not tell how' /
 28 when the two admyralles herd that / they were sore
 troubled; & in hast they sette forth a galay & .xxx.
 paynyms therin, commaundyng them to go to the
 posterne / the whiche they dyd incontynent / and
 32 whan they came theyr / they founde nother man nor
 woman / &¹¹ founde the posterne open / & so they entred

Esclaramonde
 declares that she
 is willing to leave
 her native land.

At length the
 ship starts for
 France with the
 French knights
 and Esclara-
 monde and much
 treasure.

They soon arrive
 at Brandys.

News of their
 flight is brought
 to King Ivoryn.

¹ therefore.

² God.

³ fet (fetched).

⁴ some.

⁵ hoysed.

⁶ long.

⁷ are.

⁸ came.

⁹ Fol. lii. col. 1.

¹⁰ all.

¹¹ but.

The Saracens
enter the castle.

in to the castell, & than¹ openyd the brode gates / & the two admyralles entred in, sore dyspleasyd that the frenchemen were so scapyd. Now let vs leue spekyng of theym, & returne to Huon, who was aryued in 4 sauegarde at y^e porte of Brandys.

¶ How Huon & his company aryued at the porte of Brandys / and fro thense went to Rome to the pope, who weddyd togyther 8 Huon and the fayre Esclaramonde; & of theyr departyng^e thense. Ca. .lxii.

At Brondys Huon
and his company
go to church and
give thanks for
their deliverance.



Han Huon & his company saw howe they were aryued at the porte of 12 Brandys, they issuyd out of theyr shyp, & deuoutlye went to the chyrche of our lady / and there gaue laude &

thankes³ to our lorde god, ⁴and to his mother and 16 vyrgyne, our lady seynt Mary, in that they⁴ had brought them thether in ⁵sauegarde / than they went to Garyn of seynt Omers lodgyng. whan they came there, the lady of the house, who was ryght sage⁶ and courtoys, 20 cam to Huon & sayd, 'Syr, of your comyng I am ryght ioyus.⁷ But, syr, I pray you wher ha⁸ue ye left Garyn my lord and housbonde? for syn⁹ I se hym not with you, my hert trymbleth / for fere lest he be deed, or 24 elles¹⁰ sum great encumbrance.'¹¹ 'Dame,'¹² quod Huon, 'to hyde the trouthe fro you, can not cause you to haue hym agayne / for it hathe pleasyd ¹³our lorde¹³ god that he is departyd oute of this worlde / wherfore I wyll 28 counsell you, as mych as ye may, leue doloure and heueneyys / for we must all come therto / and I repute

Huon tells
Garin's wife of
her husband's
death.

¹ so. ² from. ³ praise. ⁴⁻⁴ that.
⁵ such. ⁶ wise. ⁷ ioyfull. ⁸ Fol. lii. col. 2.
⁹ seeing. ¹⁰ of. ¹¹ happened vnto him.
¹² Madame. ¹³⁻¹³ omitted.

you so sage¹ / that ye know well that for any sorow or
 wepyng *that* ye can² make, ye can not haue hym
 agayne / whan the ladye had herde Huon / she fell
 4 downe in a transe, more lyke to be deed than alyue /
 than Huon and his company set her vp, and comfortyd
 her as myche as they myght / than Esclaramonde tooke
 and brought her in to her chambre / and dyd so mych
 8 with her fayre & swete wordes, that sum what she
 apeasyd her / and than, sore wepyng, she cam to Huon /
 & he sayd, 'dame,³ apeace your selfe, and pray for hym,
 for we must all passe the same passage' / with these
 12 wordes and such other, y^e lady was apeasyd / than they
 waht and went to dyner / and after, Gerames & other
 of his company went in to y^e towne, and bought horse
 and mules to ryde on, & bought ryche gownes all in
 16 one lyuery. ther they taryed an⁴.viii. dayes, & on the
 .ix. daye they payed the patrone of the shyp in suche
 wyse that he was ryche euer after, & euery maryner
 had a good rewarde / wherof they thanked Huon, &
 20 offeryd to do hym seruyce. Than Huon and Esclara-
 monde, with all his⁵ company, tooke theyr leue of there
 hostes, whom they left sore wepyng / and at theyr
 departyng, Huon gaue her a ryche gyft, wherof humbly
 24 she thanked hym / ⁶whan they were all redy, and theyr
 baggage trussyd⁷ / they departyd & tooke the way
 towardes Rome with grete ioy & gladnes / who so euer
 was ioyfull, Guier the prouost was ⁸ioyfull in two
 28 maners / one, in that he had founde his lorde Huon /
 and the other, for *that* he had founde his brother
 Gerames, and also by cause that his lorde Huon had
 fulfilled the message that kynge Charlemain had
 32 chargyd hym to doo to the admyrall Gaudys / so longe
 they rode,⁹ that in a mornynge they came to Rome, &

Esclaramonde
seeks to comfort
her.

Eight days they
remain at
Brondys.

The master and
sailors of the ship
that rescued them
are richly
rewarded.

Huon and
Esclaramonde
and his company
set out for Rome.

¹ wise. ² omitted. ³ Madame. ⁴ about.
⁵ their. ⁶ and. ⁷ vp. ⁸ Fol. lii. back, col. 1.
⁹ together.

On their arrival
they all visit the
Pope.

Huon tells him
how he has
accomplished the
Emperor's
mission,

and asks him to
admit Esclaramonde
into the
Christian
communion.

Next day
Esclaramonde
and Mouflet are
both christened.

alyghtyd at theyr lodgyng / than they al togyther
went to here they¹ deuyne seruyce : & as they Issued
out of the chyrche, they met a seruaunt of the popys /
than Huon demaundyd of hym in what estate the pope ⁴
was in. 'Syr,' quod the squyer, 'he is redy to here
messe'² / than Huon & his company lept on theyr horses,
and rode to the popys palays, and theyr alyghtyd / and
than Huon held the fayre Esclaramonde by the hande / ⁸
& the good prouost Guyer held his brother Gerames by
the hande / and so all the other .ii. and .ii.³ than they
founde the pope set⁴ in his trone deusyng with his
cardynelles / than Huon approchyd & salutyd hym ¹²
humbly / whan the pope beheld Huon, he knew hym
incontynent, & rose vp, & came⁵ & enbracyd Huon,¹
& kyssyd his cheke, and sayd / 'fayre sonne Huon, ye
be welcom ! I pray you shew me howe it is with you, ¹⁶
& shew me of your aduentures.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I
haue enduryd yll⁶ and trouble ynough, & all these
other that are come with me / but thanked be oure
lorde 'Iesu Cryst,⁷ it is so now⁸ I haue brought with ²⁰
me / the berde & great teth of the admyrall Gaudys /
& haue also brought his doughter, who is here present /
& sir, I requyre you to geue her crystondome / and
than I wyll wed her to my wyfe.' 'Huon,' quod y^e ²⁴
pope, 'all this pleasyth me ryght well to do, and the
rather syn⁹ it is your pleasure ; & I desyre you tary
here with me this nyght.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'your
pleasure shal be myn.' Thus Huon and his company ²⁸
taryed with y^e pope all that nyght, wher as they made
grete ioy / and in the next mornynge / ¹⁰ A funt was
made redy / wherin the fayre Esclaramonde was
crystenyd without chaungynge of her name / and also ³²
there was crystenyd Mouflet the mynstrell / & he was

¹ omitted.

⁵ to him.

² service.

⁶ many euils.

³ together.

⁷⁻⁷ god.

⁴ sitting.

⁸ that.

⁹ seeing.

¹⁰ Fol. lii. back, col. 2.

namyd¹ Garyn. ²whan the sacrement of baptyisme was fynnyshyd / the pope hymselfe ³sange masse; ⁴ fyrst he confessyd Huon, & assoylled hym of all his synnes; ⁴ than he wedded hym to Esclaramonde / and whan ⁵all the ⁵ deuine seruyce was endyd / then they went all with the pope to his palays, and there was made the solempnytes of y^e maryage / ⁶ to shew the maner of theyr seruyce, with meetes and drynkes and aparell of the brydes / it ⁷ sholde be tedyous⁷ to reherce it. But one thyng I dare well say, ⁸ there had not ben sene ⁹ longe⁹ before, suche a gloryus and ryche fest / for the pope dyd as myche¹⁰ as tho they had ben his owne brother and syster / the melodye of the mynstrelles that played was so swete and delectable that euery man was satsfyed with the herynge therof / and specyally it was meruayle to here Garyn, the newe crysten¹¹ mynstrell, to play / he played so swetly on his vyall that it was¹² ioy to here it / Thus there was gret ioy in the popys palays / and ¹³ yf they had ben well serued at the dyner¹³ / it was better at soupper / than² at nyght euery man with-drew¹⁴ / and the new brydes lay togyther in grete pleasure all that nyght / & in the mornynge they rose & herd masse,¹⁵ & than dynid / ² than they trussyd¹⁶ all theyr baggages, & chargyd theyr somers / mules & mulettes / & sadelyd theyr horses / ² than Huon & Esclaramonde went & toke theyr leue of the pope, & thankyd hym of¹⁷ y^e honpur & grete courtesy that he had shewed them. 'Syr,' quod y^e pope, 'yf it wold please you to tary lenger here with me, my goodes and my house shold be at your commaundement.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I can not

The minstrel
takes the name of
Gariu.

The Pope marries
Huon to
Esclaramonde,

and gives a great
wedding feast.

Great joy is in the
Pope's palace.

Huon and his
wife take their
leave of the Pope.

¹ called. ² and. ³⁻³ said seruice. ⁴ fautes.
⁵⁻⁵ omitted. ⁶ but. ⁷⁻⁷ would be ouer-tedious.
⁸ that. ⁹⁻⁹ of a long time. ¹⁰ for them.
¹¹ christened. ¹² great.
¹³⁻¹³ euen as they were well serued at dinner, so.
¹⁴ himselfe. ¹⁵ seruice. ¹⁶ vp. ¹⁷ for.

render¹ thanks to your holynes for y^e good that ye haue done to vs. But, syr, lenger² I can not tary, for the grete desyre that I haue to accomplyshe the rest of my besynes / therfore, syr, I recommaunde you to⁴ our lord god.' the pope kyssyd Huon, & touchyd³ Esclaramond by the hande. Thus they tooke theyr leue / and at theyr departyng, y^e pope sent to them a Somer chargyd with gold, and clothes of sylke / and⁸ thus they departyd fro Rome.

¶ Howe Huon and his company aryued at the abbay of Mauryse, whereas he was reseyued by the abbot and couent with¹² grete reuerence. Ca. lxxiii.

Huon and
Esclaramonde
ride from Rome to
Bordeaux.



After that Huon had take leue of the⁴ holy father the⁴ pope, he and his company departyd, & the fayre¹⁶ Esclaramonde was mountyd on a fayre mule 'rychely aparelyd'⁴ /⁵ so longe they rode 'throwe cytyes / townes / and vylages'⁴ tyll they myght se 'afarre of, the stepelles²⁰ and toures of⁴ the cyte⁸ of Burdeaux / whan Huon sawe it, he lyft vp his handes to y^e heuen, thankinge god of his grace that he had brought hym thether in saue garde / and than he sayd to Esclaramonde,²⁴ 'fayre lady, yonder ye may se 'before you⁴ the cite and countre wherof ye shalbe lady & duches / though it hath been or⁷ thys tyme a realme.' 'Syr,' quod Guyer the prouost, 'it is good ye regarde wyslye²⁸ your besynes, the whiche touchyth you ryght nere ; and, syr, yf ye wyll do by⁸ my counsell / sende fyrst to an abbay that is here by, called the abbay of

Guyer the prouost
advices Huon to
inform a neigh-
bouring abbot of
his coming.

¹ sufficient. ² Fol. liii. col. 1. ³ took. ⁴ omitted. ⁵ and. ⁶ town. ⁷ ere. ⁸ after.

Mauryse / the abbot is a notable clerke ; lette hym know
 of your comynge, & that ye wyll dyne with hym.
 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'your counsell is to be beleuyd' /
 4¹ than Huon sent to the abbot, certefyng hym of his
 comynge / whan the abbot knew of Huons ²comynge he
 was ryght ioyfull, for he loud intyerly Huon, wherfore
 he sore desyred the syght of hym / than he called all his
 8 couent, and chargyd them, in the vertue of obedyence,
 to ³reuest them selues with crosse and myter & copes,³
 to resesyue Huon, the ryghtfull enherytour to the
 countre of Burdeux / though the kynges of Fraunce be
 12 our founders. But as to oure goode neybour, we wyll
 doo this reuerence / for honoure is dew to them that dy-
 serueth it' / than the couent, as they were commaundyd,
 orderyd themselues / & so went out of the abbay to
 16 mete Huon, who, whan he saw them, he alyghtid a⁴
 fote, and also Esclaramonde and Gerames, and all the
 other / thus the abbot and his couent in ryche ⁵cop-
 syngynge⁵ mette with Huon / whan Huon was nere to
 20 the abbot, he was ryght ioyfull / and the abbot, who
 anone knew Huon, came to hym ryght humblye,
 and sayd / 'syr duke of Burdeux, thankyd be god
 that ye are come home, for your presence hath longe
 24 ben desyryd' / than they embrasyd eche other with
 wepynge teres for ioy / than the abbot welcomyd y^r
 prouost Guyer and all the other. But he knew not
 Gerames ; for yf he had, he wolde haue made hym
 28 great fest.⁶

The Abbot bids
 all his monks
 give Huon a
 warm welcome.

In procession
 they sing together
 in honour of
 Huon's return.

¶ How the good abbot sent word to duke
 Gerard of Burdeux how his brother Huon
 was in the abbay of Mauryse.

32

Capitulo .lxiiii.

¹ and. ² Fol. liii. col. 2. ³⁻³ make them selues readye.
⁴ on. ⁵⁻⁵ clothes seeming. ⁶ feasting.

Huon and his
company tarry at
the abbey of
Mauryse,



and are right well
entertained.

Huon relates the
success of his
mission.

The Abbot
advise Huon to
inform his
brother of his
return.

A messenger is
despatched.

Hus the abbot with hys couent brought
Huon to the abbay of Mauryse ¹with
solempne processyon¹ / and Huon and
Esclaramonde a² fote folowyd ³the 4
crosses; ³ & whan he came in to the
chyrch, ¹Huon kyst al y^e holy ⁴relikes, and¹ Huon
offeryd great gyftes / & after theyr offeringes & prayers
made / they went in to the hall, and went to dyner. 8
how well they were seruyd, nede not to be reherayd /
they had euey thyng that nedyd / the abbot
sat by Huon, and sayd / 'syr, I pray you shew me
how ye haue done, and how ye haue done⁵ your 12
message that ye were chargyd⁶ by kynge Charlemayn.'
'Syr,' quod Huon, 'thankyd be our lorde god, I haue
acumplyshyd and done all *that* I was commaundyd to
do, for I haue brought with me y^e berde & y^e.iiii.⁷ teth 16
of y^e admyrall Gaudys / & also I haue brought with me
his doughter, the fayre Esclaramonde, whom I haue
weddyd in the cyte of Rome; & to morowe, by the
grace of god, I wyll departe to go to kynge Charlemayne 20
my soueraygne lord' / 'Sir,' quod the abbot, 'of *that*
I am ryght ioyus⁸ / but, ¹sir,¹ yf it were your pleasure,
I wolde sende to certyfye your comming to Gerard your
brother / *that* he myght se you or⁹ ye departyd¹⁰ 24
hense' / 'sir,' quod Huon, 'I am content¹¹ ye sende for
hym' / than y^e abbot commaundyd a squyer of his to
go for duke Gerard / & so he went, & restyd not tyll he
cam to Burdeux before duke Gerarde, & sayd, 'syr, if 28
it be your pleasure to come to y^e abbaye of seynt
Mauryse / there shall ye fynde your brother Huon, who
is come strayte¹² fro beyond y^e see' / whan duke
Gerarde herd surely¹³ how his brother Huon was com to 32

¹⁻¹ omitted.

⁴ Fol. liii. back, col. 1.

⁸ ioyful.

¹² lately.

² on.

⁵ ended.

⁹ before.

³⁻³ them.

⁶ to do.

¹⁰ depart.

¹³ certainly.

⁷ great.

¹¹ that.

- y^e abbay of seint Maurise, he was so ouercome with yre
 & dyspleasure / *that* his vysage became lyke a flame of
 fyre, & sayd to y^e messenger / 'go & retourne, & say to
 4 my brother Huon / *that* I wyll incontynent com &
 vysyt hym' / 'syr,' quod he, 'I shal shew hym of your
 commynge,' & so departyd, & came agayne to the
 abbay, & shewyd Huon what his brother Gerarde had
 8 sayd. And whan duke Gerard sawe that the messenger
 was departyd, he was sorowfull and pensyue, and called
 to hym his father in law, his wyfes father, who was
 namyd Gybouars / the most fal'sest traytour *that* was
 12 fro y^e Est to the west / & Gerarde sayd to hym / 'sir,
 I pray you geue me counsell in *that* I haue to do / for
 all the deuelles in hell / hath brought my brother Huon
 fro the partes beyonde y^e see, & he is now present in
 16 the abbay of seint Mauryse / the abbot there hath sent
 me worde therof, & *that* I shold com thether to speke
 with hym / for as to morowe he wyll departs to go to
 Parys to the kyng, so that whan he is come thether, he
 20 wyll do so mych / *that* all his londe shalbe renderyd to
 hym / so² *that* I shall haue neuer a fote of londe³ but
 that⁴ ye haue geuen me with my wyfe, your doughter /
 wherfore, dere father in lawe, I pray you in this grete
 24 mater to counsell and to⁵ ayde me, or elles I am but
 lost' / 'fayre son,' quod Gybouars, 'dysmay you no
 thyng / for without my wyt do fayle me, I thynke to
 playe hym a tourne, *that* it had been better for hym to
 28 haue taryed there⁶ he was / than to⁷ come hether to
 clayme any⁸ londe.'

Gerard grows
angry when the
news is brought
him,

but promises to
visit him at the
abbay.

Gerard calls on
Gybouars, his
traitorous father-
in-law, to counsel
him.

When Huon goes
before the
Emperor, all his
lands will be
restored to him.

Gybouars
promises to
outwit Huon.

- ¶ How Gybouars of Beam, & Gerard, Ima-
 genyd⁹ Huons deth / and how the traytour
 32 Gerarde cam to se his brother Huon, who
 with gret ioy reseuyd hym. Ca. .lxxv.

¹ Fol. liii. back, col. 2. ² and. ³ left me. ⁴ which.
⁵ omitted. ⁶ where. ⁷ have. ⁸ my. ⁹ practised.

Gybours bids
Gerard go to
Huon,



and, after giving
him a loving
welcome,

Induce him to set
out with him for
Bordeaux.

In a little wood
Gybours will lie
in ambush to
seize Huon and
make him
prisoner,

and so make an
end of him.

Gerard is also to
rob him of the
teeth and the
beard he is
bearing back,

and it shall be
told the Emperor
that Huon has
returned without
them,

whereupon
Charlemagne will
surely demand
his life.

Huon, as ye haue herd, ¹sayd these ii
traytours / than Gybours sayd to
Gerarde / 'fayre son, goo ye your way
to your brother Huon, & take with you 4
but one squyer / & whan ye come
there, make to hym all the chere ye can / & shew
hym as grete loue as ye can do, & humble your
selfe to hym, to thentent that he take in you no sus- 8
pecyon / & ²whan y^e mornynge commeth, hast hym
to departe / & whan ye come with hym nere such a
lytell wood, fynde sum rygurus wordes to hym, &
make as though ye were dyspleasyd with hym / & I 12
shalbe redy in *that* same lytell wood enbusshid, ³and
xl men of armes with me, & whan I se that wordes
[be] ⁴betwen you / I shall Issu out, and alee all those
that become ⁵with hym, so that none shall scape alyue / 16
& than take your brother Huon, and cast hym into a ⁶
pryson in on of the toures of your palays in Burdeux,
and there myserably he shall ende his dayes / and than
in hast ye shall ryde to Parys / but or ⁷ye goo to Parys, 20
ye shall take fro hym the admyralles berde & great
teth / & than ye shall shewe to y^e kynge, how Huon
your brother is returnyd with out bryngyng other
berde or teth of the admyrall Gaudys / and how for 24
that cause ye haue set ⁸hym in pryson / the kynge wyll
beleue you, for he hateth greatly Huon, by cause of y^e
deth of his sonne Charlot whom he slew ; for the hate
that the kynge hath to hym in his herte, shall neuer 28
departe from hym / and therefore, sonne, whan ye be
with your brother, demaunde of hym yf he haue the
admyralles berde and teth, or not / and whether he do
bere them hymselfe, or who elles / for yf he haue them 32
not, he shal neuer haue peace with y^e kyng / but he

¹⁻¹ these two traitors conspired, and. ² But.
³ Fol. liiii. (*orig.* xlix.) col. 1. ⁴ are. ⁵ come.
⁶ omitted. ⁷ ere. ⁸ put.

- wyll cause hym to be slayne of an yll¹ deth, other²
 hangyd or drawyn; for your brother layd hostage,
 promysynge *that* he wolde neuer retourne without he
 4 brought with hym y^e admyrall Gaudys berde and great
 teth / and also he promysed *that* he sholde³ neuer enter
 in to his herytage tyll he had spoken with the kynge;
 & that was euiunyd hym on payne of deth.' Thus, as
 8 ye haue herde, these .ii. traytours deuysyd and con-
 cludyd the deth of Huon. 'Gerarde,' quod Gybouars / *Gybouars goes to
 assemble forty
 men to lie with
 him in ambush.*
 'thynke well of⁴ your besynes / & I shall go &
 assemble to-gether .xl. of my moost secrete seruantes,
 12 & in other places where as⁵ I can gette them, to
 furnyshe this entrepryse.' 'Syr,' quod Gerarde, 'I
 shall goo to the abbay to se my brother whan it is a
 lytell nerer to y^e nyght' / &⁶ whan the owre came, the
 16 false traytour departyd ⁷fro Burdeux, & with hym but
 one squyer, & so⁸ rode tyll he⁹ came to the abbay / & there
 alyghtyd: & whan he perseyuyd his brother Huon / he
 enbrasyd & kyseyd hym with suche a kysse as Iudas kyst
 20 Cryst / whan Huon saw Gerarde his brother come with
 suche humylite / the water fell fro his / ⁹iyen for⁹ kynd-
 nes, and enbrasyd hym & kyst hym, & sayd / 'ryght
 dere brother, I haue grete ioy to se you; I pray you
 24 shewe me how you haue done syn my departure.' 'Syr,'
 quod Gerarde, 'ryght well, now I se you in good helth.'
 'Brother,' quod Huon, 'I haue gret meruayle *that* ye
 be thus come alone without company.' 'Syr,' quod
 28 Gerarde, 'I dyd it for y^e more humylite, by cause I
 know not how ye shall spede with the kynge / nor
 whether ye shall haue agayne your londe or no. yf god
 wyll that ye shall haue it, I shall than⁵ assemble all
 32 the barons of the countre¹⁰ to reseyue you, and to make
 you chere accordynge / this, sir, I shall do tyll ye

*Gybouars goes to
 assemble forty
 men to lie with
 him in ambush.*

*Gerard sets out
 with one squire
 from Bordeaux,
 and meets Huon.*

*He gives him a
 Judas kiss.*

*Huon is over-
 joyed to see his
 brother.*

*Gerard promises
 to assemble all
 the barons to
 receive Huon at
 Bordeaux.*

¹ euill. ² either. ³ would. ⁴ on.
⁵ omitted. ⁶ so. ⁷ Fol. liiil. (orig. xlix.) col. 2.
⁸ they. ⁹ eyes with. ¹⁰ court.

Huon thanks
Gerard, and says
how he is setting
out for Paris

with the beard
and teeth of the
Admiral Gaudisee,

and much
treasure from the
East.

Huon tells how
Oberon aided
him,

and how the
objects of his
mission are kept
in Gerames's side,

retourne / often¹ tymys these grete prynces are mutable
& lyghtly beleuyth; for this cause, sir, I am secretly
com to you.' 'Brother,' quod Huon, 'your aduyse is
good: I am content *that* ye thus so² do / and to morow 4
by tymys I wyll departe towards Parys' / than these
two bretherne toke eche other by the hand, makynge
grete ioy. 'Brother,' quod Gerard, 'I am ryght ioyous
whan I se you thus retournyd in helth and prosperyte / 8
haue ye acumplyshyd the message *that* kynge Charles
chargid you withal?' / 'brother,' quod Huon, 'know for
trouthe *that* I haue the berde & grete teth of the
admyrall Gaudys; & besyde *that*, I haue brought with 12
me his doughter, y^e fayre Esclaramounde, whom I haue
taken to my wyfe, and weddyd her in the cyte of
Rome; and also I haue here with me .xxx. somers
chargyd with gold and syluer & ryche iuelles garnyshyd 16
with presyous stones / wherof y^e halfe parte shalbe
yours / & yf I shold shew you y^e paynes / trauelles, &
pouertyes *that* I enduryd³ syn⁴ I saw you last, it sholde⁵
be ouer long to rehearse.' 'Syr,' quod Gerarde, 'I be- 20
leue you well / but, syr, I pray you shewe me by what
meanes or ayde ye dyd brynge your enterpryse to an
ende.' 'Brother,' quod Huon, 'it was by a kynge of the
fayrre, called Oberon, who dyd me such socoure and ayde, 24
that I came to my purpose, and strake of the admyrall's
hede, and so toke his berde and great teth.' 'Brother,'
quod Gerarde, '& how do ye kepe them, & where?'
'Brother,' quod Huon, 'beholde here Gerames, who 28
hath them in his syde / kynge Oberon dyd set them
there by the fayrre & by the wyll of god' / 'syr,' quod
he, 'whiche is Gerames?' 'Brother,' quod Huon,
'here ye may se hym before you: he with the great 32
hore⁶ berde.' 'Syr,' quod Gerarde, 'of what londe is

¹ for.² omitted.³ Fol. liiii. (*orig.* xlix.) back, col. 1.⁴ since.⁵ would.⁶ hoarie.

- he of?' / 'he is of the best frendes that I haue,' quod Huon / 'and he is Brother to the good prouost Guyer / ye neuer herd speke of a trewere nor more noble man /
- 4 I found hym in a wood, where as he had dwelt a¹ .xl. yere in penaunce / god aydyd me greatly whan I founde hym / for yf he had not ben, I coude not haue retourned hether / mych payne and pouerte he hath endurid for
- 8 my sake. And now, Brother, I pray you shewe me howe ye haue done syn I departyd fro you. it hath ben shewyd me ²howe ye be³ rychely maryed / I praye you where was your wyfe borne, and of what lynage is she
- 12 of?' 'Syr,' quod Gerard, 'she is doughter to duke⁴ Gybouars of Cecyle, who is a great lorde, and ⁴hath great londes & sygnoryes.'⁴ 'Brother,' quod Huon, 'I am sory that ye haue taken suche alyauce / for I know
- 16 hym for the moost traytor that can be founde, &⁵ moost vntrewest.' 'Syr,' quod Gerarde, 'ye do yll to say so, for I take hym for no suche person.'

and how he had
chanced to meet
Geramee.

Huon learns of
Gerard's wife,

and deplores that
he has a father-in-
law who is a
reputed traitor.

- ¶ Howe these .ii. bretherne departyd fro the
- 20 abbay aboute mydnyght / & how the traytor Gerarde began ⁶to fall at rude wordes with Huon whan they aprochyd nere to the wood where as Gybouars lay in
- 24 ⁷a busschement.⁷ Ca. .lxvi.



- 28 Hus as these two bretherne deuysyd of Gybouars, the abbot came to them & demaundyd of Huon yf it were his pleasure to go to supper. 'syr,' quod Huon, 'whan it please you, I & my brother shalbe redy.' the fayre

The Abbot invites
Huon and his
brother to supper.

¹ about. ²⁻³ that ye are very. ³ omitted.
⁴⁻⁴ Signior. ⁵ the. ⁶ Fol. liiii. (*orig.* xlix.) back, col. 2.
⁷⁻⁷ in ambush.

Esclaramonde, who was wery of trauayle, was in her chambre apart, and dyuers other of her company with her, where as she souppyd & lay that nyght / Huon was sumwhat troublid by cause his brother had taken 4 to his wyfe the doughter of a traytor / thus they wasshyd & ¹than sat¹ down to supper, where ²as² they were rychely seruyd, & at another table sat the prouost Guyer & Gerames his brother, & dyuers other barons. 8

Gerarde behelde y^e prouost, whom he vtterly hatyd, by-cause he went to seke for Huon / he sware to hym selfe, *that* yf he myght onnes go out of the abbay, that he shold be y^e fyrst³ sholde lese his lyfe / ⁴he 12 dyd ete & drynke but lytell for thynkyng to accomplyshe his yll entrepryse / whan they had suppyd, they rose fro the borde / & theyr beddes were made redy. Than Huon called y^e abbot apart, and sayd / 16

'syr, I haue ²in you grete trust / I haue² brought hether with me gret ryches. I wyl leue it here with you to kepe tyll my retourne, & I pray you, for any maner of thyng that may fall, delyuer it to⁵ no man 20 lyuynge, But all onely to my selfe; and yf god gyue me the grace to retourne, your parte shalbe therin.' 'Syr,' quod the abbot, 'al that ye take me to kepe shalbe sauely kept to your behoue / & I shall do so 24 that ye shalbe content.' than ⁶he went to bed, and Gerard with hym / then⁷ Gerard sayd, 'brother, yf ye thynke it good, I shall call you⁸ betymes / for it semeth *that* to morrowe the day wyl be hote.' 'Bro- 28

ther,' quod Huon / 'I am content.' Thus they lay togyther in one bed / but the traytoure Gerard had no lyst to slepe, for the great desyre that he had to be reuenged of his brother, who neuer dyd hym any 32 treepas / alas! why dyd not Huon knowe his entente? if he had, the mater had not gone so to passe / at laste

Gerard hates
Guyer the prouost
because he went
in search of
Huon,
and longs for his
death.

Huon gives his
treasures into the
keeping of the
Abbot.

Gerard and Huon
sleep together in
the bed.

1-1 sate them. 2-2 omitted. 3 that. 4 and.
5 vnto. 6 Fol. lv. col. 1. 7 where. 8 vp.

- the houre cam that the cockes began to crow. then
 Gerarde a-woke Huon and sayd / 'brother, it were good
 for vs to aryse, for anone it wyl be day. it is good to
 4 ryde in the coole' / a!¹ the yll traytoure / his thought
 was other wyse. Whan Huon herd his brother, he
 rose vp / and so² euery man a rose³ & made them redy /
 'syr,' quod Gerames, 'how is it that ye be so hasty to
 8 departe⁴ hens? I praye you let me slepe a lytell
 lenger' / 'syr,' quod Gerarde, 'that is yll sayd / for he
 that hath besynes to do *that* toucheth hym nere ought
 not to slepe nor reste tyll⁵ his besynes is⁶ fynnysshed.'
 12 'By my trouthe,' quod Huon, 'my brother sayth
 trouthe, for I haue good⁷ desyre to speke with kyng
 Charlemayne' / than euery man trussed⁸ and toke theyr
 horses, & the fayre Esclaramonde was redy and mounted
 16 on a⁹ mule, & so they all toke theyr leues of the abbot,
 who was ryght sorowful that they¹⁰ departyd¹⁰ so erly /
 then the gates were opened, and so departyd .xiii. in
 a company / and Esclaramond made the .xv. and
 20 Gerard rode before to lede them the¹¹ way that he wolde
 haue them to ryde /¹² Esclaramonde, ¹³richely¹³ aparelled,
 rode very soberly / & she came to Huon & sayd / 'sir,
 I can not tell what me ayleth / but my herte is so sore
 24 troubled that all my flesshe¹⁴ trymbleth' / 'dame,'¹⁵ quod
 Huon, 'be not dysmayed nor haue no¹⁶ fere / for ye be
 in a good countre, where, by the grace of god, ye shall
 be serued lyke a prynces and lady of the countre' /
 28 and ¹⁷with those wordes spekyng her mule stumbled
 on the one fote before / so that she had nere hande a
 grete falle / then Huon aproched to her & toke the
 brydle of the mule in his hande & sayd / 'fayre lady,
 32 haue ye ony hurte?' 'sir,' quod she,¹⁸ 'I had almost

Gerard rouses
Huon at cock-
crow,
and urges him to
prepare for his
journey.

Gerames
complains of so
early a departure.

But Huon judges
it wise, and he
and his party
take leave of the
abbot.

Gerard leads the
way.

Esclaramonde is
troubled at heart.

Her horse
stumbles.

¹ But. ² omitted. ³ vp. ⁴ from. ⁵ vntill.

⁶ be. ⁷ great. ⁸ vp their things. ⁹ stately.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ would depart. ¹¹ right. ¹² and.

¹³⁻¹³ being very sumptuously. ¹⁴ bodie. ¹⁵ Madame.

¹⁶ any. ¹⁷ Fol. lv. col. 2. ¹⁸ but.

Gerames begs
Huon to return to
the abbey and wait
until the day-
light,

but Gerard tells
him his fears are
idle.

When Huon
comes to four
cross roads, he
chooses the one
that leads to
France and the
Emperor.

Gerard complains
that when Huon
has re-entered
into his lands,
he himself will be
left penniless,

fallen.' 'By my fayth,' quod Gerames, 'we haue done
1 grete foly to departe or it be¹ day lyght.' 'Syr,'
quod Gerard, 'I neuer saw men so ferefull for so small
a cause.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'I knowe not why ye 4
speke it / but yf I myghte² be byleued, we shall² not
goo one foote further / but returne agayne to the abbey
tyll the³ day lyght.' 'By god,' quod Gerarde, 'it were
grete foly to returne agayne now for the stumblynge of 8
a mule / I neuer saw men so ferefull. let vs ryde
forth and make good chere; I se y^e day begynneth to
apere' / so they rode forth tyll⁴ they came to a crosse,
where as there was .iiii. wayes, this was a legge fro the 12
abbey / then Huon rested and sayd / 'loo, here is the
border of the terrytory of y^e abbey of saynt Mauris,
and this one way is to Burdeux, the whiche waye I
wyll not ryde, for so I haue promysed to kynge Charle- 16
mayne / to whom I neuer yet falsyd my fayth. yf I
dyd it sholde be the cause that I myght lese my
seynory. & this other way goeth to Rome / and this
other way before vs is the ryght way in to Fraunce, the 20
whiche way I wyl ryde and none other' / so they rode
forth / & al theyr company / & within a whyle they
were nere to the wode, within a bowe shot where as the
traytoure Gybouars lay in ⁵a busslement⁵ / &⁶ when 24
Gerard saw his hour & tyme to speke to⁷ his brother
Huon, he sayd, 'brother, I se ye are in mynd to go in
to fraunce to⁷ kynge Charlemayne to haue your landes
& seynoryes / the whiche I am sure ye shall haue / it 28
is a longe space that I haue kept it & maynteyned the
countrie in peace & rest and good iustyce, & haue wonne
but lytell, nor haue had but small profyte, not y^e
⁸valew of one peny, and I am maryed to a noble lady / 32

1-1 very ill, for that wee departed from the Abbey before.

2-2 counsell yee we would. ³ omitted. ⁴ vntill.

⁵⁻⁵ ambushment. ⁶ now. ⁷ vnto.

⁸ Fol. lv. back, col. 1.

- doughter to a grete lorde / and it troubleth my herte
 sore when ye repute hym for a traytour / yf he knew it,
 by likelyhode it myght turne you to grete foly / for
 4 we byleued that ye sholde neuer haue returned / ther-
 fore now I may say *that* I am not worth a peny / ther-
 fore I wold know of you how ye wolde ayde me, and
 what parte I shall haue at your returne out of Fraunce.' and inquires how
 Huon will aid
 him.
- 8 'Brother,' quod Huon, 'I haue grete meruayle of this
 that ye say / ye know wel that in the abbey of saynt
 Maurys I haue lefte .xx. somers charged with fyne
 golde / and I haue sayd to¹ you *that* your parte shal be
 12 therin as moch as myne / nor I shall haue no peny but
 the² one halfe is yours.' 'Brother,' quod Gerard, 'all
 this suffyseth not to me / for I wolde haue parte of y^e
 seignory to maynteyn myn estate.' When Huon
 16 vnderstode his brother, his blode rose in to his face /
 for he saw wel his brother serched all that he coude to
 fall at debate with hym / ³Gerames, who was sage and
 wyse, parceyued anone that the mater was lyke to go
 20 euyll / and sayde to¹ Huon / 'syr, graunt to Gerard
 your brother his demaunde. ye are bothe yonge ynough
 to conquere landes' / 'Gerames,' quod Huon, 'I am
 content that he shall haue Burdeux or Gerome / let
 24 hym take whiche he lyst. Brother,' quod Huon,
 'shewe whiche of these .ii. ye wyll haue, and I wyll
 haue the other.'

Huon promises
 half the treasures
 he has brought
 from the East,

but Gerard
 claims part of
 the lands of
 Bordeaux.

Gerames advises
 Huon, who is
 filled with wrath,
 to grant his
 brother his desire,
 and the knight
 consents.

- ¶ Howe these traytours slewe all Huons
 28 company except Gerames and Esclaramond
 and Huon himselfe, the whiche all thre
 were faste bounde handes and fete and
 blyn felde, and so brought to¹ Burdeux and
 32 were set⁴ in pryson. Capt. .lxxvii.

¹ vnto. ² that. ³ and. ⁴ put.



Gerard is
wrathful because
Huon will not
quarrel with him,
and reproaches
the provost Guyer
with having
caused his ruin.

Huon and his
company reach
the wood where
Gybouars with
his men lie in
ambush.

Huon is
dismayed, but

attacks his
enemies manfully,
although he is
unarmed.

Twelve of his
company are
slain.

Huon is bound,
and Gerard cuts
open Gerames'
side and takes

Hen y° fals traytoure Gerard saw &
vnderstode his broder, how he dyd
graunt him his desyre / & sawe how
that in no wyse he wold stryue with 4
hym, he was ther with so dyspleased
that he was nere hande in a rage / then he came to
the prouost Guyer and sayd, 'Guyer, Guyer, False
traytoure, by the & by thy purchase I am lyke to lese 8
all my seynnorye / but by y° fayth that I owe to² him
that me created / or³ I dye I shall stryke of thy heed /
nor I shall not let to do it for ony person' / & ther-
with, when he sawe his tyme, he cryed his worde & 12
token / and Gybouars who was in the wode with .xl.
men armed brake out with theyr speres in theyr restes ;
and when Huon parceyued them it was no meruayle
thoughe he was abasshed / then humbly he besought 16
our lorde god to saue his body fro mysfortune / ⁴gladly
he wolde haue returned to the abbey / but he was so
sore ouer layde that he coude not / then he drew out
his swerde and gaue ther with y° fyrst that came suche 20
a stroke that he claue his heed to the teeth, and so fell
deed to the grounde / and Huon strake so on⁵ the ryght
hande and on⁵ the lefte / that whom so euer he strake a
full stroke neded after no surgyon / yf he had ben 24
armed he wolde not lyghtly haue ben taken without
grete losse ; but his defence coude not anayle hym /
for he and all his company were vnarmed, & all the
other .xl. were clene armed, and they all fought cruelly 28
in such wyse that within a whyle .xii. of Huons men
were slayne in the place / and none scaped alyue
excepte Huon, who was beaten downe to the erth &
his handes bounde / then Gerard the traytoure came to 32
Gerames, who was beaten downe by force / and then he
cut open his ryght syde, and toke out therof the

¹ Fol lv. back, col. 2.

⁴ and.

² vnto.

⁵ vpon.

³ before.

- Admyrall Gaudys berde & .iiii. grete teth, the whiche
 were set there by¹ Oberon of the fayry / ²Huon seyng
 the old Gerames lyenge on the erth, he sayd with a
 4 hye voyce to³ Gerarde, 'a,⁴ broder, I praye you shew
 me that curteyse as not to sle that olde gentylman, but
 saue his lyfe' / 'brother,' quod Gerarde, 'that he hath
 let him kepe, other hurt he shal none haue at this
 8 tyme' / then they bounde his eyen / then they came
 to Esclaramonde, who lay on y^e erth in a swone / they
 bounde her handes & her eyen, & so set her, whether
 she wolde or not, vpon a horse / & Huon, as he was
 12 blyndfeld, he herde the cryes & wepynges *that* she
 made. then he sayd / 'broder Gerard, I pray you for
 the loue of our lorde Jesu cryst suffre none yll to be
 done to that good lady who is my wyfe, nor no dys-
 16 honour' / 'brother,' quod y^e traytour Gerarde, 'thynke
 on your selfe, & speke no more. I shal do as it please
 me' / then they set Huon & Gerames on .ii. horses /
 then the fals traytour toke y^e.xii. deed bodyes and dyd
 20 cast them into the grete ryuer of Geron; then they
 toke y^e way to y^e cyte of Burdeux, & led the thre
 prysoners fast bounde on⁵ thre horses / pyte it was to
 here the noble lady Esclaramond complayne, & she
 24 sayd to³ Huon, 'a, syr, ye haue sayd to me that when
 we were ones in your cowntre of Burdeux *that* ye wold
 cause me to be crowned with golde / but now I se
 well / that in grete payne & mysery we must vse the
 28 reysdew of our lyues / ye haue founde here an yll
 brother, syn he hath purchased for you so moche yll /
 surely there is better fayth & trouthe amonge the
 sarazins *then* is in the people of the realme of Fraunce.'
 32 'dame,'⁶ quod Huon, 'your trouble more dyspleaseth
 me then myne owne / god sende to my brother Gerard⁷
 rewarde as he hath deserued for the treason *that* he

thence the objects
 of Huon's mission
 to Babylon.

At Huon's
 request he spares
 the old man's
 life.

Huon's eyes are
 blindfolded,

and Esclaramonde
 with eyes and
 hands well bound
 is set upon a
 horse.

Huon pleads for
 his wife,

but he and
 Gerames are also
 set on horses
 with her,

and brought
 towards the city
 of Bordeaux.

Esclaramonde
 deplores their sad
 fate.

¹ Kinge. ² Fol. lvi. col. 1. ³ vnto. ⁴ omitted.
⁵ vpon. ⁶ Madame. ⁷ such.

They enter
Bordeaux before
daylight,

and through dark
lanes, so that
none shall see
them, are led to
the palace.

The three
prisoners are
placed in a deep
dungeon, and
are given little
sustenance.

hathe done ¹to¹ vs' / thus they complayned, & wyste
not whyther they were caryed / they entred in to the
cite of Burdeux an hour before day. Alas that the
good burgesses of the cite had not² knowyn how theyr 4
lorde Huon was so falsely ³betrayed / yf they had
knowen it, he had ben rescued, and Gerard & Gybouars
hewen all to peces / but the false Gerarde brought
them by preuy darke lanes to the palayes, for that they 8
shold not be parceyued / thus they cam to the castell /
there⁴ they alyghted & vnarmed them / then they toke
Huon and Esclaramonde & Gerames & put them all in
to a depe pryson all thre togyther / & ordeyned *that* 12
they sholde haue euery day barly brede & water / &
commaunded the gayler to gyue them none other
thyng, and also commaunded *that* nother man nor
woman shold speke with them / the gayler promysed 16
so to do, for he was seruuant to Gybouars;⁵ such as the
mayster was so was the seruuant / thus Huon ¹was¹
betrayed pyteously by his brother Gerarde & set in
pryson, & with him his wyfe ¹the fayre¹ Esclaramonde, 20
& Gerames / wounded on the syde as he was. Now
we wyll leue to speke of this pyteous company duryng⁶
grete sorow in y^e horryble pryson in the grete toure
of Burdeux.

24



¶ How the traytours returned to the abbey
of saynt Mauris & slew the good abbot, &
toke awaye all the treasure that Huon had
lefte there.

Capitulo .lxviii. 28

1-1 omitted.

² but.
⁵ and.³ Fol. lvi. col. 2.⁴ where.⁶ enduring.



Hus as ye haue herd here before howe
Gerarde & Gybouars had put in pry-
son Huon & Esclaramonde & Gerames
in grete mysery; & when it was day,
Gerarde & Gybouars departed out of
Burdeux, & all theyr company, & rode

agayne to y^e abbey & came thyder to dyner / then

Gerard and
Gybouars return
to the Abbey
whence Huon had
set out.

8 Gerard sent for y^e abbot to come & speke with hym /
when y^e abbot herde how Gerard was come agayne to
y^e abbey he had grete meruayle / & so came to Gerard
& sayd, 'sir, ye be welcome. I pray you ¹what aduen-

The abbot
marvels at their
quick return.

12 ture hath brought you hyther agayne so shortly? / I
²went ye² had ben gone with your brother Huon' / 'Sir,'
quod the traytour, 'after that my brother Huon was
departyd hens / he remembred his ryches that he left

16 with you to kepe, & bycause he shal haue grete nede
therof to gyue gyftes to³ the grete prynces & lordes that
be aboute kyng Charlemayne, to y^e entent that his
besynes may take y^e better effect / therfore my brother
20 hathe sent me to³ you desyrynge you to sende his good
to³ him by me' / 'sir,' quod y^e abbot, 'when your
brother Huon departed hens, trewe it was⁴ he left with

Gerard says that
Huon has sent
him to fetch his
riches.

me his ryches to kepe, & charged me / not to delyuer
24 it too only person lyuyng, but alonely to his owne
person / therfore, sir, by the fayth that I owe to³ my
patron saynt Maurys I wyl not delyuer⁵ you one peny' /
when y^e traytour Gerard vnderstode that answe, he

but the abbot
declares he has
sworn to deliver
them to none but
Huon himself.

28 sayd / 'dane abbot, thou lvest / for whyther thou wyte
or not I wyll haue it, & no thanke to the, & yet thou
shalt also repent thy wordes' / then Gerard sodenly
toke y^e abbot by y^e here of his⁶ heed / & Gybouars toke
32 him by y^e one arme & dyd so stryke him with a staffe
that he al to brused him, & then dyd cast him to the
erth so rudely that his hert brast⁶ in his body & so

Gerard says he
will seize them in
spite of his
refusal,
and he and
Gybouars slay the
abbot.

¹ Fol. lvi. back, col. 1.

²⁻³ had thought that you.

³ vnto.

⁴ that.

⁵ the.

⁶ burst.

The monks
flee in fear,
but the traitors
pursue them.

Despairing of
life, the monks
implore the
robbers to show
them mercy,
and offer to give
them the gold.

Gybouars spares
their lives, and
taking the keys
from them,
seizes all the
treasure of the
church there,
besides Huon's
wealth.

One of the monks,
who is cousin to
Gybouars, is
made abbot.

Gerard and
Gybouars bear it
to Bordeaux.

A third of it
Gerard lays in his
chamber, but the

died / when y^e monkes saw theyr abbot slayn they
had grete fere, & so fledde away, & the two traytours
with theyr swerdes in there handes wente after them
with sore thretnynges; & when y^e monkes sawe how ⁴
they coude not escape for y^e two traytours & theyr men,
they ¹taryed and ¹fell downe on theyr knees, ¹ryght¹
humbly prayenge them to haue pyte ¹& compassyon¹
of them, & that they wolde shewe them all the golde & ⁸
treasure that was in y^e hous, to do ther with at theyr
pleasure / then y^e traytour Gybouars sayd how they²
hadde spoken well³ when the monkes saw how they
had peace they shewed to the two traytours the place ¹²
where as⁴ the treasure was, and delyuered⁵ them the
keyes / so they toke away all the treasure that Huon
⁶had lefte there, and besyde that all the treasure of
the chyrch / crosses / sensers / chalesses / copes / and ¹⁶
candelstyckes of syluer, all they tooke & caryed awaye / ³
yf and I sholde resyte all the ryches that they had
there, it shold be to longe to be rehersed. In that house
theyr was a monke who was cosyn to Gybouars, whom ²⁰
the two traytours made abbot of that place / ⁷when they
had acheuyd theyr entrepryce they departed with all
that ryches, wher with was charged .xv. strong somers /
they left not in y^e abbey the valew of a floren / for ²⁴
euery thyng that was good they toke with them / and
so rode tyll⁸ they came to Burdeux, ⁹& all⁹ they passed
thruh the towne they were gretely regarded of all the
burgesses of the cyte / they¹⁰ hadde grete meruayle fro ²⁸
whens theyr lord came with so grete ryches. These
traytours passed forth tyll⁸ they came to the palays, &
there they dyscharged theyr somers / then Gerard toke
the treasure that .v. of the somers dyd cary and layde ³²
it in his chambre & cofers / then he ordeyned that .x.

1-1 omitted. ² the monks. ³ and. ⁴ omitted.
⁵ to. ⁶ Fol. lvi. back, col. 2. ⁷ so. ⁸ untill.
⁹⁻⁹ Now as. ¹⁰ who.

- somers sholde be trussed forth to go to Parys, and sent them forwarde, and sayd howe he wolde folowe soone after / then he and Gybouars dyned, & after mete they
- 4 mounted on¹ theyr horses, and the new abbot, cosyn to Gybouars, *with* them, and two squyers and a².vi. other seruantes, and so rode *in* hast to ouertake their somers with theyr tresure, and so *within* two legges they ouer-
- 8 toke them / & so then they all togyder rode so longe tyll³ on a wednysday they came to Parys. they lodged in the strete next to⁴ the palays in a good hostrye, & were well *serued*, & so rested tyll³ on⁵ the⁶ mornyn /
- 12 then they rose & apparelled them in fresshe arraye / & they led *with* them .v. of theyr somers with ryches, & two of them they presented to the quene & the other thre to y^e kyng, wherfore they were receyued *with*
- 16 grete ioye / then after they gaue grete gyftes to euery⁷lorde in the courte / & specyally to y^e offycers, wherfore they were gretely praysed. But who so euer toke ony gyfte, duke Naymes wolde take neuer a peny / for
- 20 he thought⁸ al that rychys was not wel gotten, & that they dyd it for some crafte, therby to attayne to some⁹ fals dampnable enterpryce / this duke was a noble, wyse knyght¹⁰ and a trew, and of good counsell /⁹
- 24 he¹¹ well parceyued theyr malys. Then the kyng commaunded the thre cofers to be¹² set in his chambre, & wolde not loke in¹³ them tyl³ he hadde spoken with Gerarde / whom he caused to sytte downe by hym / &
- 28 Gybouars in lyke wyse,¹⁴ and¹⁵ the newe abbot / for it is¹⁶ a sayenge¹⁶ that they *that* gyue are euer¹⁷ welcome. 'Gerard,' quod¹⁸ Charlemayne, 'ye be welcome / I praye you shewe me the cause of youre comynge.'
- 32 'Syr,' quod Gerard, 'I shall shewe you / syr,⁵ the grete

rest he sends
forward to Paris.

With Gybouars
he sets out to
follow it in its
journey.

On the day after
their arrival they
make presents of
part of their
riches to the
Queen, and part
to the King and
to the lords of the
court.

The Duke
Naymes will take
no gift.

Charlemayne
gives them a
warm welcome.

¹ vpon. ² about. ³ vntill. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ omitted.

⁶ next. ⁷ Fol. lvii. col. 1. ⁸ that. ⁹ and.

¹⁰ knight *after* trew. ¹¹ very. ¹² brought and.

¹³ into. ¹⁴ manner. ¹⁵ also.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ an old saying & a trew. ¹⁷ alwaies. ¹⁸ king.

Gerard declares
he brings
important
tidings.

besynes that I haue to do with ¹you and with ¹your
lordes / hathe caused me to gyue these large gyftes
that I haue gyuen² you & other, and, syr, I am sorow-
ful at my hert for that³ I must shewe you / and I had ⁴
rather be beyonde the see then to shew you that thyng
that I must neddes doo / for to hyde it / it⁴ can not
auayle me / yet I neuer shewed⁵ thyng in all my lyfe
with so yll a wyll / for I shall be blamed of many ⁸
persones / how be it, I loue better to defende myn
honour then I loue all the worlde besyde.' 'Gerard,'
quod the kyng, 'ye say trouth / for better it is to shew
the trouthe then to be ⁶styll, syn the mater⁶ toucheth ¹²
your honoure.'

¶ How the traytoure Gerarde shewed to
kyng Charlemayne how Huon his brother
was retourned too Burdeux without doynge ¹⁶
of his message to the admyrall Gaudys.

Capitulo .lxix.



yr,' quod Gerarde, 'true it is⁴ ye haue
made me knyght, & beayde that I ²⁰
am your lyege man, wherfore I am
bounde to kepe your honoure to my
power / for I am certayne I shall
shewe you suche newes that all that ²⁴

Gerard says his
news is sorrowful.

be in your court wyll be sorowfull, ⁸and also⁸ my selfe.'
'Gerard,' quod Charles, 'come to y^e poynt, and vse no
more such langage nor suche serymonyes / by that I se
in you it is but yll⁹ that ye wyll saye.' 'Syr,' quod ²⁸
he, 'But late as I was in my house at Burdeux, and
with me dyuers lordes and knyghtes / as we were
deusynge togyther, I sawe my brother Huon entre in

¹⁻¹ your Majestie and. ² to. ³ which. ⁴ that.
⁵ any. ⁶⁻⁶ silent in so great a matter which so much.
⁷ Fol. lvii. col. 2. ⁸⁻⁸ much more. ⁹ euill.

to my house, and thre with hym : the one was a yonge
damesell, and the other an olde man called Gerames.'

He tells him how
of late he had
seen Huon with
Gerames and a
damsel enter his
house at
Bordeaux.

When duke Naymes of Bauyer herde Gerard, he hadde

4 grete meruayle when that¹ he sayd that Gerames was
one of them / and sayd, 'a, very² god, I here that³ with

grete payne I can byleue it¹ / for yf it be the same
Gerames that I thynke it be, he and I were companyons

The Duke
Naymes re-
members Gerames
as an old
companion of his.

8 togyther at a tornay holden at Chalons in champayne,

'where as¹ he slewe by mysaduenture y^e erle Salamon.'

'Syr,' quod Gerarde, 'I shall shewe you as I haue
begon / trewe it is when I sawe my brother Huon I

12 was gretely abasshed / how be it, I dyd hym honour
and made hym good chere, and made hym and all his

Gerard says that
he received his
brother kindly,

company to dyne / then after dyner I reasoned with
my brother, and demaunded of hym yf he had ben at

16 the holy sepulture of oure lorde god / and⁵ when he
sawe that I demaunded that of hym, he was sore

abasshed, so *that* he wyst not what to answeye, and
then I parceyued by his wordes that he had not ben

but he perceived
that he had not
fulfilled the
Emperor's
mission, and he

20 there / and then, syr, after I demaunded of hym yf he
nad furnysshed your message to y^e admyrall Gaudys /

but he coulde gyue me none answeye nor saye any
wordes that I coulde byleue / & when I sawe that I

24 coulde fynde no trouthe in none⁶ of his wordes, I toke
hym and haue set hym in pryson, how be it / it was

had therefore
cast him into
prison,

full sore agaynst my wyll / but I consyder in my selfe
that I muste owe to⁷ your grace faythe and fidelite,

28 and that I am your man / and *that* for no man luyng,
though he were neuer so nere of my kyn, yet I wolde

not be founde with ony treason. And therefore, syr,
my brother and¹ his wyfe and his companion I haue

together with his
wife and his old
friend.

32 retayned them in my pryson. Therefore,⁸ syr, it is in
you to doo here in what it shall please you best.'

When all the prynces and lordes that were there vnder-

¹ omitted. ² deere. ³ which. ⁴ Fol. lvii. back, col. 1.
⁵ but. ⁶ any. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ wherefore.

The courtiers
deplore that
Huon should be
now in prison.

stode the wordes of Gerarde, and that he had taken his brother Huon and set¹ hym in pryson, there were none but that was² sorye therof, and many for the loue that they³ hadde of³ Huon began to wepe / and demaunded 4 of Gerarde who hadde done that dede / sayenge, 'surely it is done by some maner of treason.'

¶ 'Howe the kynge commaunded that Huon sholde be sent for fro Burdeux, to the 8 entente that he sholde dye.

Ca. lxxx = lxx.

All the Emperour's
hatred of Huon
is roused anew by
Gerard's story,



Hen the Emperoure Charlemayne vnder-
stode Gerarde, he rose⁵ on his feete 12
sore troubled and full of yre / for by
Gerard's wordes the auntyent hate
& dyspleasure that the kynge hadde to

and he threatens
to slay his
sureties unless
the knight is
surrendered to
him straightway.

Huon for y^e deth of Charlot his sone was renewed in 16
his hert, and sayd openly, that euery man myght here
hym / 'lordes that be here present, before you al I
somon them that were pleiges for Huon in such wyse
that yf the traytour Huon be not rendred in to my 20
handes to do with hym my pleasure, I shal cause them
to be hanged and drawen / and there is no man in my
courte that he be so hardy⁶ to speke or desyre the
contrary / but I shall cause hym to dye a shamefull 24
dethe' / and when he had thus sayde he satte hym
downe agayne, and called duke Naymes to hym, &
sayde, 'syr duke / ye haue herde what Gerarde hathe
sayde of his brother Huon.' 'Syr,' quod the duke, 'I 28
haue well herd hym / but I byleue the mater be other
wyse then he hath sayd / for there is no man wyll saye
the contrary but that all that Gerarde hathe sayd is

Duke Naymes
suspects the truth
of Gerard's tale.

¹ had put.

² were.

³⁻³ bare to.

⁴ Fol. lvii. back, col. 2.

⁵ vp.

⁶ as.

- done by fals treason / ye shall fynde it so yf the mater
 be wysely enquiryed of.' 'Syr,' quod Gerarde, 'ye saye
 as it please you, but I take god to wytnesse, and my
 4 father in lawe Gybouars, and this good, notable, relygious
 abbot and his chapleyne, that all that I haue sayde is
 trewe / for I wolde not for any thyngge saye ¹but *that* is ¹
 iust and trewe' / then Gybouars and the abbot and ²his
 8 chapleyn answered & sayde how it was trewe that
 Gerarde had sayde. ³'by my fayth,' quod ⁴duke Naymes,
 'all ye foure are as ²fals lyers & theues, & the kyng is
 yll counseyled yf he byleue you.' 'Naymes,' quod y^e
 12 kyng, 'I pray you how semeth it to ⁵you this mater
 bytwene these ⁴two bretherne?' 'Syr,' quod y^e duke,
 'it is a grete mater / he that is here before you is the
 accuser of his broder, & hath set him in pryson, and
 16 now he is come and accuseth hym here before you
 bycause he knoweth wel he can not come hyder to
 defende hymselfe / I shold do a grete yll ⁶dede yf I
 had a broder that were banysshed out of Fraunce, and
 20 yf he came to me for refuge, & I then to take hym and
 set him fast in pryson in myn owne house, & then
 after to go and complayne vpon hym, to the entent
 to purchase his deth. I saye there was neuer noble
 24 man wolde thynke so to do, and they that hath done
 thus are all fals traytours. all noble men ought not
 to byleue ony suche, and specyally he that wyll pur-
 chase such a dede agaynst his owne brother / I knowe
 28 well all that they haue ymagyned & doone is by fals
 treason / therfore I say accordynge to the ryght, that
 all foure are fals traytours, & I iuge for my parte that
 they are worthy to receyue a velaynous dethe / for
 32 they are foure false wytnesses.' When Gerarde herde
 duke Naymes, he chaunged coloure and waxed as whyte
 as snowe, repentyng in him selfe the dede that he had

But Gybouars
 declares that
 Gerard has
 spoken the truth.

Duke Naymes is
 not, however, the
 more convinced,

and shows the
 Emperor how
 unnatural and
 cruel Gerard's
 conduct is on his
 own showing.

He denounces
 Gerard as a false
 traitor.

Gerard turns pale
 with fear,

¹⁻¹ which is not.
⁴ the.

² omitted.
⁵ vnto.

³ Fol. lviii. col. 1.
⁶ euill.

and the Duke
reproaches him
with having
sought to become
a peer of France.

Huon's sureties
are called before
the Emperor,

and are ordered
to deliver up
Huon on pain of
their lives.

The Duke urges
the Emperor to
send for Huon
from Bordeaux,

and the advice is
accepted.

done to his broder / he cursed to hymselfe Gybouars
in that he byleued his counsell / then¹ he answered
duke Naymes and sayd, 'A, sir, ye do me greate
wronge² to owe me youre yll wyll.' 'Gerarde' / quod 4
the duke, 'it is for the ylnesse that is in you / ye that
wolde be one of the peers of Fraunce. Certaynely of
suche a counseller as ye be the kynge hathe lytell nede
of.³ I had rather a⁴ lost one of my handes then I 8
sholde⁵ haue consented therto.' 'Duke Naymes,' quod
the kynge, 'I wyll ye cause to come before me all suche
as ⁶were pledges for Huon at his departyng.' Then
the duke caused them to appere before the kynges 12
presence / of whome there were dyuers dukes and erles.
Then kyng Charlemayn sayd / 'syrs, ye know well ye
be pledges for Huon of Burdeux, and you knowe the
payne that I layde on your hedes yf Huon dyd not 16
accomplysshe my message that I gaue hym in charge /
the which he hath not fulfilled. wherfore, without
ye deliuer Huon in to my handes ye shal not scape, but
that ye shall all dye.' 'Syr,' quod duke Naymes, 'for 20
goddes sake I requyre you beleue me at this tyme / I
counsel you to take a good nombre of youre notable
men and sende them to Burdeux, and let them take
Huon out of pryson and brynge hym to you, and here 24
what he⁷ wyll saye / and yf it be trewe that Gerarde
hath sayd, yet⁸ I desyre you too haue⁹ pyte on hym /
but I byleue surely ye shall fynde the mater other wyse
then Gerarde his brother hath sayd.' 'Naymes,' quod 28
the kyng, 'your sayenge is reasonable. I accorde
therto. I wyll he be sente for.'

¶ Howe the Emperoure Charlemayn went
hymselfe to Burdeux to cause Huon to be 32

¹ yet. ² ill. ³ omitted. ⁴ haue. ⁵ once.
⁶ Fol. lviii. col. 2. ⁷ himself. ⁸ then. ⁹ no.

slayne for the grete yll wyll that he bare to
hym. Capitulo .lxxxi.



- 4 E haue herd here before how the good
duke Naymes dyde so moch *that* kyng
Charlemayn was content to sende for
Huon, but the kynge was so¹ sore dys-
pleased with hym that he wolde not
8 abyde so longe as to sende for hym, but he made hym
selfe redy to go thyther him selfe² with all his trayne,
and commaunded that the pledges shold be set in
pryson tyll his returne; but y^e good duke Naymes
12 became pledge³ for them all to be forth comynge, and
soo they went not to pryson / the kynge made hym
redy and toke with him twelue of his peeres, & so toke
the waye towardes Burdeux / god ayde Huon, for he
16 was⁴ in peryll of his lyfe yf god haue no⁵ pyte on him /
thus, as I haue shewed you, kyng Charlemayn nobly
accompanied rode so longe by his iourneyes that he
came *within* the syght of Burdeux / ⁶when he aproched
20 nere to y^e cyte Gerarde came to y^e kynge, and sayd /
'sir, yf it please you I wolde gladly ryde before you in
to the cyte to ordeyn to receyue you accordyngly.'
'Gerarde,' quod the kynge, 'it is no nede *that* ye goo
24 before to prepare for my comynge, there be other *that*
shal go before / ye shal not go tyll I go myselfe' /
when duke Naymes herd the kynges answeere he sayd
to the kynge / 'Syr, ye haue answered lyke a noble
28 prynce, blyssed be he that counsellid you so to saye' /
thus the kynge rode forth without gyuyng ony know-
lege of his cominge / and so entred in to the cyte
of Burdeux and rode to the palays, & there alyghted /
32 then the¹ dyner was made redy / ⁶the kyng sate downe
and duke Naymes by hym, & at other bourdes other

But Charlemagne
is in such haste
to punish him,
that he resolves
to visit Bordeaux
himself,

and Duke Naymes
undertakes to
hold himself
pledge for the
sureties.

The Emperor sets
out with twelve
peers.

Gerard rides with
him and offers to
advance to
prepare for his
reception, but
Charlemagne bids
him stay with
him.

The Emperor
arrives at the
palace.

¹ omitted. ² in person. ³ Fol. lviii. back, col. 1.

⁴ now.

⁵ not.

⁶ and.

Huon in his prison learns from the gaoler of Charlemagne's coming.

The town of Bordeaux is greatly excited by the visit of the Emperor, who makes good cheer in the palace.

Duke Naymes grows angry at Charlemagne's merriment,

who, having come to judge one of his peers, sits drinking wine and banqueting.

lordes and knyghtes, and there they were rychely
serued; grete brute was made in the palayes, so that
Huon, beyng in pryson, had grete meruayle of the
noyse *that* he herde, and demaunded of y^e gayler what 4
noyse it was that he herde aboue in the palays / the
gayler answered fyersly¹ with grete pryde and dyspyte,
and sayd, 'it nede not you to demaunde / for ye are
lyke to knowe it to soone / but syn ye wolde knowe it, 8
I shall shewe you y^e trouthe / it is kynge Charlemayne
and all his barons, who are come hyther for¹ to iuge
you to be hanged.' 'Go thy way, fals traytoure,' quod
Huon / 'canst thou not shewe to me none other 12
tydynges but that?' Thus Huon answered the gayler /
²there was as grete brute in the cyte as was¹ in the
palays ³with lodgyng of the kynges men. The comons
and burgesses of y^e cyte of Burdeux hadde full grete 16
meruayle why the kynge came thyder at that tyme so
sodeynely / ³the kynge syttyng at the table made good
chere / but duke Naymes who satte by hym began to
wepe, and coude nother ete nor drinke; he rose vp then 20
sodeynly / so rudely that he ouerthrewe cuppes, and
dysshes upon the table. 'Naymes,' quod the kyng, 'ye
haue done yll thus to do.' 'Syr,' quod the¹ duke Naymes,
'I haue good cause thus to doo, and I haue wonders 24
grete meruayle that I se you so dotyd. I am in suche
sorowe ther by that I am nere hande out of my wyttes.
howe is it that ye be come in to the cyte of Burdeux for
to ete and to drynke, and too take youre ease? ye nede 28
not to haue gone out of Fraunce for that / for ye hadde
mete and also good wynes suffycient at home in youre
owne house. A, ryghte noble and worthy Emperoure,
what thynke⁴ you too do? / it is no small mater to iuge 32
to deth one of your twelue peers / and it is not possyble
to gyue any trewe Iugemente when you and we are full

¹ omitted.

² and.

³ Fol. lviii. back, col. 2.

⁴ meane.

of wyne and spyces. But, syr,' sayd the duke, 'by the lord that me fourmed, that who so euer this daye doth ete or drynke wyne / as longe as the lyfe is in my
 4 body I shall neuer loue him.' 'Naymes,' quod the kyng, 'I am contente with your wyll.' Then the kyng commaunded that the tables sholde be auyded / and commaunded incontynent Huon to be taken out of
 8 pryson and brought before hym / they that had comyssyon to do it wente to the pryson / and theyr they toke out Huon and his wyfe Esclaramonde and y^{e1} olde Gerames;² they were all thre brought before the
 12 kyng and his barons. ¹when they came¹ / Huon sawe where the kyng Charlemayn sate amonge all his lordes / ²they³ arose when they sawe Huon and his company, pale & yll coloured by ⁴reason of y^e yll⁵ prison that his
 16 brother had put them in / 'Esclaramond was gretly regarded, & the olde Gerames⁶ / when the pledges sawe Huon before the kyng, they sayd / 'syr, now ye may
 se Huon, for whom we be pledges / we trust now to be
 20 quyt & dyscharged; it lyeth now in you to do with him at your pleasure' / 'syrs,' quod the kyng, 'I hold you quyt; ye may go fro hens forth where ⁷ye lyst⁷ / for Huon can not now scape our handes' / then Huon
 24 kneled downe before the kyng right humbly / ²when duke Naymes sawe hym, the droppes fell ⁸out of⁸ his eyen, and sayde to the kyng, 'Syr, I requyre you gyue Huon audyence, and here what he wyl say' / 'I
 28 am content,' quod the kyng; 'let hym say what he wyll' / then Huon, knelyng on his knees, sayd, 'Syr, in the honoure of our lorde Jesu cryste I⁹ crye you¹ mercy to god, and to you, and to all your barons.
 32 I complayne me of the fals traytour that I se there,

The Emperor orders Huon to be brought before him,

and he with Esclaramonde and Gerames comes into his presence.

At the sight of Huon,

the king discharges his sureties,

and bids him speak.

¹⁻¹ omitted. ² and. ³ all. ⁴ Fol. lix. col. 1.

⁵ noysome.

⁶⁻⁶ and Esclaramond & old Gerames were greatly regarded and,

⁷⁻⁷ you please.

⁸⁻⁸ from.

⁹ first.

Huon accuses his
brother of
treachery.

The lords of the
court pity Huon,

who looks pale
and thin.

Huon proceeds to
tell Charlemagne
all his adventures
at Babylon.

how Oberon
protected him;

who was my brother, yf ther had ben other fayth or
trouth in hym / but I beleue in al the world can not be
founde so cruell & fals a traytour / for Cayme that slew
Abel his broder / was neuer so fals nor so cruell' / 4
when all the lordes herd Huon, they all began to wepe,
sayenge eche to other, 'a, good lord, where is the beaute
be come that was wonte to be in Huon? we haue sene
hym so fayre that none¹ coude passe hym in beaute / 8
and nowe we se hym pale and lene and yll coloured; it
appereth well he hathe not ben all wayes in the ladyes
chambres / nor amonge damselles to sporte and to
playe² him' / thus they deuysed of him, and toke no 12
hede of Gerarde, who was by them. Then Huon spake
agayne, and sayd to the kynge, 'Syr, trewe it is, the
message that ye gaue me in charge too doo to³ the
Admyrall Gaudys, I haue done it ⁴at length,⁴ as ye 16
haue commaunded ⁵me / and I haue passed the see and
came to³ Babylone to the Admyrall Gaudys / and ther
I requyred of hym in the presence of all his lordes to
haue his berde and .iiii. grete teth. But when he had 20
herde my demaunde he helde it for a grete folye, & so
incontynente he caste me in pryson, where as I had
dyed ⁶for rage of ⁶famine / and⁷ the Admyralles doughter
hadde, not ben whom ye maye se yonder syttynge 24
by the pyller / and also by the ayde of the good kynge
Oberon / whom I ought gretely to loue / he is a kynge
of the fayry ryght pusant / and is in the cyte of
Mommure / and he, knowynge of the peryll that I was 28
in, had pyte of me / and ⁸soo he⁸ came and socoured
me in suche wyse, & with so grete a pusaunce / that in
Babylone he slewe all suche as wolde not byleue in
our lorde Jesu crysta. Then he toke me out of pryson / 32
and so⁹ we entred in to the palays, and there we slewe

¹ no one.

² with.

³ vnto.

⁴⁻⁴ to the verie vttermost.

⁵ Fol. lix. col. 2.

⁶⁻⁶ by.

⁷ if.

⁸⁻⁸ omitted.

⁹ then.

all suche as we founde there. Then I wente to the
 Admyral Gaudys and strake of his heed / and then I
 cut of his berde and opened his mouthe / and drewe
 4 out foure of his grete teth / ¹when I hadde theym / then
 I desyred kynge Oberon to ayde me to fynde the
 meanes that I myght brynge surely the berde and teth
 to your presence / and to shewe me where as ²I myghte
 8 beste kepe them. Then the good kynge Oberon, by
 the grace of oure lorde god and by the puysaunce that
 god hadde gyuen vnto hym, he closed theym within
 the syde of Gerames / soo that they coule not be
 12 perceyued. ¹Syr, knowe for trouthe ye neuer herde
 spekyng² of suche a man / and ³when that ²I sawe
 that I hadde furnysshed your message, I retourned and
 toke with me the fayre lady Esclaramonde, doughter to
 16 the fore sayde Admyrall Gaudys / and the twelue
 gentylmen that went with me out of Fraunce / who all
 wayes hath ben with me. And, syr, yf I sholde shewe
 you the gret paynes and pouertes that I & they haue
 20 suffred, it sholde be to longe to ⁴reherse / but I may well
 saye, & ⁵the grace of god had not ben I had neuer
 come hyther agayne; yf I had had .x. lyues I coude
⁶not a ⁶scaped the deth. & ⁷after all these paynes &
 24 traundayles that I and they that were with me suffred, by
 the grace of god we came & aryued at Rome, where as
⁸the holy father⁸ y^e pope receyued me with grete ioye,
 & ther wedded me to Esclaramonde, the Admyralles
 28 doughter, whom ye maye se yonder all desolate and
 full of dyspleasures, & not without cause' / when the
 barons that were there herd the pyteous complayntes
 of Huon, euery man of pite behelde y^e lady, who, pale
 32 & yll coloured, sate sore wepyng / so that such as
 regarded her were constrayned to take parte of her
 sorowe / there was no man but they began sore to

how Gaudisee was
slain;

how at Rome he
married the
Admiral's fair
daughter.

All who hear the
piteous tale begin
to weep.

¹ and. ² omitted. ³ Now. ⁴ Fol. lix. back, col. 1.

⁵ if. ⁶⁻⁶ neuer haue. ⁷ Next. ⁸⁻⁸ omitted.

Huon asserts that
all he says is
truth,

wepe / & Huon, who was before the kynge, was
sorowfull to se his wyfe make so grete doloure. Then
he sayd ¹a hye to¹ the kynge / 'syr, yf ye wyll not by-
leue my sayeng, sende to Rome to y^e pope to knowe the 4
trouth / yf ye proue my wordes contrary I submyt my
selfe to receyue suche dethe that² ye & youre barons can
deuyse, yf the pope do not bere wytnesse of that I
haue sayd / god forbed that I sholde shew you ony 8
thyng other wyse then trouth / I haue sayd nothyng
but he shal shew tokens that my sayenge is trewe / and
I can saye more yf I wolde shewe all / but it is not
nedefull that I sholde make a longe sermonde. But, 12
syr, thus as I haue shewed you I dyd retourne fro the
place *that* ye sent me vnto³ / and, syr, knowe for trouth
I cam not so vnprouyded / but that I broughte with me
grete plente of golde & syluer / and my company came 16
hole⁴ with me, and I ⁵was in purpose⁵ not to reste in
ony place tyll I hadde spoken with youre grace / for the
grete desyre that I had to se you / and so longe⁶ I rode
tyll I came too an abbey here⁷ by a foure legges hense, 20
called Saynt ⁸Maurys, because the abbey is⁹ of youre
foundacyon, and not partaynyng to the lande of
Burdeux / for I wolde not haue entred in to this
towne bycause of the commaundement that ye gaue 24
me / thus I came & lodged me in the abbey / and
the abbot receyued me with grete ioye / and he sent
worde of my beyng there to my brother Gerarde / and
the traytoure came too me lyke a false traytoure / & 28
brought with hym but one squyer / wherby now I
maye perceyue that in hym was nothyng but falsenesse
and treason' / 'Huon,' quod Duke Naymes, 'your
reason is good, for yf he had ben trewe as he ought to 32
haue ben / he ought to assemble the barons and lordes

and tells of his
fortunes since he
arrived in France.

¹⁻¹ unto. ² as. ³ to. ⁴ all. ⁵⁻⁵ purposed.
⁶ along. ⁷ hard. ⁸ Fol. lix. back, col. 2.
⁹ was.

of the countre, & so to haue come with them to¹ haue
 receyued you with reuerence and honoure.' 'Syr,' quod
 Huon, 'it is trewe / but the traytoure dyd other wyse /
 4 for when he was come to me, by grete subtylte he
 demaunded how I had sped in my iourney, and
 whyther I hadde spoken with the Admyrall Gaudys or
 not, and declared to him your message, and yf I had
 8 broughte with me his berde and foure grete teeth; and
 I shewed hym I hadde accomplysshed your hole com-
 maundement / then the vnhappy traytoure demaunded
 where I kept them, and I shewed hym, for I had no
 12 mystruste in hym / then he soo exorted me that at the
 houre of mydnyghte he made me to aryse hastely, and
 made me and al my company redy, and so lepte on
 oure horses and rode forth oure waye; and when we
 16 came too a crosse way, and sawe that I toke the way
 into Fraunce, he began to speke rygoryously to haue
 occacyon of some stryfe betwene vs; and nere therto
 there was a lytell wode, where as there laye in a
 20 busshement Gybouars, and in his company .lx. men of
 armes clene² armed / & they came & ran at me; my &³
 company⁴ were vnarmed, ⁵wherby they founde in vs
 but small resytence / and so fynally the .xii. ientylmen
 24 *that* were with me were all slayne & all to hewen, &
 then they toke theyr deed bodyes & dyde cast them in
 to the ryuer of Gerounde / then they strake me to the
 erth, & bouzde fast my fete and handes and blynd felde
 28 myn eyen, and in lyke wyse they dyd to my wyfe / and
 then they came to Gerames / & the traytoure my
 brother came to hym, and with a sharpe knyfe opened
 his syde / and there he toke out the berde / and .iiii.
 32 gret teth of the Admyrall Gaudys / the whiche were
 set there by kynge Oberon; the false traytour knewe
 y^e place where as they lay by reason *that* I had shewed

Huon recounts
Gerard's evil plot.

¹ and. ² well. ³ and my. ⁴ that.

⁵ Fol. lx. col. 1.

Gerames shows
the wound that
Gerard made in
his side.

Huon challenges
Gerard and
Gybours to
mortal combat.

Gerard denies the
truth of Huon's
story.

him therof before / wolde to god *that* y^e same tyme
that he cam to Gerames to do that cruel dede that
 Gerames had ben armed / I am sure then the false¹
 traytoure durst not a² regarded him to haue done hym 4
 any³ euyll / but, syr, when he had taken out y^e berde
 and teth / then he bounde Gerames handes and fete,
 hurte as he was / as, syr, ye may knowe the trouthe by
 hym / then Gerames stept forth & lyfte vp his cloke, 8
 & shewed y^e kyng y^e wounde in hys syde, y^e which
 euery man myght se³ was there / 'sir,' quod Huon to
 the kyng / 'when he had done all this / he set vs on
 iii. lene horses, & so brought vs in to this towne, 12
 bounde handes and fete, and then set vs in a depe
 pryson / & so hath kept vs hyder vnto⁴ with brede and
 water / and⁵ hath taken fro vs all the ryches *that*
 we brought with vs / and, *sir*, yf he be so hardy to say 16
 the contrary, that it is not true that I haue sayd / let
 hym & Gybours, lyke traytours as they be, arme
 them,⁶ and I shall fyght agaynst them bothe / and yf I
 may⁷ conquer them bothe, wherof I haue no doute with 20
 the ayde of our lord god / then let them haue as they
 haue deserued / & yf I can not ouer come them nor to¹
 make them to shewe the trouthe / I wyll that then
 incontynente ye ⁸cause me to be drawen & hanged.' 24
 'By my fayth,' quod duke Naymes, 'syr / Huon can
 saye nor offre no more / for he offereth to proue y^e
 contrary of *that* Gerarde hath sayd' / 'syr,' quod
 Gerard, 'my brother sayth at his pleasure, bycause he 28
 knoweth well that I will not stryue agaynst hym /
 bycause he is myne elder brother / let the kyng do as
 it shall please hym / as for me, I neuer consented to do
 so cruell a dede as he layeth to my charge.' 'A, good 32
 lorde,' quod duke Naymes / 'howe the fals traytour can
 cloke & couer his ylnes !' 'Huon,' quod Charlemayn,

¹ omitted.² haue.³ that.⁴ hetherto.⁵ so.⁶ selues.⁷ can.⁸ Fol. lx. col. 2.

'I can not tell what ye haue done / but I wyll ye
 shewe me the berde and .iiii. grete teeth of the
 Admyrall Gaudys' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I crye you
 4 mercy, I haue shewed you howe they be taken fro me
 by the false traytoure my brother Gerarde' / 'Huon,'
 quod the kyng, 'ye knowe wel at your departure out
 of Fraunce I defended¹ you on² payn of your lyfe, that
 8 yf by aduen[tu]re ye returned agayne in to Fraunce, *that*
 ye sholde not be so hardy³ to enter in to this cyte of
 Burdeux tyl⁴ ye had spoken with me fyrst, & to kepe
 me promys ye deliuered⁵ me hostages, y^e which I haue
 12 quyt syn⁶ I haue you in my handes. it lyeth now in me
 other to hange you or to drawe you / or to gyue too⁷
 you any other iugemente / for at youre departure ye
 were agreed that I shold so do / but by y^e fayth that I
 16 owe to⁷ saynt Denys, or⁸ it be nyght I shall cause the
 to be hanged and drawen, and that shall I not let so to
 do for any man lyuyng / for now I take you in youre
 owne house.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'god forbed that a
 20 kyng of Fraunce sholde do so grete a cruelte. Syr,⁹ I
 crye you mercy / for goddes sake doo not to me so
 grete an outrage / for, syr,¹⁰ ye maye knowe ryght well
 that parforce I was broughte hyther. And therfore,
 24 syr¹¹ kyng, I requyre you let me haue ryghtfull and
 trewe iugement.' 'By my fayth, Huon,' quod duke
 Naymes, ¹²'it is but a small request that ye make / for
 your ryght is so clere that yf reason maye be shewed to
 28 you, there is no man can say the contrary / but that
 your landes oughte to be rendred to⁷ you franke and fre,
 & your brother Gerarde to be hanged and strangled' /
 then the duke sayde to the kyng / 'syr,⁹ I requyre you
 32 haue pyte of Huon, and doo nothyng to hym but
 ryght / and, sir,¹⁰ ye shall do grete synne without

Charlemagne in
 anger at the loss
 of the beard
 and teeth,

threatens to slay
 Huon.

Huon begs for
 mercy.

Naymes supports
 his appeal,

¹ charged. ² vpon. ³ as. ⁴ vntill. ⁵ to.
⁶ seeing. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ before. ⁹ my Lord.
¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ great. ¹² Fol. lx. back, col. 1.

and the king
promises him a
trial.

Naymes protests
against the
Emperor's
treatment of
Huon.

The king bids his
peers give Huon
an impartial trial.

Naymes entreats
them not to allow
the king's hatred
to affect their
judgment.

ye do hym ryght' / 'Naymes,' quod the kyng, 'you knowe well it is in me to cause Huon to dye / but syn¹ that he is one of my peers I wyll ordre hym by iugement.' When the lordes and other knyghtes herde 4 the kyng saye so they were ryght ioyful / for then they byleued *that* the kyng sholde² haue pyte of Huon / but who so euer was ioyful / yet duke Naymes was not contente, and sayde to the kyng / 'syr,³ by that I se 8 and here ye bere Huon but small loue, seyng that ye wyll put hym to iugement, consydering his dedes and saynges to be true; and namely, where as he offereth to proue it by the holy father the pope' / then Huon 12 withdrew e backe & lened hym to a pyller therby. Then the kyng called to⁴ hym all his peeres and lordes, & sayd, 'syrs, I requyre you, by the fayth and trouthe and homage that ye bere to⁴ me / *that* for me nor for 16 myne amyte that ye ayde not Huon agaynst me / nor say⁵ nor do no falshode / but the moost ryghtfull iugement that ye can make do / I charge you gyue trew iugement without ony fauoure or parsealyte' / When 20 the lordes herde the kyng saye so to⁴ them, and that he coniuired them so sore to do ryght / and iustyce / well they perceyued that the kyng had grete hate to⁴ Huon / and that y^e deth of his sone Charlot was not forgotten 24 out of his mynde / then they all togyther drew e a parte in to a chambre ryght penseue and mornynge / then⁶ they satte downe on benches and beheld eche other without ⁷spekyng of ony worde a longe space / 28 when duke Naymes sawe that, he rose vpon his fete and sayd / 'syrs, ye haue herde how the kyng hath charged vs to saye the trouthe; we may parceyue well by hym that he bereth grete hate to⁴ Huon, who is one of our 32 companyons / and therfore, syrs, I requyre you that euery man by hym selfe wyll saye his aduyse as he thynketh.'

¹ seeing.

² would.

³ my Lord.

⁴ vnto.

⁵ lay.

⁶ and.

⁷ Fol. lx, back, col. 2.

¶ How the .xii. peers drewe to counseyle to
gyue sentence vpon Huon, other with hym
or agaynst hym. Capitulo .lxxxii.

4



Hen there rose vp a knyght called

Gaulter, a knight
of Ganelon's line,

Gaulter / he was yssued of y^e lygnage

of Ganelon; he¹ was one of the peers

of fraunce / then he sayd / 'syrs, as

for me, I say, seyng the case as it is,

that Huon by ryght iugement ought

addresses the
peers in favour of
Huon's death.

to be hanged & drawen, for as ye know ²well the

kyng hath founde hym in the cyte of Burdeux / ther-

12 fore I say that the kyng may, without doynge any

synne, put hym to deth / and, syrs, yf ye thynke that

I haue sayd good reason / agree ye than to y^e same,

and lette Gerarde his brother be lorde and mayster of

16 all the londys and sygnyoryes that sholde partayne to³

Huon / I consent & wyll, as myche as toucheth my

parte, that Gerarde be one of the peeres of Fraunce in

y^e place of Huon his brother' / ⁴whan Gaulter had endyd

20 his reason, Harry⁵ of seynt Omers spake, and sayd,

'Syr Gaulter, goo & syt downe / your wordes can

bere none effect, for they be of no valure. But,

syrs,' quod he, 'shortly to speke and ryghtwysly to

24 iuge, I say that it is reason that Huon be restoryd to

all his londes, for his dede is well proued, & by good

wytnes, as our holy father the pope / for we may beleue

surely that Gerarde his brother, that thus hath betrayed

Harry of Saint
Omers declares
that Huon is
guiltless,

28 hym, hath done it by false couetys⁶ / therfore I say

and iuge that Gerarde be drawen at horse taylles, and

than hangyd tyll⁷ he be deed.' Than he sayd no more /

and that Gerard
deserves to be
drawn at horses'
tails.

but sat downe agayne.

¹ who.

² Fol. lxi. col. 1.

³ vnto.

⁴ and.

⁵ Henry.

⁶ couetousness.

⁷ vntill.

The Earl of
Flanders urges
that the two
brothers should
be reconciled to
each other,



Howe Harry¹ of seint Omers had sayd his
reason / y^e erle of Flaunders rose vp,
and sayd to Harry,¹ 'all that ye haue
sayd I wyll not consent therto / but I 4
shall shewe you myne aduyse what
ought to be done. Syrs, ye al know well the worlde,
the which as now is lytell worth, for now a dayes can
not be founde² trew frendes as were wont to be; ye 8
may well se by these two bretherne / the stryfe that is
betwene them is foule and dyshonest; we sholde do
well yf we coude fynde the meanes by any maner of
wayes to apeace them / and therfore I counsell, lette vs 12
all togyther go to the kinge, and desyre hym to haue
mercy and petye of bothe these tuo brethern, & that
it myght³ please hym to apeace them, and render to
Huon all his londes / and yf we coude bring it to this 16
poynt, it sholde be a good dede as to accorde them
togyther.'

and the king
should be prayed
to spare both
their lives.

¶ Howe the peeres layde all 'the dede to gyue
the iugement vpon duke Naymes.⁴ But for 20
all that euer he coude say or doo, the kyng
iuged Huon to dye. Capitulo .lxxxii.

The Earl of
Chalons proposes
that the peers
shall follow the
advice of Duke
Naymes.



Fter that the erle of Flaunders had
spoken, the erle of Chalons rose vp 24
and sayd, '⁵Syre erle⁵ of Flaunders,
your reason is good, and ye haue
spoken lyke a noble man / but I
know surely that the kyng wyll do 28
no thyng at our desyres. But, syrs, yf ye thynke it
good, let vs all put the hole mater vpon duke Naymes
of Bauyer / & all that he wyll say let vs agree therto' /
than all the lordes accordyd togyther, & sayd how the 32

¹ Henry.

² such.

³ Fol. lxi. col. 2.

⁴⁻⁴ vpon Duke Naymes to giue the iudgement vpon him :

⁵⁻⁵ My Lord.

erle Chalons had sayd¹ wel. Than they came to the²
duke Naymes, and desyryd hym that he wolde take
the charge of that mater on³ hym, and what so euer he
4 dyd they were al agreed therto / whan the duke herd
them he stode styll a certen space, & began to studye
on the mater, and tooke all the .x. peeres to counsell
with hym. And whan y^e fayre Esclaramonde saw
8 Huon her housebonde in that daunger among them
with whom he shold haue been in ioy, than she began
sore to wepe, and sayd, 'A, Huon, I se here great
pouerte, whan in the same proper towne where as ye
12 ought to be lorde to be in this daunger, and besyde
that ye are not beleued nor herde of any man that is
here, for any *profe* or wytnes that ye can say or shew /
kyng Charlemayne wyll not beleue that ye haue ben
16 in the cyte of Baby⁴lone, and yet surely there ye haue
ben / for I saw you there slee my father the admyrall
Gaudys, and toke his berd, and drewe out of his mouth
.iiii. of his greatest teth / gret petye it shalbe yf ye
20 sholde dye for *your* trough and faythfulnes / ⁵the thyng
that most fereth me is that I se none that be here
lykely to be a noble man, namely,⁶ the kyng, who is
chefe of all other ;⁷ me thynke he is full of falshede /
24 for I se none other but he ⁸purchaseth for⁹ your deth.
But I promyse to god that yf he suffer you to haue this
wronge, and thus to dye, I saye than as for my parte
that Mahounde is better worth than your ⁹god Iesu
28 Cryst⁹ / and yf it be soo that ye receyue deth without¹⁰
cause, I shall¹¹ newer more beleue in ¹²Jesu Cryst¹² / but
renounce his law, and beleue in Mahounde.' There were
many lordes and knyghtes *that* herd the ladyes wordes /
32 wherof they had suche petye that the moost part of them
began to wepe. And whan Huon herde hys wyfe he

Esclaramonde
bemoans Huon's
sad fate,

and reproaches
Christ with
permitting
injustice.

¹ right. ² omitted. ³ vpon. ⁴ Fol. lxi. back, col. 1.

⁵ but.

⁶ except.

⁷ and yet.

⁸⁻⁸ that seeks.

⁹⁻⁹ king Charlemaine.

¹⁰ a.

¹¹ will.

¹²⁻¹² your king.

Huon begs her to have patience.

Duke Naymes hesitates to give the peers counsel,

but he indignantly rejects Gaultier's proposal that Huon should be put to death.

The peers, however, fear for Huon's life.

tournyd¹ his face to her warde,¹ and sayd, 'Lady, I desyre you to leue your sorow and trust in god almyghty, who so often tymes hath socouryd vs. ye know not what he wyll do; let vs be content with his good pleasure.' Thus 4 with suche wordes Huon apeaced the fayre Esclaramonde. And duke Naymes, who was in counsell with the other peeres, sayd to them, 'Syr, I haue grete sorow at my hert by cause of these two bretherne, so 8 that I can not tell what Counsell to fynde. I desyre you all that in this weyghty mater to counsell me & shew me your opynyons therin.' 'Syr,' quod the lordes, 'other counsell ye shall not haue of vs, for we haue layde 12 al y^e mater vpon you to do therin what it shall please you.' 'Syres,' quod the duke / 'to dyssymell the matter vayleth not,² syn³ that Huon must passe by iugement; howe saye you, shall he be hangyd or drawn?' 16 'Syr,' quod Gaultier, who was y^e fyrst 'speker / 'me thynke he can scape none other wyse.' 'A, traytour,' quod the duke, 'thou lvest falsly, for it shall not folow after thy counsell, whether thou wyll or not; 20 there is no man this day that shalbe so hardye⁵ to iuge hym to dye / therfore, syrs, yet shew me agayne yf⁶ ye wyll all agree to my counsell.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'we haue layde the charge on you, the whiche we wyll all 24 byde by' / but who so euer was glade, Gaultier was sorowful and angrie / for he wold haue consentyd to the deth of Huon. Than all the barons, ryght sad and pensyue, went out of the counsell chambre, and they 28 coude fynde no maner of wayes howe to saue Huon, but they all prayed to god to ayde & socoure hym. And Huon seyng the barons comyng so sadly togyther, thought that the mater was not at a good poynt, wherby 32 he began sore to wepe / whan Esclaramond and Gerames saw the sorowe that Huon made, they had gret petye

¹⁻¹ toward her.

⁴ Fol. lxi. back, col. 2.

² but.

⁵ as.

³ since.

⁶ whether.

therof. Than Huon behelde duke Naymes, for he knew
 well al the mater lay in his handes / he feeryd greatly
 the iugement that sholde be made vpon hym / & sayd,
 4 'a, very god & man, as I beleue verily that thou
 dydyst dye on the holy crosse to redeme vs all, & that
 on the thyrd day thou dyddyst ryse fro deth to lyfe,
 I requyre the humbly in this grete nede to socoure me,
 3 as treuly as I am in the ryght, for more wrong can¹ no
 man haue.' Than y^e duke Naymes of Bauyer cam to
 y^e kinge, & said / 'sir, wyll it please you to here what
 we haue deuysyd?' 'Ye,' quod the kinge, 'I desyre
 2 no thynges elles to know' / 'well, sir,' quod the duke,
 'than I demaunde of you in what place of your regyon
 thynke you² that ye ought³ too iuge of the peeres of
 Fraunce?' 'Naymes,' quod y^e kyng, 'I know well ye
 be a noble man, & all that ye say is to delyuer Huon
 of Burdeux / but I wyll ye know all shall not profyt
 hym.' Than y^e duke sayd, 'sir, to say so ye do grete
 wronge. Therefore, sir, regarde well in what³ place ye
 wyll haue one of your peeres iugyd. yf ye know not
 where it ought to be done, I shall⁴ shew you in your
 realme there are but thre places to do it in. The fyrst
 is the towne of Seynt Omers / the .ii. is Orleauce, &
 1 y^e thyrd is Parys / & therefore, sir, yf ye wyll procede
 vpon Huon by iustyce, it is conuenyent that it be done
 in one of these thre places, for here in this towne he
 can not be iugyd.' 'Naymes,' quod y^e kyng, 'I vnder-
 stonde well why ye saye this; I well se & perceyue that
 ye entende to none other ende but to delyuer⁵ quyt
 Huon. I had thought to haue entretyd hym by the
 ordre of iustice / to thentent that none of you sholde
 32 haue reprouyd me, therfor I ordeynd that he sholde
 haue ben iugyd by you that be the peeres of Fraunce /
 & I se well ye haue done no thynges therin, & therefore

Huon prays for
safety.

Naymes asks
Charles where he
thinks the peers
of France should
be brought for
trial.

The king declares
that Huon shall
die.

Naymes shows
that there are
only three towns
where peers can
be tried.

Charlemagne
reproaches the
Duke with
attempting to
acquit Huon,

¹ can after man. ²⁻³ omitted. ³ Fol. lxii. col. 1.

⁴ will. ⁵ and.

and orders the
knight to be slain
forthwith.

Great is the grief
of all who hear
the Emperor's
words.

Very piteous is
Esclaramonde's
lamentation.

Gerames also
weeps sorely.

as longe as ye lyue ye shall medell no more *with* that
mater / but by the berde that I bere on my chyn, I
shall neuer dyne nor ete no mete after this dyner tyll I
se hym hangyd and drawen / for all your berynge of 4
hym agaynst me.' Than he commaundyd y^e tabelles to
be set vp / ¹whan Gerard vnderstode the kynge he was
ioyfull ther of in his herte / but he made no semblaunt
of ioy by cause of the lordes that were there present / 8
whan Huon & Esclaramonde herd how y^e kynge had
sworne the deth of Huon, The doloures wepynges &
teeres *that* they made were so extreme that herd it
were to declare it / & Esclaramond sayde to Huon, 12
'A, syr, now I se well / that grete pyte it shalbe the
departyng of vs two / but yf I had a knyfe I wold
not abyde your deth / but fyrst I sholde slee my selfe
before this false and vntrew kynge' / her compleyntes 16
were so petufull *that* moost part of the lordes wept for
pyte / and the olde Gerames sore wept, & sayd, 'A,
good lord god, in what houre was I born! in grete
doloure & payne I haue vsyd² my youth / & now in 20
myn age thus shamfully ³to dye.' Thus all .iii. made
suche sorow *that* it wolde haue made a hard herte to
lament. All .iii. thought none otherwyse but to dye,
by cause they had herde kinge Charlemayne make 24
suche promyse / but that⁴ god wyl ayde⁵ no man can
lette, ⁶for yf⁶ god saue the good kinge Oberon,⁷ kynge
Charlemayne shalbe forsworne, as ye shall here⁸ after.
Nowe let vs leue spekyng of these⁹ pyteous company, 28
& speke of the noble kinge Oberon of y^e fayrre, who as
than was in his woode.

¶ How kynge Oberon cam to socoure Huon,
& made Gerarde to confesse all the treason 32

¹ and.
⁵ saue.

² continued.
⁶⁻⁸ and.

³ Fol. lxii. col. 2.
⁷ for. ⁸ here.

⁴ which.
⁹ this.

that he had purchasyd agaynst Huon his
brother. Capitulo .lxxxiii.



4 E haue herd before how kinge Oberon
was displeased with Huon by cause he
had broken his commaundement. But
whan Huon had ben at Rome, and
confessyd of all his synnes, &¹ assoylled
8 of y^e pope. Than king Oberon was content, & in his
herte forgaue all the yll wyll that he had to Huon / &
as he sat at diner, he began to wepe / whan his seruantes
sawe that, they had grete meruayle, & sayd to² hym /
12 'sir, we desyre you to shew vs why ye do wepe & be
so troubled ; there is sum dyspleasure done to³ you / sir,³
for the loue of our lorde Jesu Cryst, we desyre you
hyde it not fro us.' 'Syr,' quod the kynge, 'I
16 remembre now the vnhappy Huon of Burdeux, who is
retournyd fro y^e farre partes, & he hathe passyd by
Rome, & there hath taken his wyfe in maryage, & is
confessyd of all his synnes, for the whiche synnes he
20 hath ben by me sore punyshyd.

Oberon had taken
Huon again into
his fa our after
he had been
confessed by the
Pope,

and weeps over
his misfortunes
in France.

'But it is tyme, yf euer I wyll do hym any good,
now to ayde hym, & to socoure hym agaynst kynge
Charlemayne / for he hathe⁴sworne neuer to go to bed
24 tyll⁵ he haue hangyd & drawen the poore Huon / but
by the grace of our lorde god, Charlemayn shalbe for-
sworne, for at this tyme I shall socoure & ayde hym /
for he is as now in such a daunger, without he be
28 socouryd incontynent, deth is nere hym / he was neuer
in his lyfe in suche perell / he is now in the palays at
Burdeux, & hys wyfe the fayre Esclaramonde, & the
olde Gerames, with fetters on ther fete, beyng in grete
32 sorow / & kinge Charemain is set at dyner, & hath
made his oth to hang⁶ Huon / but yet whether he wyll

He declares he
will go at once to
his aid,

¹ was. ² vnto. ³ therefore. ⁴ Fol. lxii. back, col. 1.
⁵ vntill. ⁶ haue.

or not he shalbe periuryd / for I wyll go to my frende
 Huon, & helpe hym at his nede / therfore I wyshe my
 table, & all that is theron, nere to kyng Charlemayns
 table, & sumwhat aboute his a¹ two fote hyer; & also 4
 I wyll, by cause I haue herd say that often tymes of a
 lytell castell cometh a greater, therfore I wyl that on
 my table be set my cuppe, & horne, & harnes,² y^e
 whiche Huon conqueryd of y^e Gyaunt Angolaffer; & 8
 also I wysh with me a .C.M. men of armes such as I
 was wont to haue in batayle / he had no soner sayd
 y^e wordes / but by the wyll of god & the pusaunce of
 the fayry / his table & all *that* kinge Oberon had 12
 wyshyd was set iust by kinge Charlemaynes table,
 more hyer & greater than his was / whan³ Charlemayne
 sawe the table, & the cuppe &⁴ horne & cote of mayle,
 he had greate meruayle, & sayd to duke Naymes, 'sir 16
 duke, I beleue ye haue enchauntyud me.' 'sir,' quod
 the duke, 'neuer in my lyfe I medled with such mater' /
 the lordes & all suche as were there were greatly
 abasshyd how that mater came to passe / Gerames, 20
 who set nere to Huon, whan he saw the table, & y^e
 cuppe & horne of yuory & the harnes⁵ theron, he knew
 them well, & sayd to Huon, 'syr, be not dysmayed / for
 on yonder table *that* ye may se is your cuppe & horne 24
 of yuory and cot of mayl / wherby I perceyue wel
 that ye 'shalbe socouryd by kyng Oberon' / Huon
 behelde the table, & had grete ioye whan he saw it /
 than he lyft vp his handes to the heuen & thanked our 28
 lorde god *that* he wolde vyset suche a pore synner as
 he was.⁷ 'A, kyng Oberon, in many grete nedes ye
 haue socouryd me' / therwith aryued kinge Oberon in
 the cyte, wherof the burgesses & the comons were 32
 greatly abashyd, whan they saw suche a nombre of men
 of warre enter in to there cyte without any knowledge

and he wishes
himself,
with the table at
which he is
sitting,

and his horn, cup,
and armour,

and a hundred
thousand men,
transported to
Bordeaux.

His desire is at
once accom-
plished.

Charlemagne
believes that
Naymes has
enchanted him.

Gerames shows
Huon how
Oberon is come to
aid him.

The city is filled
with Oberon and
his armed men,

¹ aboute.

² my armour.

³ King.

⁴ omitted.

⁵ armour.

⁶ Fol. lxii. back, col. 2.

⁷ saying.

- before. Whan kinge Oberon was within y^e towne, & al his company, he sayd to his lordes, 'syrs, loke that ye set good watche at euery gate, so that no man go
 4 out' / the whiche they dyd delygently / for at euery gate they set .x.M. men / ¹the cyte was full of men.¹ and the gates are guarded by them so that none can pass out.
 Than kyng Oberon toke the way to the palays, & at y^e gate he left .x.M. men, commaundyng them on payne of
 8 there lyues *that* they shold not suffer any man to passe out / & also he commaundyd that yf they herde hym blowe his horne of yuory, that incontynent they sholde come in to the palays to hym, & to sle all suche as they
 12 sholde fynde there / & they promysyd hym so to do. Than kyng Oberon went vp in to the palays, & many of his lordes / with hym / he was rychely aparellyd in cloth of golde, & the border therof was fret² with ryche
 16 precyous stonnes; goodly it was to behold, for a fayrer lytell person coude not be founde / he passyd iust by kyng Charlemayn without spekyng of any worde, & went so nere too kyng Charlemayn that he shuldred
 20 hym so rudely that his bonet fell fro his hede. 'A, good lorde,' quod Charlemayne, 'I haue greate meruayle what this dwarfe may be *that* so rudely hath shuldred me, & all moost had ouer throwen my table / he is
 24 feerse whax he thinkes scorne to speke to me, how be it, I wyll se what he wyll do / I can not tell what he thynketh to doo / as³ me semyth he is ryght ioyful, & also he is y^e moost fayrest creature
 28 that 'euer I saw' / whan Oberon had passyd by the kyng he came to Huon, & wysshyd y^e fetters fro all there fete, ¹& toke them by theyr handes¹ Oberon wille the fetters to fall from Huon's feet.
 & led them before Charlemayn *with* out any worde
 32 spekyng, & causyd them to syt downe⁵ at his owne table *that* he had wysshyd thether, ¹& he sat downe with them¹ / than he toke his cuppe and made theron

1-1 omitted.

2 sette.

3 but.

4 Fol. lxiii. col. 1.

5 with him.

Esclaramonde,
Huon, and
Gerames drink
from his
enchanted cup.

Oberon bids Huon
offer the cup to
Charlemagne.

It grows empty
in the Emperor's
hand.

Oberon charges
him with having
committed a sin
which he has
never confessed.

Charlemagne
fears the fairy-
king.

.iii. crosses / than incontynent y^e cuppe was full of
wyne / than kynge Oberon toke it & gaue it to Esclara-
mond to drynke, & than to Huon, & so to Gerames /
& whan they had all thre dronken well, he sayd to 4
Huon, 'frende, aryse vp & take the cuppe & bere it to
kynge Charlemayne, & say vnto hym *that* he drynke to
you in the name of good¹ peace / yf he refuse it he dyd
neuer suche a foly in all hys lyfe.' Kynge Charlemayne, 8
who sat nere to them at his owne table, herd kinge
Oberons wordes / than he wyst not what to thynke, &
so sat styll & durst² speake no³ worde for the great
meruaylles that he saw there, and no more durst 12
none of his men, for they were so abasshyd that there
was none there / but *that* gladly wolde haue ben a
C. legges thense; ¹euery man beheld other with grete
meruayle.¹ But who so euer was afrayed, Gerarde 16
was not⁴ well assuryd.⁵ Than Huon rose fro kynge
Oberons table, & tooke the cuppe & went ther with to
kynge Charlemayn, & delyueryd it to hym. The kynge
toke it, and he¹ durst not refuse it. as soone as it was 20
in his handes it was drye & voyde, and not a drope of
wyne therin. 'Felow,' quod y^e king, 'ye haue en-
chauntyd me.' 'Syr,' quod kynge Oberon, 'it is
bycause ye are full of synne / for y^e cup is of suche 24
dygnyte that none can drynke therof without he be a
noble man, & clene without any deedly synne / & I
know one *that* ye dyd not longe a go, the whiche as
yet ye were neuer confessyd of / & yf it were not to 28
your shame I sholde shew it here openly, *that* euery
man sholde here it' / whan themperour ⁶Charlemayne
herde kinge Oberon he was abasshyd, & afrayed *that*
kynge Oberon wold haue shamyd hym openly / than 32
Huon toke agayne the cuppe, & than incontynent it
was full of wyne agayne / & than Huon bare it to duke

¹ omitted.

² not.

³ one.

⁴ verie.

⁵ pleased.

⁶ Fol. lxiii. col. 2.

Naymes, who sat next to Charlemayne. Naymes toke
 the cuppe & dranke therof at his pleasure. But all
 other coude not touche the cuppe, they were so full of
 4 synne. Than Huon retournyd to kyng Oberon, & sat
 downe by hym / than kinge Oberon called to hym
 duke Naymes, & commaundyd hym to ryse fro Charle-
 mains table & to syt downe by hym at his table / the
 8 whiche duke Naymes dyd, he durst not say nay. Than
 Oberon sayd to hym / 'sir duke Naymes, ryght good
 thanke I can¹ you in *that* ye haue ben so trew & iust
 to Huon / & you,² kyng Charlemayn, ³who is³
 12 emperour of y^e Romayns / beholde here Huon, whom
 wrongfully & *with* out cause ye haue dysheryt, & wold
 take fro hym⁴ his londes / he is a noble man & trew /
 & besyde *that*, I say vnto you for trouthe he hath done
 16 your message to⁵ the admyrall Gandes, & I aydyd to
 bringe hym to hys deth, &⁶ he toke out of his mouth
 .iiii. of his grettest teth, &⁷ dyd cut of his whyte berde /
 & I dyd close them within the syde of Gerames by the
 20 wyll of god / this *that* I say ye may beleue surely, for
 at these dedes all I was present. Se yonder false
 traytour Gerard, who by his malysyous entent hath
 done this treason / & to thentent⁸ *that* ye may knowe
 24 the mater more surely, ye shall here it confessyd by
 his owne mouth.' Than Oberon said to Gerarde, 'I
 coniure the, by y^e deuyne puyssaunce & power *that* god
 hath gyuen me, *that* here before kyng Charlemayn
 28 & all his lordes, ⁹shewe & declare the trouthe of this
 treason *that*¹⁰ thou hast done agaynst Huon thy brother.'
 whan Gerarde vnderstode Oberon he was in such fere *that*
 he trymbled for drede / for he felt in hym selfe *that* he
 32 coude haue no power to hyde¹¹ or¹² couer¹¹ the trouthe of
 the treason / & than he sayd, 'Syr, I se wel to hyde the

Only Duke
 Naymes of all the
 courtiers can
 drink of the
 enchanted cup.

Oberon commends
 Naymes for his
 faith in Huon,

and rebukes the
 Emperor for the
 injustice of which
 he has been
 guilty in his
 treatment of the
 brothers Huon
 and Gerard.

Oberon bids
 Gerard confess
 the truth,

and he tells aloud

¹ giue. ² thou. ³⁻³ that art. ⁴ all. ⁵ vnto.
⁶ then. ⁷ also. ⁸ the end. ⁹ thou. ¹⁰ which.
¹¹⁻¹¹ omitted. ¹² Fol. lxxiii. back, col. 1.

the story of his
sin against his
brother.

All the details of
the plot are set
before the
Emperor.

trouthe can not auayle me / therfore trewe it is I went
to the abbay of seynt Maurys to se my brother Huon /
& Gybouars accompanyd with .lx. men of¹ armes. we
departyd fro this cyte, and layde our busschement in a⁴
lytell wood a² .ii. legees fro this cyte / to watch whan
my brother Huon shold passe by that way.' 'Gerarde,'
quod kyng Oberon, 'speke out hyer that ye may the
better be herde, & that euery man may here the treason³
& falsnes that ye haue done to³ your brother.' 'Syr,'
quod Gerard, 'I wote not what to say / for I haue
done so yll and falsly against my brother *that* more yll
I coude not do ;⁴ I am ashamyd to recounte it. But to¹²
saye trewly that, or⁵ it was mydnyght, I made my
brother to ryse, & to departe fro y^e abbay / & whan we
came nere to the place where as my father in law
Gybouars was with his busschement, I began to stryue¹⁶
with my brother so hyely that Gibouars myght here
me, who whan he herde me speke, he brake out⁶ of
his busschement, & ranne at my brothers company, &
so slew them all excepte these .iii. that be here / than²⁰
we toke y^e deed bodyes & dyd cast them in to the
ryuer of Gerone / than we toke Huon, & his wyfe, &
the olde Gerames, & bounde theyr handes & fete &
blyndfelyd theyr iyen, & so brought them on .iii.²⁴
lene horses in to this cyte ; & I toke out of the syde
of⁷ Gerames the berd & .iiii. gret teth / the whiche yf it
please you I shall fetcche them fro thense⁸ I left them.'
'Gerarde,' quod Oberon, 'ye shall not nede to take the⁹
laboure, for whan it shall please me I can haue them
without you' / 'well, *sir*,' quod Gerard, 'thus whan
I had set them in pryson, I went backe agayne to the
abbay, & than I demaundyd of the abbot & couent³²
where the treasure was that my brother had left there,
& that he sholde delyuer it to me, beerynge hym in

¹ at.² about.³ vnto.⁴ and.⁵ before.⁶ forth.⁷ old.⁸ the place where.⁹ that.

- hande *that* my brother Huon had ¹sent for it / the good
 abbot wolde not delyuer it to me / wherfore Gybouars
 & I slew hym, & than we made this monke here² abbot,
 4 who is neer of kyne to Gybouars, to y^e entent that he
 sholde ayde to bere vs wytnes, & to iustifye our
 saynges / *than* we toke all the treasure *that* was there
 & brought it hyther / *than* I chargyd .x. somers, the
 8 whiche I had *with* me, to kyng Charlemayns court at
 Parys / the which treasure I gaue part therof to the
 kyng, & to other, by whom I thought to be aydyd,
 to parforme myn vnhappye enterpryce / & I beleued
 12 surely that by reason of the ryches *that* I gaue *that*
 my brother sholde haue receyued deth / & therby I to
 haue ben lorde & mayster of al his londes & seignories /
sir,³ this treason *that* I haue shewed, Gybouars causyd
 16 me to do it, or elles I had neuer thought to haue done
 it.' 'Gerarde,' quod king Oberon, 'yf it please our
 lord Jesu Cryst, you & he both shalbe hangyd by the
 neckes, there is no man lyuyng shall saue you. Syr
 20 emperour Charlemayn, ye haue well herd the confessyon
 of Gerard of the grete treason that Gybouars & he
 hath done to⁴ Huon. But by y^e lorde *that* fourmyd
 me to his semblaunce / both they two, & the abbot, &
 24 his chapleyne, shalbe hangyd for there false wytnes.'
 'By y^e fayth *that* I owe to saynt Denys,' quod kyng
 Charlemayn / 'they can not scape it.' 'Syr,' quod
 Naymes, 'it is grete synne to trouble a noble man / ye
 28 shal do well yf all iiii be hangyd' / whan all the lordes
 herd Gerarde confesse *that* gret treason that he had
 done to⁴ his brother, they blissyd them, & had grete
 meruayle of y^e false treason that the one brother dyd
 32 to the other.

Gerard charges
Gybouars with
the suggestion of
the wicked
scheme.

Oberon requests
the Emperor to
order Gerard and
his companions to
be hanged,

and Charles
assents.

¹ Fol. lxiii. back, col. 2.² the.³ and all.⁴ vnto.

¶ How kyng Oberon caused to be hangyd
the .iiii. traytours, Gerard, Gybouars, & the
two monkes, for ¹there false wytnes / & of
the peace made betwen Huon & Charle- 4
mayne / and how kyng Oberon gaue to²
Huon his realme of the fayrye.

Capitulo lxxxiii.

Oberon wishes the
beard and tooth
which Gerard has
retained to appear
before him,



and they obey his
will.

Huon pleads for
the life of Gerard
his brother.

Oberon will grant
no respite,

Han kyng Oberon had herd Gerarde 8
confesse the treason done to his brother,
and herde how Gerarde offred to goo
& fetch the berde & ³teth / & how
he had denyed hym to go, Than he 12
sayd, 'I wysshe them here on⁴ this table.' he had no
sooner made his wysshe but they were set on the
table / wherof all such as were there had gret mer-
uayle. 'Syr,' quod Huon to kyng Oberon, humbly, 16
'I requyre you *that* of your grace ye wyll pardon my
brother Gerard all y^e yll *that* he hath done against
me / for he dyd it by Gybouars, & as for me here, &
before god, I pardon hym; and, *sir*, yf ye wyll do 20
thus I shalbe content therwith / & to thentent *that*
we may vse our liues fro hense forth in good peace &
loue, I wyll gyue ⁵hym the halfe parte of my londes &
seygnoryes / & *sir*, in the honoure of our lord Jesu 24
Cryst, haue pyte of hym' / whan the lordes that were
there present vnderstode Huon, they all for pyte began
to wepe, and sayd amonge them selfe *that* Huon was a
noble knyght, & *that* it had ben pyte yf the mater had 28
framyd other wyse. 'Syr Huon,' quod Oberon / 'it is
not necessarye to ⁶requyre me of⁶ this / for all the golde
that is in the worlde shall not respyte them ⁷fro the
deth.' I wysshe by y^e puyssaunce that I haue in y^e 32

¹ Fol. lxiii. col. 1.

² vnto.

³ great.

⁴ vpon.

⁵ Fol. lxiii. col. 2.

⁶⁻⁶ request.

⁷⁻⁷ their deaths.

- fayrye, ¹and by my dygnyte, ¹that here beneth in y^e meadow ther be a payre of gallowes, & all foure theron hangyd.' Incontynent it was done, and all foure
 4 hangyd / thus as ye haue herd y^e traytours were payed ther desertes. Whan kynge Charlemayn had sene the gret meruaylles that were done by the ¹commaundement of ¹kyng Oberon, he sayd to his lordes, 'Syr, I beleue
 8 this man be² god hymselfe / for there is no mortall man can do this *that* he hath done' / whan Oberon vnderstode the emperour, he sayd, 'Syr, know for trouth I am not³ god, but I am a mortall man as ye be, and
 12 was engendred on a woman as ye were, & my father was Julyus cesar, who engendred me on the lady of y^e preney⁴ yle, who had ben before loue to Florymount, sonne to the duke of Albanye / she bare me .ix.
 16 monethes in her bely,⁵ and⁶ begoten by Julyus cesar whan he went in to Thesayle after Pompe the greta. He was amourous of my mother bycause she prophesied that my father, Julius cesar, sholde wyne
 20 the batayle as he dyd / and whan I was borne there were with my mother many ladyes of y^e fayrye, and by them I hadde many gyftes, and amonge other there was one that gaue me y^e gyft to be suche one as ye se
 24 that¹ I am, wherof I am sorye, but I can⁷ be none otherwyse / for whan I cam to the age of thre yere I grew no more / & whan this lady⁸ saw that I was so lytell / to content agayne my mother she gaue me agayne *that*
 28 I sholde be the moost¹ fayrest creature of the worlde, and other ladyes of the fayry gaue me dyuers other gyftes, the whiche I ouer passe at this tyme / & therefore, sir, know for trouth that aboue all thynges god
 32 loueth fayth & trouth whan it is in men, as it is here in Huon; & bycause I know in⁹ certaine that he is

and the traitors
are hanged.

The Emperour
believes Oberon
to be God
Himself,

but the fairy-king
recites his
history,

1-1 omitted. 2 some. 3 no. 4 secret. 5 wombe.

6 I was. 7 not. 8 Fol. lxiii. back, col. 1.

9 for.

and tells of his
love for Huon.

Huon gives
Charlemagne the
beard and teeth
from Babylon.

The Emperor
hands over to him
all his lands,
and pardons him
all his offences.

The courtiers
rejoice over the
reconciliation.

Oberon bids Huon
come to Mommur
in four years'
time,

and promises him
the kingdom of
the faeries.

Bordeaux shall
then be given to
Gerames.

trew & faythfull, therefore I haue alwayes loued hym.' After *that* kyng Oberon had endyd his wordes, & shewed themperour Charlemayn of all his estate, he called Huon, and sayd, ¹'aryse vp, & take the berde & 4 the teth, & bere them to kyng Charlemayn, & desyre hym to render to you your londes as he promysyd.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I ought so to do' / *than* Huon came to kinge Charlemayne, & sayd, 'Syr, by your 8 grace, & yf it maye please you to receyne here y^e berde & teth of y^e admyral Gaudys.' 'Huon,' quod y^e kinge, 'I holde you quyt, and I render to you all your londes & seynoryes, & pardon you of all myn yll wyll, and 12 put al rancoure fro me, & fro hense forth² retayne you as one of my peeres.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'of this I thanke god & your grace.' *than* themperour Charlemayne clyppyd & kyssyd Huon in token of peace & 16 loue. Whan the lordes saw that they wept for ioy, & thanked god *that* the peace was made, & speccially duke naymes was ioyfull. *than* within a whyle dyuers of y^e lordes departyd fro the courte / *than* kyng Oberon 20 called Huon to³ hym, & said / 'sir, I commaunde you, as derely as ye loue me, that this same day .iiii. yere to come that ye come in to my cyte of Mommure / for I wyll gyue you my realme & all my dygnyte, the which 24 I may lawfully do, for at my byrth it was gyuen me *that* I myght so do, for it lyeth in me to gyue it where as I thynke best, & bycause I loue you so entyerly I shall set y^e crowne on⁴ your hede, and ye shalbe kyng of 28 my realme / & also I wyll that ye⁵ gyue vnto Gerames all your londes & seynoryes in this partes, for he hath wel deseruyd it / for with you & for your loue he hath suffred many grete traauaylles.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 32 'syn⁶ this is your pleasure, I ought wel to be pleasyd therewith; I shall acumplyshe all your commaunde-

¹ Sir.

² I.

³ vnto.

⁴ vpon.

⁵ Fol. lxiii. back, col. 2.

⁶ seeing.

mentes.' 'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'know for trouth I shal not abyde longe in this worlde, for so is the pleasure of god. it behoueth me to go in to paradyce, 4 wher as my place is apparelled¹; in y^e fayrye I shal byde no lenger. but beware, as derely as ye loue your lyfe, that ye fayle not to be with me at y^e daye that I haue apoyntyd; beware that ye forget it not / for yf ye fayle 8 I shall cause you too dye an yll deth / & therfore remembre it well.' whan Huon herde kynge Oberon he was ryght ioyus,² & stowpyd downe to haue kyst his fete / but than Gloryauns & Mallebron toke hym vp. Than 12 Huon sayd, 'syr, of³ this grete gyft I thanke you.'

Oberon tells of his approaching departure for Paradise.

¶ How kyng Oberon departyd and toke leue of Charlemayn, & of Huon, & of Esclarmounde / and also how kynge Charlemayne 16 departyd fro Burdeux. Ca. lxxxv.

20 **W**Han kynge Oberon had sayd⁴ to Huon as myche as he wold that he sholde do / than he sayd to Huon how he wolde departe, & toke leue of hym, & ⁵swetely kyssyd⁵ hym. Than Oberon stode styll a season,⁶ & behelde Huon, & began to wepe⁷ / whan Huon saw that he was sory in his herte, 24 & sayd, 'A, sir kynge, I desyre you to shew me why make you this sorow at your departyng.'⁸ 'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'I shal shew you it is for pyte that I haue of you / for I swere by ⁹y^e lorde⁹ that creatyd me 28 that, or¹⁰ I shal se thee agayne, fyrst thou shalt suffre so myche payne / trauayle / pouerte / hungre / thyrst / fere / & ¹¹aduersyte, that there is no tonge can tell it /

Oberon weeps on parting with Huon.

Huon has yet to suffer much adversity.

¹ appointed. ² ioyfull. ³ for. ⁴ imparted.
⁶⁻⁸ kindly embraced. ⁶ little while. ⁷ lament.
⁸ departure. ⁹⁻⁹ him. ¹⁰ before.

¹¹ Fol. lxxv. col. 1.

& thy good wyfe shall suffer so myche that there is no creature shall se her but *that* shal haue ¹of her¹ great pyte.' 'A, syr,' quod Huon, 'than I requyre you to ayde & comforte me.' 'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'what ⁴comforte wolde ye haue of me?' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I desyre you let me haue your horne of yuory, to thentent that yf I haue nede that ye may socoure me / for so well I know you that ye wyll com and socoure me.' ⁸'Huon,' quod Oberon / 'syn² I haue agreed you with Charlemayn, trust not on me to be socouryd in any of your besyness, suffyce you with the gyft that I haue gyuen you whan³ all my realme & pusaunce that I haue ¹²in the fayrre / trust on none other socoure of me.' 'Syr, I am sory therof,' quod Huon, 'that it may be none otherwyse.' Than kynge Oberon toke leue of kynge Charlemayn, & of duke Naymes, & of all other lordes ¹⁶there present. Than he went to Huon & enbraced hym, & toke his leue of hym, & also of Esclaramonde & of olde⁴ Gerames, & sayd to ⁴the fayre lady⁴ Esclaramonde, 'I commaunde you to god, & I desyre you, yf ²⁰ye haue done well hether vnto, that ye wyll parseuer euer better & better, and bere always fayth & honour to your housbonde' / 'syr,' quod she, 'I pray god I lyue no lenger than⁵ I sholde⁴ do the contrary.' Thus ²⁴kynge Oberon departyd / & after his departure kynge Charlemayn made redy his company, & toke leue of Huon, and of Esclaramonde & Gerames, and they conueyed⁶ the kynge a⁷ two legges,⁸ and than toke there ²⁸leues of ⁹the kynge,⁹ & of duke Naymes, and of all the lordes. Than the kynge sayd / 'Huon, yf any warre be moued agaynst you, or *that* yf ye haue any gret affayres to do / let me haue knowlege therof, & I shall ³²come & socoure you, or ⁴I shall⁴ sende you suche ayde that shalbe suffycient.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke

Oberon takes
leue of all the
court.

Charlemagne also
leaves Bordeaux,

but promises to
aid Huon in any
war in which he
may engage.

¹⁻¹ after pyte. ² seeing. ³ euen. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.
⁵ if. ⁶ brought. ⁷ about. ⁸ off. ⁹⁻⁹ him.

your grace,' and so toke¹ leue of the kyng & retouryd
to Bur²deux, where as he was ³in grete ioy, & ³receyued
with grete honour.⁴ Nowe let vs leue spekyng of
4 Huon, & speke of Oberon of the fayrre.'

¹ his. ² Fol. lxxv. col. 2. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ ioy.

END OF PART I

(BEING THE STORY OF THE ORIGINAL FRENCH CHANSON
DE GESTE OF HUON DE BORDEAUX).

23

THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

DATE DUE

~~APR 18 1991~~

JUL 31 1991

